

Book of Mormon (exploring a word pattern)

The Book of Mormon an account written by the Hand of Mormon upon plates taken from the plates of Nephi

Extracted and Posted (through 30)

552

an abridgment of the record

of the people of Nephi also of the Lamanites

Written to the Lamanites, who are a remnant of the house of Israel; also to Jew and Gentile

Written by way of commandment, also by the spirit of prophecy and of revelation

Written and sealed up, and hid up unto the Lord, that they might not be destroyed

To come forth by the gift and power of God unto the interpretation thereof

Sealed by the hand of Moroni, and hid up unto the Lord, to come forth in due time by way of the Gentiles

The interpretation thereof by the gift of God.

553

An abridgment taken from the Book of Ether

a record of the people of Jared,

scattered at the time the Lord confounded the language of the people, when they were building a tower to get to heaven

to show unto the remnant of the House of Israel what great things the Lord hath done for their fathers;

that they may know the covenants of the Lord,

that they are not cast off forever

also to the convincing of the Jew and Gentile that JESUS is the CHRIST, the ETERNAL GOD, manifesting himself unto all nations

if there are faults they are the mistakes of men;

condemn not the things of god, that ye may be found spotless at the judgement-seat of Christ.

I Nephi 1:1 great knowledge of the goodness and the mysteries of God,

1:2 I make a record

I Nephi 1:5 prayed unto the Lord with all his heart

1:6 there came a pillar of fire

he saw and heard much

1:8 he saw the heavens open

he saw God sitting upon his throne surrounded with numberless concourses of angels

1:9 he saw one descending out of the midst of heaven

1:10 he also saw twelve others following him

1:11 gave unto him a book ...

1:12 he was filled with the Spirit of the Lord

1:14 Thy throne is high in the heavens ...

thy power, and goodness, and mercy are over all the inhabitants of the earth

1 Nephi 1:19 he testified the things which he saw and heard manifested plainly of the coming of a Messiah the redemption of the world.

2:1 the Lord spake unto my father, yea, even in a dream

2:2 he should take his family and depart into the wilderness.

2:3 he was obedient unto the word of the Lord

2:6 he pitched his tent in a valley by the side of a river of water.

2:7 he built an altar of stones ...

(he) made an offering unto the Lord

2:11 (he) had led them out of the land of Jerusalem, to leave the land of their inheritance, and their gold, and their silver, and their precious things

2:12 And they did murmur because they knew not the dealings of that God who had created them. Neither did they believe that Jerusalem, that great city could be destroyed according to the words of the prophets. And they were like unto the Jews, which were at Jerusalem, which sought to take the life of my father.

2:14 my father did speak unto them in the valley of Lemuel, with power, being filled with the Spirit, until their frames did shake before him.

2:16 having great desires to know of the mysteries of God I did cry unto the Lord; and behold he did visit me ...

2:20 inasmuch as ye shall keep my commandments, ye shall prosper, and shall be led to a land of promise

2:23 in that day that they shall rebel against me, I will curse them even with a sore curse ...

2:24 they shall be a scourge unto thy seed, to stir them up in the ways of remembrance.

1 Neph 3:2 Behold I have dreamed a dream,

3:3 a genealogy of my forefathers,

3:5 it is a commandment of the Lord.

3:7 I will go and do the things which the Lord hath commanded, he shall prepare a way for them that they may accomplish the thing which he commandeth them.

3:18 they have rejected the words of the prophets.

3:19 it is wisdom in God that we should obtain these records, ...

3:20 spoken by the mouth of all the holy prophets, since the world began,

3:22 we went down to the land of our inheritance, and we did gather together our gold, and our silver, and our precious things.

3:25 when Laban saw our property, and that it was exceedingly great, he did lust after it, insomuch that he thrust us out, and sent his servants to slay us, that he might obtain our property.

3:29 behold, an angel of the Lord came and stood before them, and he spake unto them,

3:30 after the angel had spoken unto us, he departed.

1 Neph 4:1 let us be faithful in keeping the commandments of the Lord;

he is mightier than all the earth,

4:2 he truly spake unto the waters of the Red Sea and they divided hither and thither,

4:3 an angel hath spoken unto you;

4:6 led by the Spirit,

4:10 I was constrained by the Spirit that I should kill

4:11 he had sought to take away mine own life;
he would not hearken unto the commandments of the Lord;
he also had taken away our property.
4:13 Behold the Lord slayeth the wicked to bring forth his righteous purposes.
4:14 heard these words, I remembered the words of the Lord
4:15 they could not keep the commandments of the Lord
save they should have the law.

1 Nephi 4:32 hearken unto my words, as the Lord liveth,
4:33 I spake unto him, even with an oath, he should be a free man
4:34 the Lord hath commanded us to do this thing;
4:35 he also made an oath unto us
4:38 we took the plates of brass

1 Nephi 5:2 she also had complained against my father, ... a visionary man;
led us forth from the land of our inheritance, ...we perish in the wilderness.
5:5 I have obtained a land of promise,
the Lord will deliver my sons
5:6 to obtain the record of the Jews.
5:7 their joy was full,
5:8 Lord hath protected my sons, ...
5:9 they did rejoice exceedingly, ... did offer sacrifice and burnt offerings unto the Lord;

5:10 Lehi, took the records ... he did search them from the beginning. ...
5:11 an account of the creation of the world,
Adam and Eve, who were our first parents;
5:12 a record of the Jews from the beginning,
5:14 a genealogy of his fathers; a descendant of Joseph; ... preserved by the hand of the Lord,
...

5:16 Lehi, did discover the genealogy of his fathers. ...
5:18 go forth unto all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people
5:19 these plates of brass should never perish;
5:21 we could preserve the commandments of the Lord unto our children.
5:22 as we journeyed in the wilderness towards the land of promise.

1 Nephi 6:1 give the genealogy of my fathers

6:2 are descendants of Joseph.

6:3 write of the things of God.

7:1 his sons should take daughters to wife, that they might raise up seed unto the Lord in the land of promise.

7:8 mine elder brethren, ... so hard in your hearts, ... so blind in your minds,

7:9 ye have not hearkened unto the word of the Lord?

7:10 ye have forgotten that ye have seen an angel of the Lord?

7:12 the Lord is able to do all things ... if it so be that they exercise faith in him?

7:21 pray unto the Lord their God for forgiveness. ...

1 Nephi 7:22 they did give thanks unto the Lord their God; ... they did offer sacrifice and burnt offerings unto him.

8:1 we had gathered together all manner of seeds of every kind, both of grain of every kind, and also of the seeds of fruit of every kind.

8:2 I have dreamed a dream;

8:3 they, and also many of their seed, will be saved.

8:4 a dark and dreary wilderness.

8:5 I saw a man, and he was dressed in a white robe;

8:6 he spake unto me, and bade me follow him.

8:9 I beheld a large and spacious field.

8:10 I beheld a tree, whose fruit was desirable ...

8:12 I began to be desirous that my family should partake of it also;

8:19 I beheld a rod of iron,
8:21 I saw numberless concourses of people, ...
8:23 there arose a mist of darkness;
8:26 I beheld, a great and spacious building;
8:37 he did exhort them then with all the feeling of a tender parent,

1 Nephi 10:2 an end of speaking the words of his dream,

10:4 prophet would the Lord God raise up among the Jews even a Messiah, or, in other words, a Savior of the world.

10:6 all mankind were in a lost and in a fallen state, and ever would
be save they should rely on this Redeemer.

10:7 a prophet who should come before the Messiah, to prepare the ...way of the Lord

10:9 he should baptize in Bethabara, beyond Jordan; ...
he should baptize the Messiah with water.

10:11 after they had slain the Messiah, who should come, and after he had been slain he should rise from the dead, and should make himself manifest, by the Holy Ghost, unto the Gentiles.

1 Nephi 10:17 the things which he saw in a vision,
the things which he spake by the power of the Holy Ghost,
which power he received by faith on the Son of God
the Son of God was the Messiah

1 Nephi 10:18 he is the same yesterday, to-day, and forever; the way is prepared from the foundation of the world,
repent and come unto him.

10:19 the mysteries of God shall be unfolded unto them, by the power of the Holy Ghost,

1 Nephi 11:6 he is God over all the earth, thou believest in the Son of the most high God;

11:8 I looked and beheld a tree; the whiteness thereof did exceed the whiteness of the driven snow.

11:11 I spake unto him as a man speaketh; for I beheld that he was in the form of a man; ...

11:13 I looked and beheld the great city of Jerusalem, and also other cities.

11:20 I looked and beheld the virgin again, bearing a child in her arms.

11:27 I also beheld the prophet who should prepare the way before him.
the Lamb of God went forth and was baptized of him;

11:32 the everlasting God was judged of the world;

11:33 he was lifted up upon the cross and slain for the sins of the world.

11:35 the multitude of the earth was gathered together; they were in a large and spacious building, ...

11:36 the great and spacious building was the pride of the world;

12:2 I beheld wars, and rumors of wars, and great slaughters with the sword among my people.
...

12:4 I saw the earth and the rocks, that they rent; and I saw mountains tumbling into pieces; and I saw the plains of the earth, that they were broken up;

12:8 And the angel spake unto me, saying: ...

12:9 Thou rememberest the twelve apostles of the Lamb? ...

12:10 their garments are made white in his blood.

12:17 the mists of darkness are the temptations of the devil, which blindeth the eyes, and hardeneth the hearts of the children of men, and leadeth them away into broad roads, ...

12:23 they became a dark, and loathsome, and a filthy people, full of idleness and all manner of abominations. ...

13:6 I saw the devil that he was the founder of it.

13:7 I also saw gold, and silver, and silks, and scarlets, and fine-twined linen, and all manner of precious clothing;
and I saw many harlots.

13:20 I beheld a book, ...

13:23 The book that thou beholdest is a record of the Jews, which contains the covenants of the Lord, which he hath made unto the house of Israel; ...

13:26 they have taken away from the gospel of the Lamb many parts which are plain and most precious;

13:34 I will bring forth unto them, in mine own power, much of my gospel, which shall be plain and precious,

13:37 blessed are they who shall seek to bring forth my Zion at that day,

13c

13:40 And the angel spake unto me, saying: These last records, which thou hast seen among the Gentiles, shall establish the truth of the first,

13:41 there is one God and one Shepherd over all the earth.

14:5 whoso repenteth not must perish.

14:7 I will work a great and a marvelous work among the children of men; either to the convincing of them unto peace and life eternal, or unto the deliverance of them to the hardness of their hearts and the blindness of their minds unto their being brought down into captivity, and also into destruction, both temporally and spiritually, according to the captivity of the devil,

14:8 Rememberest thou the covenants of the Father unto the house of Israel?

14:11 the whore of all the earth, and she sat upon many waters;

14:14 the power of the Lamb of God, descended upon the saints of the church of the Lamb, and upon the covenant people of the Lord, who were scattered upon all the face of the earth; and they were armed with righteousness and with the power of God in great glory.

14:15 the wrath of God was poured out upon that great and abominable church, insomuch that there were wars and rumors of wars among all the nations and kindreds of the earth.

14:18 the angel spake unto me, ...

14:19 And I looked and beheld a man, and he was dressed in a white robe. ...

14:20 the angel said unto me: Behold one of the twelve apostles of the Lamb. ...

14:26 they are sealed up to come forth in their purity, according to the truth which is in the Lamb, in the own due time of the Lord,

14

1 Nephi 15:3 hard to be understood, save a man should inquire of the Lord;

15:11 If ye will not harden your hearts,

15:13 after the Messiah shall be manifested in body unto the children of men, the fulness of the gospel of the Messiah come unto the Gentiles, from the Gentiles unto the remnant of our seed

15:14 the covenant people of the Lord;

to the knowledge of the gospel ...
to the knowledge of their Redeemer ...
the very points of his doctrine, ...
how to come unto him and be saved.

15:16 they shall be remembered again among the house of Israel;

15:18 pointing to the covenant which should be fulfilled in the latter days; which covenant the Lord made to our father Abraham,

15

Nephi 15:21 the tree ...

15:22 was a representation of the tree of life.

15:23 the rod of iron ...

15:24 was the word of God; ...

whoso would hearken unto the word of God, and would hold fast unto it, they would never perish;

15:25 remember to keep his commandments always

15:26 the river water ...

15:27 was filthiness; ...

15:28 an awful gulf, which separated the wicked from the tree of life, also from the saints of God. ...

15:29 a representation of that awful hell, which the angel said unto me was prepared for the wicked.

15:30 the justice of God did also divide the wicked from the righteous; the brightness thereof was like unto the brightness of a flaming

fire,

15:32 a representation of things both temporal and spiritual; they must be judged of their works, ...

15:33 also, as to the things which are spiritual,

15:34 kingdom of God is not filthy and there cannot any unclean thing enter into the kingdom of God;

16a

Nephi 16:4 I, did exhort my brethren,

16:7 I, Nephi, took one of the daughters of Ishmael to wife;

16:9 the voice of the Lord spake unto my father

16:10 a round ball pointed the way whither we should go

16:16 we did follow the directions of the ball,

16:22 they had hardened their hearts again, even unto complaining against the Lord their God.

16b

16:23 I, Nephi, did make out of wood a bow, and out of a straight stick, an arrow;

16:25 the voice of the Lord came unto my father;

16:28 the pointers did work according to the faith and diligence and heed which
we did give unto them.

16:29 also written upon them a new writing,

16:30 I, Nephi, did go forth up into the top of the mountain, ...

16:31 I did obtain food

17a

I Nephi 16:35 they did murmur; and against my father, saying he had brought them out of the
land of Jerusalem, ... we have suffered much affliction, hunger, thirst, and fatigue;

16:37 let us slay our father,

16:38 he says that the Lord has talked with him, ... angels have ministered unto him. ... he has
thought to make himself a king and a ruler over us,

16:39 the Lord was with us, ... the voice of the Lord came and did speak many words

17:1 our women did bear children

17:3 the commandments of God must be fulfilled.

17:4 we did sojourn for the space of many years, ... eight years in the wilderness.

17:5 And we did come to the land which we called Bountiful, because of its much fruit and
also wild honey; and all these things were prepared of the Lord

1 Nephi 17:7 the voice of the Lord came unto me, get thee into the mountain. I arose and went up into the mountain, and cried unto the Lord.

17b

17:8 the Lord spake unto me, Thou shalt construct a ship, after the manner which I shall show thee,

17:9 the Lord told me whither I should go to find ore,

17:11 I, Nephi, did make a bellows wherewith to blow the fire, ... I did smite two stones together that I might make fire.

17:13 I will also be your light in the wilderness; I will prepare the way before you, if it so be that ye shall keep my commandments; ye shall be led towards the promised land;

17:14 I, the Lord, did deliver you from destruction;

17:15 I did exhort my brethren to faithfulness and diligence.

17:16 I did make tools of the ore

17:17 my brethren began to murmur against me,

17:18 neither would they believe that I was instructed of the Lord.

17:20 thou art like unto our father, led away by the foolish imaginations of his heart;

we have wandered in the wilderness for these many years; ... our women have toiled, being big with child;

17:21 we might have enjoyed our possessions we might have been happy.

17:22 for they kept the statutes according to the law of Moses;

18

1 Nephi 17:23 Do ye believe our fathers, which were the children of Israel, would have been led away out of the hands of the Egyptians, if they had not hearkened unto the words of the Lord?

17:24 Do ye suppose that they would have been led out of bondage, if the Lord had not commanded Moses

17:25 the children of Israel were in bondage; and ye know that they were laden with tasks, which were grievous to be borne;

17:26 by his word the waters of the Red Sea were divided hither and thither,

17:28 they were fed with manna in the wilderness.

Moses, smote the rock, and there came forth water,

17:30 the Lord their God, leading them by day and giving light unto them by night,

they hardened their hearts and blinded their minds, and reviled against Moses and against the true and living God.

17:32 And after they had crossed the river Jordan

17:35 the Lord esteemeth all flesh in one; he that is righteous is favored of God. But behold, this people had rejected every word of God,

19

1 Nephi 17:36 Behold, the Lord hath created the earth that it should be inhabited; he hath created his children that they should possess it.

17:37 he raiseth up a righteous nation, and destroyeth the nations of the wicked.

17:38 he leadeth away the righteous into precious lands, the wicked he destroyeth, and curseth the land unto them for their sakes.

17:39 He ruleth high in the heavens, for it is his throne,

17:40 he loved our fathers, and he covenanted with them, he remembered the covenants which he had made; he did bring them out of the land of Egypt.

17:41 the labor which they had to perform was to look; because of the simpleness of the way, or the easiness of it, there were many who perished.

17:42 they were led forth by his matchless power into the land of promise.

17:43 the day must surely come that they must be destroyed,

20

1 Nephi 17:44 Behold, the Lord commanded my father that he should depart into the wilderness;

17:45 Ye are swift to do iniquity but slow to remember the Lord your God.

Ye have seen an angel, ...

he spake unto you; ...

ye have heard his voice from time to time; ...

17:46 by the power of his almighty word he can cause the earth that it shall pass away;

17:47 I am full of the Spirit of God, insomuch that my frame has no strength.

17:49 they should murmur no more against their father; neither should they withhold their labor from me, ...

God had commanded me that I should build a ship.

17:50 If he should command me that I should say unto this water, be thou earth, it should be earth;

17:52 so powerful was the Spirit of God; ...

17:53 the Lord said unto me: Stretch forth thine hand again unto thy brethren, I will shock them, saith the Lord,

17:55 I am thy brother, yea, even thy younger brother; worship the Lord thy God, and honor thy father and thy mother,

18:1 the Lord did show me from time to time after what manner I should work the timbers of the ship.

18:3 I, Nephi, did go into the mount oft, I did pray oft unto the Lord; the Lord showed unto me great things. ...

18:4 after I had finished the ship, according to the word of the Lord,

21

1 Nephi 18:5 the voice of the Lord came unto my father,

18:6 after we had prepared all things, much fruits and meat from the wilderness, and honey in abundance, and provisions according to that which the Lord had commanded us, we did all go down into the ship, with our wives and our children.

18:9 they did forget by what power they had been brought thither; ...

18:12 the compass, did cease to work.

18:13 there arose a great storm, ...

18:15 they must perish save that they should repent of their iniquities; ...

18:21 after they had loosed me, behold, I took the compass, and it did work

the winds did cease, and the storm did cease, and there was a great calm. ...

18:22 we sailed again towards the promised land.

18:23 we did arrive at the promised land; ...

18:24 we did begin to till the earth, we began to plant seeds; we were blessed in abundance.

1 Nephi 19:1 the Lord commanded me, I did make plates of ore that I might engraven upon them the record of my people. and the prophecies of my father;

19:8 he cometh, according to the words of the angel,

19:9 they scourge him, and he suffereth it; they smite him, and he suffereth it. they spit upon him, and he suffereth it,

19:10 the God of Abraham, and of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, yieldeth himself, to be lifted up, to be crucified, to be buried in a sepulchre,

22

1 Nephi 19: 12 rocks of the earth must rend;

19:13 those who are at Jerusalem, ...

they shall be scourged by all people,

they crucify the God of Israel, ...

turn their hearts aside, rejecting signs and wonders, and the power and glory of the God of Israel.

19:15 that day cometh, saith the prophet, that they no more turn aside their hearts against the Holy One of Israel, then will he remember the covenants which he made to their fathers. ...

19:17 all the earth shall see the salvation of the Lord, every nation, kindred, tongue and people shall be blessed. ...

19:18 remember the Lord their Redeemer.

23

1 Nephi 19:22 I, Nephi, did teach my brethren these things; ...

I did read many things to them,

19:23 I might more fully persuade them to believe in the Lord their Redeemer ...

I did liken all scriptures unto us,

20:1 Hearken and hear this, O house of Jacob, come forth out of the waters of Judah,

20:2 they call themselves of the holy city,

20:7 They are created now, ...

20:10 I have refined thee, I have chosen thee in the furnace of affliction.

20:11 I will not suffer my name to be polluted, ...
I will not give my glory unto another.

24

1 Nephi 20:12 I am the first, and I am also the last. ...

20:13 Mine hand hath also laid the foundation of the earth, my right hand hath spanned the heavens.

20:15 I have called him to declare, I have brought him,

20:16 I have not spoken in secret; from the beginning,

20:18 O that thou hadst hearkened to my commandments

20:21 he led them through the deserts;

he caused the waters to flow out of the rock for them;

21:1 Hearken, O ye house of Israel, the Lord hath called me from the womb;

21:6 I will also give thee for a light to the Gentiles, that thou mayest be my salvation unto the ends of the earth.

21:8 I will preserve thee, and give thee my servant for a covenant of the people,

21:10 They shall not hunger nor thirst, neither shall the heat nor the sun smite them; ...

he that hath mercy on them shall lead them, even by the springs of water shall he guide them.

21:11 my highways shall be exalted. ...

21:13 the feet of those who are in the east shall be established; and break forth into singing,

21:22 Thus saith the Lord God: Behold, I will lift up mine hand to the Gentiles, and set up my standard to the people; and they shall bring thy sons in their arms, and thy daughters shall be carried upon their shoulders.

21:26 all flesh shall know that I, the Lord, am thy Savior and thy Redeemer, the Mighty One of Jacob.

25

1 Nephi 22:1 had read these things which were engraven upon the plates of brass,

22:2 by the Spirit are all things made known unto the prophets,

22:3 the house of Israel, sooner or later, will be scattered upon all the face of the earth,

22:6 after they shall be nursed by the Gentiles, and the Lord has lifted up his hand upon the Gentiles and set them up for a standard, and their children have been carried in their arms, and their daughters have been carried upon their shoulders, ... for thus are the covenants of the Lord with our fathers;

22:8 after our seed is scattered the Lord God will proceed to do a marvelous work among the Gentiles, ...

22:9 unto the making known of the covenants of the Father of heaven unto Abraham, In thy seed shall all the kindreds of the earth be blessed.

22:11 Wherefore, the Lord God will proceed to make bare his arm in the eyes of all the nations, in bringing about his covenants and his gospel unto those who are of the house of Israel.

22:12 he will bring them again out of captivity, and they shall be they shall know that the Lord is their Savior and their Redeemer,

22:13 the blood of that great and abominable church, which is the whore of all the earth, shall turn upon their own heads; for they shall war among themselves, and the sword of their own hands shall fall upon their own heads, ...

22:14 they shall fall into the pit which they digged to ensnare the people of the Lord. ...
all that fight against Zion shall be destroyed, ...

22:15 the time cometh speedily that Satan shall have no more power over the hearts of the children of men; ...

22:16 he will preserve the righteous by his power, the righteous need not fear; ...

22:18 blood, and fire, and vapor of smoke must come; ...

22:20 A prophet shall the Lord your God raise up unto you, like unto me; him shall ye hear in all things whatsoever he shall say unto you.

22:23 For the time speedily shall come that all churches which are built up to get gain, and all those who are built up to get power over the flesh, and those who are built up to become popular in the eyes of the world,
and those who seek the lusts of the flesh and the things of the world, and to do all manner of iniquity; yea, in fine, all those who belong to the kingdom of the devil are they who need fear, and tremble, and quake; they are those who must be brought low in the dust; they are those who must be consumed as stubble;

22:24 the Holy One of Israel must reign in dominion, and might, and power, and great glory. ...

22:25 he numbereth his sheep, and they know him;

22:26 because of the righteousness of his people, Satan has no power; ...

22:28 all nations, kindreds, tongues, and people shall dwell safely in the Holy One of Israel if it so be that they will repent.

22:30 a man must be obedient to the commandments of God. ...

22:31 if ye shall be obedient to the commandments, and endure to the end, ye shall be saved at the last day.

26

2 Nephi 1:1 how great things the Lord had done for them bringing them out of the land of Jerusalem.

1:2 their rebellions upon the waters, the mercies of God in sparing their lives,

1:3 the land of promise,

1:4 Jerusalem is destroyed;

1:5 we have obtained a land of promise, a land which the Lord God hath covenanted with me should be a land for the inheritance of my seed.

1:6 I, Lehi, prophesy according to the workings of the Spirit none come into this land save they shall be brought by the hand of the Lord.

1:7 Wherefore, this land is consecrated unto him whom he shall bring. ...

it shall be a land of liberty unto them;

but unto the righteous it shall be blessed forever.

27

2 Nephi 1:10 the time cometh that they shall dwindle in unbelief, having a knowledge of the creation of the earth, all men, knowing the great and marvelous works of the Lord from the creation of the world;

having power given them to do all things by faith; having all the commandments from the beginning, having been brought by his infinite goodness into this precious land of promise

they will reject the Holy One of Israel, ...

1:11 he will take away from them the lands of their possessions

1:12 I would that ye would remember;

1:13 awake; awake from a deep sleep, shake off the awful chains by which ye are bound, ...

1:14 Awake! and arise from the dust,

a few more days and I go the way of all the earth. ...

1:15 the Lord hath redeemed my soul from hell; I have beheld his glory, I am encircled about eternally in the arms of his love.

1:16 I desire that ye should remember to observe the statutes and the judgments of the Lord;

1:18 a cursing should come upon you for the space of many generations; ...

1:19 that ye might be a choice and a favored people of the Lord.

1:20 Inasmuch as ye shall keep my commandments ye shall

prosper in the land; inasmuch as ye will not keep my commandments ye shall be cut off from my presence.

1:21 arise from the dust, my sons, and be men, be determined in one mind and in one heart, united in all things, ...

1:23 Awake, my sons; put on the armor of righteousness. Shake off the chains with which ye are bound, and come forth out of obscurity, and arise from the dust.

1:25 ye have accused him that he sought power and authority over you; but he hath sought the glory of God, and your own eternal welfare.

1:26 that which ye call anger was the truth,

1:27 the Spirit of the Lord which was in him, which opened his mouth to utterance

28

2 Nephi 1:29 thou hast been brought out of the land of Jerusalem,

1:31 thy seed shall be blessed

they dwell in prosperity long upon the face of this land;

1:32 keep the commandments of the Lord, the Lord hath consecrated this land for the security of thy seed

29

2 Nephi 2:1 in thy childhood thou hast suffered afflictions and much sorrow,

2:2 thou knowest the greatness of God;

he shall consecrate thine afflictions for thy gain.

2:3 thy soul shall be blessed, thy days shall be spent in the service of thy God.

thou art redeemed, because of the righteousness of thy Redeemer;
he cometh to bring salvation unto men.

2:4 thou hast beheld in thy youth his glory;

30

2 Nephi 2:4 the way is prepared from the fall of man, and salvation is free.

2:5 men are instructed sufficiently that they know good from evil.

the law is given unto men. ...

by the law no flesh is justified;

by the temporal law they were cut off; by the spiritual law they perish from that which is good,

2:6 redemption cometh in and through the Holy Messiah; ...

he is full of grace and truth.

2:7 he offereth himself a sacrifice for sin, to answer the ends of the law, ...

2:8 how great the importance to make these things known unto the inhabitants of the earth,...

no flesh that can dwell in the presence of God, save it be through the merits, and mercy, and grace of the Holy Messiah, ...

layeth down his life according to the flesh, that he may bring to pass the resurrection of the dead,

2:9 he is the firstfruits unto God, inasmuch as he shall make intercession for all the children of men;

2:10 they stand in the presence of him to be judged of him according to the truth and holiness which is in him.

Extracted but not yet posted

31

2 Nephi 2:11 there is an opposition in all things.

If not so,

righteousness could not be brought to pass, neither wickedness,

all things must needs be a compound in one;
if it should be one body it must needs remain as dead, having
no life

2:12 it must needs have been created for a thing of naught;
there would have been no purpose in the end of its creation.
this thing must needs destroy the wisdom of God and his
eternal purposes,

2:13 if ye shall say there is no law, ye shall also say there is no sin.
If ye shall say there is no sin, ye shall also say there is no
righteousness.

And if there be no righteousness there be no happiness.
if these things are not there is no God.
if there is no God we are not, neither the earth;
for there could have been no creation of things, neither to act
nor to be acted upon;

32

2 Nephi 2:14 there is a God,
he hath created all things, both the heavens and the earth,
both things to act and things to be acted upon.

2:15 after he had created our first parents, and the beasts of the field
and the fowls of the air, and in fine, all things which are
created, it must needs be that there was an opposition; even
the forbidden fruit in opposition to the tree of life; the one being
sweet and the other bitter.

2:16 the Lord God gave unto man that he should act for himself.
man could not act for himself save it should be that he was

enticed by the one or the other.

2:17 an angel of God,
had fallen from heaven;
he became a devil, having sought that which was evil before
God.

2:18 because he had fallen from heaven, and had become
miserable forever, he sought also the misery of all mankind.

he said unto Eve, yea, even that old serpent, who is the devil,
who is the father of all lies, wherefore he said: Partake of the
forbidden fruit, and ye shall not die, but ye shall be as God,
knowing good and evil.

2:19 And after Adam and Eve had partaken of the forbidden fruit
they were driven out of the garden of Eden, to till the earth.

2:20 they have brought forth children; yea, even the family of all the
earth.

2:21 the days of the children of men were prolonged, according to
the will of God, that they might repent while in the flesh;

their state became a state of probation,
he gave commandment that all men must repent;

2:22 if Adam had not transgressed he would not have fallen, but he
would have remained in the garden of Eden.

all things which were created must have remained in the same
state in which they were after they were created; and they must
have remained forever, and had no end.

2:25 Adam fell that men might be; and men are, that they might have
joy.

2:26 the Messiah cometh in the fulness of time, that he may redeem
the children of men from the fall.

because that they are redeemed from the fall they have
become free forever,

2:27 they are free to choose liberty and eternal life, through the
great Mediator of all men, or to choose captivity and death,
according to the captivity and power of the devil;

2:28 look to the great Mediator,
choose eternal life,

2:29 And not choose eternal death,
which giveth the spirit of the devil power to captivate, to bring
you down to hell, that he may reign over you in his own
kingdom.

33

2 Nephi 3:1 born in the wilderness of mine afflictions;

3:2 the Lord consecrate also unto thee this land,
if it so be that ye shall keep the commandments of the Holy
One of Israel.

3:4 descendant of Joseph who was carried captive into Egypt.
great were the covenants of the Lord which he made unto
Joseph.

3:5 he obtained a promise of the Lord, that out of the fruit of his
loins the Lord God would raise up a righteous branch unto the
house of Israel;

a branch which was to be broken off,
to be remembered in the covenants of the Lord
the Messiah should be made manifest unto them in the latter
days,

3:6 A seer shall the Lord my God raise up,
3:7 to the bringing of them to the knowledge of the covenants
which I have made with thy fathers.
3:12 the fruit of thy loins shall write;
the fruit of the loins of Judah shall write;
shall grow together, unto the confounding of false doctrines
to the knowledge of my covenants,
3:20 they shall cry from the dust;
even repentance unto their brethren,
3:21 unto the remembering of my covenant which I made unto thy
fathers.
3:23 because of this covenant thou art blessed;

34

2 Nephi 4:2 he prophesied concerning us, and our future generations;
4:4 inasmuch as ye shall keep my commandments ye shall
prosper in the land;
inasmuch as ye will not keep my commandments ye shall be
cut off from my presence.
4:5 if ye are brought up in the way ye should go ye will not depart
from it.
4:6 if ye are cursed,
the cursing may be taken from you and be answered upon the
heads of your parents.
4:9 in the end thy seed shall be blessed.

35

2 Nephi 4:15 my soul delighteth in the scriptures,
my heart pondereth them,
writeth them for the learning and the profit of my children.

4:17 my heart sorroweth because of my flesh;
my soul grieveth because of mine iniquities.

4:18 the temptations and the sins which do so easily beset me.

4:19 I know in whom I have trusted.

4:20 he hath led me through mine afflictions in the wilderness;
he hath preserved me upon the waters of the great deep.

4:21 He hath filled me with his love,

4:22 He hath confounded mine enemies,

4:23 he hath given me knowledge by visions in the nighttime.

4:24 and angels came down and ministered unto me.

4:25 upon the wings of his Spirit hath my body been carried away
upon exceedingly high mountains.

4:27 why should I yield to sin,
why should I give way to temptations, that the evil one have
place in my heart to destroy my peace and afflict my soul?

4:30 my soul will rejoice in thee, my God, and the rock of my
salvation.

4:31 O Lord, wilt thou redeem my soul?

4:33 Wilt thou make my path straight before me! Wilt thou not place
a stumbling block in my way

4:35 Behold, my voice shall forever ascend up unto thee, my rock
and mine everlasting God.

2 Nephi 5:2 they did seek to take away my life.

5:5 the Lord did warn me,
flee into the wilderness,

5:6 I, Nephi, did take my family,
those who believed in the warnings and the revelations of God;

5:10 we did observe to keep the judgments, and the statutes, and
the commandments of the Lord
according to the law of Moses.

5:11 we did prosper exceedingly;
we did sow seed, and we did reap again in abundance.
we began to raise flocks, and herds, and animals of every kind.

5:12 I, Nephi, had also brought the records
also the ball, or compass,

37

2 Nephi 5:15 I did teach my people
to build buildings,
to work in all manner of wood, and of iron, and of copper, and
of brass, and of steel, and of gold, and of silver,

5:16 I, Nephi, did build a temple;
I did construct it after the manner of the temple of Solomon

5:17 I, Nephi, did cause my people to be industrious, and to labor
with their hands.

5:21 the Lord God did cause a skin of blackness to come upon
them.

5:25 They shall be a scourge unto thy seed, to stir them up in

remembrance of me;

5:26 I, Nephi, did consecrate Jacob and Joseph, that they should be priests and teachers over the land of my people.

5:30 the Lord God said unto me: Make other plates;

5:31 I, Nephi, to be obedient to the commandments of the Lord, went and made these plates

2 Nephi 6:2 called of God,

ordained after the manner of his holy order,

having been consecrated

6:3 for I am desirous for the welfare of your souls.

I have spoken unto you concerning all things which are written, from the creation of the world.

6:5 ye are of the house of Israel.

6:6 set up my standard to the people;

6:8 those who were at Jerusalem, have been slain and carried away captive.

6:9 the Lord has shown unto me

they should return again.

the Lord God, the Holy One of Israel, should manifest himself unto them in the flesh;

after he should manifest himself they should scourge him and crucify him, according to the words of the angel who spake it unto me.

6:11 after they are driven to and fro,

thus saith the angel,

many shall be afflicted in the flesh, and shall not be suffered to perish, because of the prayers of the faithful;

6:12 if it so be that they shall repent and fight not against Zion, and

do not unite themselves to that great and abominable church,
they shall be saved; for the Lord God will fulfil his covenants
which he has made unto his children;

6:13 they that fight against Zion and the covenant people of the Lord
shall lick up the dust of their feet;

the people of the Lord are they who wait for him;

6:14 he will manifest himself unto them in power and great glory,
when that day cometh when they shall believe in him;

6:15 they that believe not in him shall be destroyed, both by fire, and
by tempest, and by earthquakes, and by bloodsheds, and by
pestilence, and by famine.

6:17 the Mighty God shall deliver his covenant people.

6:18 I the Lord am thy Savior and thy Redeemer,

2 Nephi 7:1 thus saith the Lord: Where is the bill of your mother s
divorcement?

To whom have I put thee away, or to which of my creditors have
I sold you?

7:2 at my rebuke I dry up the sea, I make their rivers a wilderness
and their fish to stink because the waters are dried up, and they
die because of thirst.

7:3 I clothe the heavens with blackness, and I make sackcloth their
covering.

7:7 I know that I shall not be ashamed.

7:8 the Lord is near, and he justifieth me.

7:9 all they who shall condemn me, behold, all they shall wax old
as a garment, and the moth shall eat them up.

2 Nephi 8:3 the Lord shall comfort Zion, he will comfort all her waste places;
and he will make her wilderness like Eden, and her desert like
the garden of the Lord.

Joy and gladness shall be found therein, thanksgiving and the
voice of melody.

8:4 for a law shall proceed from me,

8:6 Lift up your eyes to the heavens, and look upon the earth
beneath; for the heavens shall vanish away like smoke, and
the earth shall wax old like a garment;

8:7 Hearken unto me, ye that know righteousness, the people in
whose heart I have written my law, fear ye not the reproach of
men, neither be ye afraid of their revilings.

8:8 For the moth shall eat them up like a garment,

8:9 Awake, awake! Put on strength, O arm of the Lord; awake, as in
the ancient days.

8:11 the redeemed of the Lord shall return, and come with singing
unto Zion;

everlasting joy and holiness shall be upon their heads;

39

2 Nephi 8:13 the Lord thy maker, that hath stretched forth the heavens, and
laid the foundations of the earth,

hast feared continually every day, because of the fury of the
oppressor,

8:16 I have put my words in thy mouth, and I have covered thee in
the shadow of mine hand, that I may plant the heavens and lay

the foundations of the earth,

thou art my people.

8:22 I have taken out of thine hand the cup of trembling, the dregs of the cup of my fury; thou shalt no more drink it again.

8:24 Awake, awake, put on thy strength, O Zion; put on thy beautiful garments,

O Jerusalem, the holy city; for henceforth there shall no more come into thee the uncircumcised and the unclean.

9:1 I have read these things that ye might know concerning the covenants of the Lord

he has covenanted with all the house of Israel

9:2 he has spoken unto the Jews, by the mouth of his holy prophets, even from the beginning down,

from generation to generation, until the time comes that they shall be restored to the true church and fold of God;

9:4 ye know that our flesh must waste away and die; nevertheless, in our bodies we shall see God.

9:5 in the body he shall show himself unto those at Jerusalem, the great Creator that he suffereth himself to become subject unto man in the flesh, and die for all men,

40

2 Nephi 9:6 as death hath passed upon all men, to fulfil the merciful plan of the great Creator, there must needs be a power of resurrection, and the resurrection must needs come unto man by reason of the fall;

the fall came by reason of transgression;

because man became fallen they were cut off from the presence of the Lord.

9:7 Wherefore, it must needs be an infinite atonement

9:8 if the flesh should rise no more our spirits must become subject to that angel who fell from before the presence of the Eternal God, and became the devil, to rise no more.

9:9 that being who beguiled our first parents, who transformeth himself nigh unto an angel of light, and stirreth up the children of men unto secret combinations of murder and all manner of secret works of darkness.

9:10 God, who prepareth a way for our escape from the grasp of this awful monster;

9:11 this death, of which I have spoken, which is the temporal, shall deliver up its dead; which death is the grave.

9:12 this death of which I have spoken, which is the spiritual death, shall deliver up its dead; which spiritual death is hell;

by the power of the resurrection of the Holy One of Israel.

9:13 the paradise of God must deliver up the spirits of the righteous, and the grave deliver up the body of the righteous; and the spirit and the body is restored to itself again,

all men become incorruptible, and immortal, and they are living souls, having a perfect knowledge like unto us in the flesh,

9:15 when all men shall have passed from this first death unto life, insomuch as they have become immortal, they must appear before the judgment-seat of the Holy One of Israel;

9:16 they who are righteous shall be righteous still, and they who are filthy shall be filthy still;

2 Nephi 9:17 O the greatness and the justice of our God! For he executeth all his words, and they have gone forth out of his mouth, and his law must be fulfilled.

9:18 they who have endured the crosses of the world, and despised the shame of it, they shall inherit the kingdom of God,
 was prepared for them from the foundation of the world,
 their joy shall be full forever.

9:19 he delivereth his saints from that awful monster the devil, and death, and hell,

9:21 he suffereth the pains of all men, yea, the pains of every living creature, both men, women, and children, who belong to the family of Adam.

9:22 he suffereth this that the resurrection might pass upon all men, that all might stand before him at the great and judgment day.

9:23 he commandeth all men that they must repent, and be baptized in his name, having perfect faith in the Holy One of Israel,

9:25 he has given a law; and where there is no law given there is no punishment;

 where there is no punishment there is no condemnation; and where there is no condemnation the mercies of the Holy One of Israel have claim upon them, because of the atonement;

9:26 the atonement satisfieth the demands of his justice upon all those who have not the law given to them, that they are delivered from that awful monster, death and hell, and the devil,

9:27 wo unto him that has the law given,

9:28 O that cunning plan of the evil one!

9:29 But to be learned is good if they hearken unto the counsels of God.

9:30 But wo unto the rich, who are rich as to the things of the world.
For because they are rich they despise the poor, and they persecute the meek, and their hearts are upon their treasures; wherefore, their treasure is their God.

9:35 Wo unto the murderer who deliberately killeth, for he shall die.

9:36 Wo unto them who commit whoredoms, for they shall be thrust down to hell.

9:39 remember the awfulness in transgressing against that Holy God,
Remember, to be carnally-minded is death, and to be spiritually-minded is life eternal.

9:40 Remember the greatness of the Holy One of Israel.
the words of truth are hard against all uncleanness;

9:42 whoso knocketh, to him will he open;

9:43 But the things of the wise and the prudent shall be hid from them forever

9:44 I take off my garments, and I shake them before you;
I stand with brightness before him, and am rid of your blood.

9:46 Prepare your souls for that glorious day when justice shall be administered unto the righteous,

9:48 it must needs be expedient that I teach you the consequences of sin.

9:50 Come, my brethren, every one that thirsteth, come ye to the waters; and he that hath no money, come buy and eat; yea, come buy wine and milk without money and without price.

9:51 remember the words which I have spoken;
9:52 remember the words of your God; pray unto him continually by
day, and give thanks unto his holy name by night.
9:53 behold how great the covenants of the Lord,
10:3 it must needs be expedient that Christ
angel spake unto me that this should be his name should
come among the Jews,
they shall crucify him
10:7 When the day cometh that they shall believe in me, that I am
Christ, then have I covenanted with their fathers
10:14 I, the Lord, the king of heaven, will be their king,
10:15 that my covenants may be fulfilled
10:16 he that fighteth against Zion,
shall perish;
10:19 I will consecrate this land unto thy seed,
10:20 God has given us so great knowledge concerning these things,
let us remember him, and lay aside our sins,
10:22 the Lord remembereth all them who have been broken off,
10:23 remember that ye are free to act for yourselves
10:24 remember, after ye are reconciled unto God, that it is only in
and through the grace of God that ye are saved.

42

2 Nephi 11:2 I, Nephi, write more of the words of Isaiah,
my soul delighteth in his words.
I will liken his words unto my people,
I will send them forth unto all my children,

he verily saw my Redeemer, even as I have seen him.

11:3 my brother, Jacob, also has seen him as I have seen him;
by the words of three, God hath said, I will establish my word.
God sendeth more witnesses,

43

2 Nephi 11:4 my soul delighteth in proving unto my people the truth of the coming of Christ;

all things which have been given of God from the beginning of the world, unto man, are the typifying of him.

11:5 my soul delighteth in the covenants of the Lord

my soul delighteth in his grace, and in his justice, and power, and mercy in the great and eternal plan of deliverance from death.

11:6 my soul delighteth in proving unto my people that save Christ should come all men must perish.

11:7 if there be no Christ there be no God;

if there be no God we are not, for there could have been no creation.

44

2 Nephi 12:2 in the last days, when the mountain of the Lord's house shall be established in the top of the mountains, and shall be exalted above the hills, and all nations shall flow unto it.

12:3 Come ye, and let us go up to the mountain of the Lord, to the house of the God of Jacob;

he will teach us of his ways,
we will walk in his paths;
out of Zion shall go forth the law,
the word of the Lord from Jerusalem.

12:4 he shall judge among the nations,

12:5 come ye and let us walk in the light of the Lord;
come, for ye have all gone astray, every one to his wicked
ways.

12:10 O ye wicked ones, enter into the rock,

12:11 the Lord alone shall be exalted in that day.

45

2 Nephi 12:19 they shall go into the holes of the rocks, and into the caves of
the earth,

the glory of his majesty shall smite them, when he ariseth to
shake terribly the earth.

12:20 In that day a man shall cast his idols of silver, and his idols of
gold, which he hath made for himself to worship, to the moles
and to the bats;

12:21 To go into the clefts of the rocks, and into the tops of the ragged
rocks, for the fear of the Lord shall come upon them and the
majesty of his glory shall smite them, when he ariseth to shake
terribly the earth.

13:1 the Lord of Hosts, doth take away from Jerusalem, and from
Judah, the stay and the staff, the whole staff of bread, and the
whole stay of water

13:9 The show of their countenance doth witness against them, and

doth declare their sin to be even as Sodom, and they cannot hide it.

Wo unto their souls, for they have rewarded evil unto themselves!

13:10 for they shall eat the fruit of their doings.

13:11 Wo unto the wicked, for they shall perish; for the reward of their hands shall be upon them!

13:12 women rule over them.

13:15 Ye beat my people to pieces, and grind the faces of the poor, saith the Lord God of Hosts.

13:16 the daughters of Zion are haughty, and walk with stretched-forth necks and wanton eyes, walking and mincing as they go, and making a tinkling with their feet

13:18 the Lord will take away the bravery

14:1 And in that day, seven women shall take hold of one man, saying: We will eat our own bread, and wear our own apparel; only let us be called by thy name to take away our reproach.

14:3 they that are left in Zion and remain in Jerusalem shall be called holy,

14:5 the glory of Zion shall be a defence.

46

2 Nephi 16:1 I saw also the Lord sitting upon a throne, high and lifted up, and his train filled the temple.

16:2 Above it stood the seraphim;

16:3 Holy, holy, holy, is the Lord of Hosts;
the whole earth is full of his glory.

16:4 the house was filled with smoke.
16:5 because I am a man of unclean lips; and I dwell in the midst of
a people of unclean lips;
mine eyes have seen the King, the Lord of Hosts.
16:6 Then flew one of the seraphim unto me,
having a live coal in his hand, which he had taken with the
tongs from off the altar;
16:7 And he laid it upon my mouth,
thine iniquity is taken away,
16:8 Also I heard the voice of the Lord, saying: Whom shall I send,
and who will go for us?
16:9 he said: Go and tell this people
16:10 Make the heart of this people fat, and make their ears heavy,
and shut their eyes lest they see with their eyes, and hear
with their ears, and understand with their heart, and be
converted and be healed.
16:12 for there shall be a great forsaking in the midst of the land.
16:13 the holy seed shall be the substance thereof.
17:14 Behold, a virgin shall conceive, and shall bear a son, and shall
call his name Immanuel.
17:21 a man shall nourish a young cow and two sheep;
17:22 And it shall come to pass, for the abundance of milk they shall
give he shall eat butter; for butter and honey shall every one
eat that is left in the land.

47

2 Nephi 18:1 the word of the Lord said unto me: Take thee a great roll, and

write in it with a man's pen,

18:5 The Lord spake also unto me again, saying:

18:6 Forasmuch as this people refuseth the waters of Shiloah that go softly,

18:7 behold, the Lord bringeth up upon them the waters of the river, strong and many,

18:11 the Lord spake thus to me with a strong hand, and instructed me that I should not walk in the way of this people,

18:14 he shall be for a sanctuary;

18:15 And many among them shall stumble and fall, and be broken, and be snared, and be taken.

18:16 Bind up the testimony, seal the law among my disciples.

18:18 I and the children whom the Lord hath given me are for signs and for wonders in Israel from the Lord of Hosts, which dwelleth in Mount Zion.

18:19 Seek unto them that have familiar spirits,

19:2 The people that walked in darkness have seen a great light; they that dwell in the land of the shadow of death, upon them hath the light shined.

19:3 Thou hast multiplied the nation, and increased the joy they joy before thee according to the joy in harvest,

19:4 thou hast broken the yoke of his burden, and the staff of his shoulder, the rod of his oppressor.

19:5 garments rolled in blood;

19:6 For unto us a child is born, unto us a son is given; and the government shall be upon his shoulder; and his name shall be called, Wonderful, Counselor, The Mighty God, The Everlasting Father, The Prince of Peace.

19:8 The Lord sent his word unto Jacob

19:10 the sycamores are cut down, but we will change them into cedars.

19:12 For all this his anger is not turned away, but his hand is stretched out still.

19:14 the Lord cut off from Israel head and tail, branch and rush in one day.

19:15 The ancient, he is the head; and the prophet that teacheth lies, he is the tail.

19:17 the Lord shall have no joy in their young men, neither shall have mercy on their fatherless and widows;

For all this his anger is not turned away, but his hand is stretched out still.

19:19 Through the wrath of the Lord of Hosts is the land darkened, and the people shall be as the fuel of the fire;

19:21 For all this his anger is not turned away, but his hand is stretched out still.

20:1 Wo unto them that decree unrighteous decrees, and that write grievousness which they have prescribed;

20:2 To turn away the needy from judgment, and to take away the right from the poor of my people, that widows may be their prey, and that they may rob the fatherless!

20:4 For all this his anger is not turned away, but his hand is stretched out still.

20:12 when the Lord hath performed his whole work upon Mount Zion and upon Jerusalem, I will punish the fruit of the stout heart of the king

20:16 Therefore shall the Lord, the Lord of Hosts, send among his fat

ones, leanness; and under his glory he shall kindle a burning like the burning of a fire.

20:17 And the light of Israel shall be for a fire, and his Holy One for a flame, and shall burn and shall devour his thorns and his briers in one day;

20:22 For though thy people Israel be as the sand of the sea, yet a remnant of them shall return; the consumption decreed shall overflow with righteousness.

48

2 Nephi 20:24 thus saith the Lord God of Hosts: O my people that dwellest in Zion, be not afraid

he shall smite thee with a rod, and shall lift up his staff against thee, after the manner of Egypt.

20:27 And it shall come to pass in that day that his burden shall be taken away from off thy shoulder, and his yoke from off thy neck, and the yoke shall be destroyed because of the anointing.

20:33 Behold, the Lord, the Lord of Hosts shall lop the bough with terror; and the high ones of stature shall be hewn down; and the haughty shall be humbled.

21:1 there shall come forth a rod out of the stem of Jesse, and a branch shall grow out of his roots.

21:2 And the Spirit of the Lord shall rest upon him, the spirit of wisdom and understanding, the spirit of counsel and might, the spirit of knowledge and of the fear of the Lord;

21:3 And shall make him of quick understanding in the fear of the

Lord; and he shall not judge after the sight of his eyes, neither reprove after the hearing of his ears.

21:4 But with righteousness shall he judge the poor, and reprove with equity for the meek of the earth; and he shall smite the earth with the rod of his mouth, and with the breath of his lips shall he slay the wicked.

21:5 And righteousness shall be the girdle of his loins, and faithfulness the girdle of his reins.

21:6 The wolf also shall dwell with the lamb, and the leopard shall lie down with the kid, and the calf and the young lion and fatling together; and a little child shall lead them.

21:7 And the cow and the bear shall feed; their young ones shall lie down together; and the lion shall eat straw like the ox.

21:8 And the suckling child shall play on the hole of the asp, and the weaned child shall put his hand on the cockatrice s den.

21:9 They shall not hurt nor destroy in all my holy mountain, for the earth shall be full of the knowledge of the Lord, as the waters cover the sea.

21:10 there shall be a root of Jesse, which shall stand for an ensign of the people; to it shall the Gentiles seek; and his rest shall be glorious.

22:1 in that day thou shalt say: O Lord, I will praise thee; though thou wast angry with me thine anger is turned away, and thou comfortedst me.

22:2 God is my salvation; I will trust, and not be afraid; for the Lord JEHOVAH is my strength and my song; he also has become my salvation.

22:3 Therefore, with joy shall ye draw water out of the wells of

salvation.

49

2 Nephi 23:2 Lift ye up a banner upon the high mountain, exalt the voice unto them, shake the hand,

23:3 I have commanded my sanctified ones, I have also called my mighty ones, for mine anger is not upon them that rejoice in my highness.

23:6 the day of the Lord is at hand; it shall come as a destruction from the Almighty.

23:7 shall all hands be faint, every man's heart shall melt;

23:8 And they shall be afraid; pangs and sorrows shall take hold of them; they shall be amazed one at another; their faces shall be as flames.

23:9 the day of the Lord cometh, cruel both with wrath and fierce anger, to lay the land desolate; and he shall destroy the sinners thereof out of it.

23:10 the stars of heaven and the constellations thereof shall not give their light; the sun shall be darkened in his going forth,
the moon shall not cause her light to shine.

23:11 I will punish the world for evil, and the wicked for their iniquity;

23:13 I will shake the heavens, and the earth shall remove out of her place,

23:15 Every one that is proud shall be thrust through; yea, and every one that is joined to the wicked shall fall by the sword.

23:16 Their children also shall be dashed to pieces before their eyes; their houses shall be spoiled and their wives ravished.

24:12 How art thou fallen from heaven, O Lucifer, son of the morning!

24:13 thou hast said in thy heart: I will ascend into heaven, I will exalt my throne above the stars of God; I will sit also upon the mount of the congregation, in the sides of the north;

24:14 I will ascend above the heights of the clouds; I will be like the Most High.

24:15 Yet thou shalt be brought down to hell, to the sides of the pit.

24:16 They that see thee shall narrowly look upon thee, and shall consider thee, and shall say: Is this the man that made the earth to tremble, that did shake kingdoms?

24:17 And made the world as a wilderness, and destroyed the cities thereof, and opened not the house of his prisoners?

24:23 I will also make it a possession for the bittern, and pools of water;

24:30 And the first-born of the poor shall feed, and the needy shall lie down in safety; and I will kill thy root with famine, and he shall slay thy remnant.

24:32 What shall then answer the messengers of the nations? That the Lord hath founded Zion, and the poor of his people shall trust in it.

50

2 Nephi 25:1 concerning the words which I have written,

25:3 the judgments of God, that they come upon all nations, according to the word which he hath spoken.

25:4 they are plain unto all those that are filled with the spirit of prophecy.

25:6 I, of myself, have dwelt at Jerusalem, wherefore I know concerning the regions round about;

25:9 have they been destroyed from generation to generation according to their iniquities;

and never hath any of them been destroyed save it were foretold them by the prophets of the Lord.

25:12 when the day cometh that the Only Begotten of the Father, yea, even the Father of heaven and of earth, shall manifest himself unto them in the flesh, behold, they will reject him, because of their iniquities, and the hardness of their hearts, and the stiffness of their necks.

25:13 Behold, they will crucify him; and after he is laid in a sepulchre for the space of three days he shall rise from the dead, with healing in his wings; and all those who shall believe on his name shall be saved in the kingdom of God.

25:14 after the Messiah hath risen from the dead, and hath manifested himself unto his people, unto as many as will believe on his name, behold, Jerusalem shall be destroyed again;

25:16 the Lord God hath scourged them by other nations for the space of many generations, yea, even down from generation to generation until they shall be persuaded to believe in Christ, the Son of God, and the atonement, which is infinite for all mankind

when that day shall come that they shall believe in Christ, and worship the Father in his name, with pure hearts and clean hands, and look not forward any more for another Messiah, then, at that time, the day will come that it must needs be

expedient that they should believe these things.

25:17 And the Lord will set his hand the again second time to restore his people from their lost and fallen state. Wherefore, he will proceed to do a marvelous work and a wonder among the children of men.

51

2 Nephi 25:18 he shall bring forth his words unto them,
words shall judge them at the last day,
they shall be given them for the purpose of convincing them of the true Messiah, who was rejected by them;
unto the convincing of them that they need not look forward any more for a Messiah to come, for there should not any come, save it should be a false Messiah which should deceive the people; for there is save one Messiah spoken of by the prophets, and that Messiah is he who should be rejected of the Jews.

25:19 according to the words of the prophets, and also the word of the angel of God, his name shall be Jesus Christ, the Son of God.

25:20 as the Lord God liveth that brought Israel up out of the land of Egypt, and gave unto Moses power that he should heal the nations after they had been bitten by the poisonous serpents, if they would cast their eyes unto the serpent which he did raise up before them, and also gave him power that he should smite the rock and the water should come forth;

there is none other name given under heaven save it be this

Jesus Christ, of which I have spoken, whereby man can be saved.

52

2 Nephi 25:22 these things shall go from generation to generation as long as the earth shall stand;

the nations who shall possess them shall be judged of them according to the words which are written.

25:24 notwithstanding we believe in Christ, we keep the law of Moses, and look forward with steadfastness unto Christ, until the law shall be fulfilled.

25:25 we keep the law because of the commandments.

25:26 we talk of Christ, we rejoice in Christ, we preach of Christ, we prophesy of Christ, and we write according to our prophecies, that our children may know to what source they may look for a remission of their sins.

25:27 we speak concerning the law that our children may know the deadness of the law; and they, by knowing the deadness of the law, may look forward unto that life which is in Christ, and know for what end the law was given.

the law is fulfilled in Christ,

25:28 the words which I have spoken shall stand as a testimony against you;

they are sufficient to teach any man the right way; for the right way is to believe in Christ and deny him not; for by denying him ye also deny the prophets and the law.

25:29 the right way is to believe in Christ, and deny him not;

Christ is the Holy One of Israel; wherefore ye must bow down before him, and worship him with all your might, mind, and strength, and your whole soul;

25:30 ye must keep the performances and ordinances of God

53

2 Nephi 26:1 after Christ shall have risen from the dead he shall show himself unto you,

and the words which he shall speak unto you shall be the law which ye shall do.

26:3 after the Messiah shall come there shall be signs given unto my people of his birth,

great and terrible shall that day be unto the wicked,

they shall perish; and they perish because they cast out the prophets, and the saints, and stone them, and slay them;

wherefore the cry of the blood of the saints shall ascend up to

God from the ground against them.

26:5 they that kill the prophets, and the saints, the depths of the earth shall swallow them up, saith the Lord of Hosts;

26:6 for the fire of the anger of the Lord shall be kindled against them,

26:8 behold, the righteous that hearken unto the words of the prophets, and destroy them not, but look forward unto Christ

with steadfastness for the signs which are given,

notwithstanding all persecution behold, they are they which shall not perish.

26:9 the Son of righteousness shall appear unto them; and he shall

heal them, and they shall have peace with him,

26:10 they sell themselves for naught; for, for the reward of their pride and their foolishness they shall reap destruction; for because they yield unto the devil and choose works of darkness rather than light,

26:11 For the Spirit of the Lord will not always strive with man.

26:12 the convincing of the Jews, that Jesus is the very Christ, it must needs be that the Gentiles be convinced also that Jesus is the Christ,

26:13 he manifesteth himself unto all those who believe in him, by the power of the Holy Ghost;

26:14 concerning the days when the Lord God shall bring these things forth unto the children of men.

26:16 their speech shall be low out of the dust, and their voice shall be as one that hath a familiar spirit;

for the Lord God will give unto him power, that he may whisper concerning them,

54

2 Nephi 26:17 They shall write the things which shall be done among them, and they shall be written and sealed up in a book,

they seek to destroy the things of God.

26:20 the Gentiles are lifted up in the pride of their eyes, and have stumbled, because of the greatness of their stumbling block, that they have built up many churches; nevertheless, they put down the power and miracles of God, and preach up unto themselves their own wisdom and their own learning, that they

may get gain and grind upon the face of the poor.

26:21 And there are many churches built up which cause envyings, and strifes, and malice.

26:22 And there are also secret combinations, even as in times of old, according to the combinations of the devil, for he is the founder of all these things; yea, the founder of murder, and works of darkness; yea, and he leadeth them by the neck with a flaxen cord, until he bindeth them with his strong cords forever.

26:23 the Lord God worketh not in darkness.

26:24 he loveth the world, even that he layeth down his own life that he may draw all men unto him.

he commandeth none that they shall not partake of his salvation.

26:25 he saith: Come unto me all ye ends of the earth, buy milk and honey, without money and without price.

26:27 he hath given it free for all men;

he hath commanded his people that they should persuade all men to repentance.

26:28 all men are privileged the one like unto the other, and none are forbidden.

26:29 He commandeth that there shall be no priestcrafts; for, behold, priestcrafts are that men preach and set themselves up for a light unto the world, that they may get gain and praise of the world; but they seek not the welfare of Zion.

26:30 the Lord God hath given a commandment that all men should have charity, which charity is love.

if they should have charity they would not suffer the laborer in Zion to perish.

26:31 the laborer in Zion shall labor for Zion; for if they labor for money they shall perish.

26:32 the Lord God hath commanded that men should not murder; that they should not lie; that they should not steal; that they should not take the name of the Lord their God in vain; that they should not envy; that they should not have malice; that they should not contend one with another; that they should not commit whoredoms; and that they should do none of these things;

26:33 he inviteth them all to come unto him and partake of his goodness;

he denieth none that come unto him, black and white, bond and free, male and female; and he remembereth the heathen; and all are alike unto God, both Jew and Gentile.

55

2 Nephi 27:2 they shall be visited of the Lord of Hosts, with thunder and with earthquake, and with a great noise, and with storm, and with tempest, and with the flame of devouring fire.

27:3 And all the nations that fight against Zion, and that distress her, shall be as a dream of a night vision;

27:5 the Lord hath poured out upon you the spirit of deep sleep. For behold, ye have closed your eyes, and ye have rejected the prophets; and your rulers, and the seers hath he covered because of your iniquity.

27:6 the Lord God shall bring forth unto you the words of a book, and they shall be the words of them which have slumbered.

27:7 the book shall be sealed; and in the book shall be a revelation from God, from the beginning of the world to the ending thereof.

27:10 the book shall be sealed by the power of God, and the revelation which was sealed shall be kept in the book until the own due time of the Lord,

they reveal all things from the foundation of the world unto the end thereof.

27:11 the words of the book which were sealed shall be read upon the house tops; and they shall be read by the power of Christ;

27:12 the book shall be hid from the eyes of the world, that the eyes of none shall behold it save it be that three witnesses shall behold it, by the power of God,

27:13 there is none other which shall view it, save it be a few according to the will of God,

27:14 the Lord God will proceed to bring forth the words of the book; and in the mouth of as many witnesses as seemeth him good

wo be unto him that rejecteth the word of God!

27:15 And the learned shall say: Bring hither the book, and I will read them.

27:16 And now, because of the glory of the world and to get gain will they say this, and not for the glory of God.

27:20 the Lord God say unto him: The learned shall not read them, for they have rejected them, and I am able to do mine own work;

wherefore thou shalt read the words which I shall give unto thee.

27:21 Touch not the things which are sealed, for I will bring them forth in mine own due time;

27:23 behold, I am God; and I am a God of miracles;

I will show unto the world that I am the same yesterday, today,
and forever;

I work not among the children of men save it be according to
their faith.

27:26 I will proceed to do a marvelous work among this people, yea,
a marvelous work and a wonder,

27:29 in that day shall the deaf hear the words of the book, and the
eyes of the blind shall see out of obscurity and out of darkness.

27:30 And the meek also shall increase, and their joy shall be in the
Lord, and the poor among men shall rejoice in the Holy One of
Israel.

27:31 they shall see that the terrible one is brought to naught,

27:34 when he seeth his children, the work of my hands, in the midst
of him, they shall sanctify my name, and sanctify the Holy One
of Jacob, and shall fear the God of Israel.

56

2 Nephi 28:2 the things which shall be written out of the book shall be of
great worth unto the children of men,

28:3 the churches which are built up, and not unto the Lord,

28:4 they shall contend one with another;

they shall teach with their learning, and deny the Holy Ghost,

28:5 they deny the power of God,

the Lord and the Redeemer hath done his work,

28:7 there shall be many which shall say: Eat, drink, and be merry,
for tomorrow we die;

28:8 fear God he will justify in committing a little sin; yea, lie a little,

take the advantage of one because of his words, dig a pit for thy neighbor; there is no harm in this;

28:9 their works shall be in the dark.

28:13 They rob the poor because of their fine sanctuaries; they rob the poor because of their fine clothing; and they persecute the meek and the poor in heart, because in their pride they are puffed up.

28:14 They wear stiff necks and high heads; yea, and because of pride, and wickedness, and abominations, and whoredoms, they have all gone astray

28:15 O the wise, and the learned, and the rich, that are puffed up in the pride of their hearts, and all those who preach false doctrines, and all those who commit whoredoms, and pervert the right way of the Lord, wo, wo, wo be unto them, saith the Lord God Almighty, for they shall be thrust down to hell!

57

2 Nephi 28:32 Wo be unto the Gentiles, saith the Lord God of Hosts! For notwithstanding I shall lengthen out mine arm unto them from day to day, they will deny me;

if they will repent and come unto me; for mine arm is lengthened out all the day long, saith the Lord God of Hosts.

29:1 there shall be many at that day when I shall proceed to do a marvelous work among them, that I may remember my covenants which I have made unto the children of men,

29:2 that I would remember your seed; and that the words of your seed should proceed forth out of my mouth unto your seed;

29:4 they shall have a Bible; and it shall proceed forth from the Jews, mine ancient covenant people.

29:5 O ye Gentiles, have ye remembered the Jews, mine ancient covenant people?

29:7 I, the Lord your God, have created all men,
I remember those who are upon the isles of the sea;
I rule in the heavens above and in the earth beneath;
I bring forth my word unto the children of men, yea, even upon all the nations of the earth?

29:8 the testimony of two nations is a witness unto you that I am God,

29:10 because that ye have a Bible ye need not suppose that it contains all my words;

29:11 I command all men, both in the east and in the west, and in the north, and in the south, and in the islands of the sea, that they shall write the words which I speak unto them;

out of the books which shall be written I will judge the world, every man according to their works,

29:12 I shall speak unto the Jews and they shall write it;

I shall also speak unto the Nephites and they shall write it;

I shall also speak unto the other tribes of the house of Israel, which I have led away, and they shall write it;

I shall also speak unto all nations of the earth and they shall write it.

29:14 I covenanted with Abraham that I would remember his seed forever.

30:2 as many of the Gentiles as will repent are the covenant people of the Lord;

as many of the Jews as will not repent shall be cast off;
the Lord covenanteth with none save it be with them that repent
and believe in his Son, who is the Holy One of Israel.

30:5 the gospel of Jesus Christ shall be declared among them;
they shall be restored unto the knowledge of their fathers, and
also to the knowledge of Jesus Christ,

30:7 the Jews which are scattered also shall begin to believe in
Christ;

30:8 the Lord God shall commence his work among all nations,
kindreds, tongues, and people, to bring about the restoration of
his people upon the earth.

30:9 with righteousness shall the Lord God judge the poor, and
reprove with equity for the meek of the earth.

he shall smite the earth with the rod of his mouth; and with the
breath of his lips shall he slay the wicked.

30:10 the wicked will he destroy;

30:12 then shall the wolf dwell with the lamb; and the leopard shall lie
down with the kid, and the calf, and the young lion, and the
fatling, together; and a little child shall lead them.

30:13 And the cow and the bear shall feed; their young ones shall lie
down together; and the lion shall eat straw like the ox.

30:14 And the sucking child shall play on the hole of the asp, and the
weaned child shall put his hand on the cockatrice s den.

30:15 They shall not hurt nor destroy in all my holy mountain; for the
earth shall be full of the knowledge of the Lord as the waters
cover the sea.

30:17 there is nothing which is sealed upon the earth save it shall be
loosed.

30:18 all things which have been revealed unto the children of men shall at that day be revealed;

Satan shall have power over the hearts of the children of men no more,

58

2 Nephi 31:2 the things which I have written sufficeth me, doctrine of Christ;

31:3 my soul delighteth in plainness; for after this manner doth the Lord God work among the children of men.

the Lord God giveth light unto the understanding; he speaketh unto men according to their language, unto their understanding.

31:4 ye should remember concerning that prophet which the Lord showed unto me, that should baptize the Lamb of God, which should take away the sins of the world.

31:5 if the Lamb of God, he being holy, should have need to be baptized by water, to fulfil all righteousness, O then, how much more need have we, being unholy, to be baptized, yea, even by water!

31:7 he showeth unto the children of men that, according to the flesh he humbleth himself before the Father, and witnesseth unto the Father that he would be obedient unto him in keeping his commandments.

31:8 he was baptized with water the Holy Ghost descended upon him in the form of a dove.

31:9 it showeth unto the children of men the straightness of the path, and the narrowness of the gate, by which they should enter, he having set the example before them.

31:11 the Father said: Repent ye, repent ye, and be baptized in the name of my Beloved Son.

31:12 the voice of the Son came unto me, saying: He that is baptized in my name, to him will the Father give the Holy Ghost, like unto me;

31:13 then can ye speak with the tongue of angels, and shout praises unto the Holy One of Israel.

59

2 Nephi 31:14 thus came the voice of the Son unto me,

After ye have repented of your sins,
witnessed unto the Father that ye are willing to keep my commandments, by the baptism of water,
have received the baptism of fire and of the Holy Ghost,
can speak with a new tongue, yea, even with the tongue of angels,
after this should deny me, it would have been better for you that ye had not known me.

31:15 He that endureth to the end, the same shall be saved.

31:16 unless a man shall endure to the end, in following the example of the Son of the living God, he cannot be saved.

60

2 Nephi 31:17 I have seen that your Lord and your Redeemer should do;
that ye might know the gate by which ye should enter.
the gate by which ye should enter is repentance
baptism by water;
then cometh a remission of your sins by fire and by the Holy
Ghost.

31:18 then are ye in this strait and narrow path which leads to eternal
life;
according to the commandments of the Father and the Son;
ye have received the Holy Ghost, which witnesses of the Father
and the Son,

31:19 ye have not come thus far save it were by the word of Christ
with unshaken faith in him, relying wholly upon the merits of
him who is mighty to save.

31:20 if ye shall press forward, feasting upon the word of Christ, and
endure to the end, behold, thus saith the Father: Ye shall have
eternal life.

31:21 this is the doctrine of Christ,

61

2 Nephi 32:2 remember that I said unto you
after ye had received the Holy Ghost ye could speak with the
tongue of angels?

32:3 Angels speak by the power of the Holy Ghost; wherefore, they
speak the words of Christ.

the words of Christ will tell you all things what ye should do.

32:4 if ye cannot understand them it will be because ye ask not,

neither do ye knock; wherefore, ye are not brought into the light, but must perish in the dark.

32:5 if ye will enter in by the way,
receive the Holy Ghost, it will show unto you all things what ye should do.

32:6 this is the doctrine of Christ,

32:7 I am left to mourn because of the unbelief, and the wickedness, and the ignorance, and the stiffneckedness of men; for they will not search knowledge, nor understand great knowledge, when it is given unto them in plainness, even as plain as word can be.

32:8 For if ye would hearken unto the Spirit which teacheth a man to pray ye would know that ye must pray; for the evil spirit teacheth not a man to pray, but teacheth him that he must not pray.

32:9 ye must pray always, and not faint;
ye must not perform any thing unto the Lord save in the first place ye shall pray unto the Father in the name of Christ, that he will consecrate thy performance unto thee, that thy performance may be for the welfare of thy soul.

62

2 Nephi 33:1 when a man speaketh by the power of the Holy Ghost the power of the Holy Ghost carrieth it unto the hearts of the children of men.

33:2 there are many that harden their hearts against the Holy Spirit, that it hath no place in them;

33:3 I pray continually for them by day, and mine eyes water my pillow by night, because of them;

I cry unto my God in faith,

33:4 the Lord God will consecrate my prayers for the gain of my people.

the words which I have written in weakness will be made strong unto them;

it persuadeth them to do good; it maketh known unto them of their fathers;

it speaketh of Jesus, and persuadeth them to believe in him, to endure to the end, which is life eternal.

33:5 it speaketh harshly against sin, according to the plainness of the truth;

33:7 I shall meet many souls spotless at his judgment-seat.

33:9 for none of these can I hope except they shall be reconciled unto Christ,

enter into the narrow gate,

walk in the strait path which leads to life,

continue in the path until the end of the day of probation.

33:10 believe in Christ; and if ye believe not in these words believe in Christ.

And if ye shall believe in Christ ye will believe in these words,

33:12 I pray the Father in the name of Christ that many of us, if not all, may be saved in his kingdom at that great and last day.

33:15 what I seal on earth, shall be brought against you at the judgment bar; for thus hath the Lord commanded me,

Book of Jacob 1:2 he gave me, Jacob, a commandment that I should write upon these plates a few of the things which I considered to be most precious;

1:3 I should preserve these plates and hand them down unto my seed, from generation to generation.

1:4 if there were preaching which was sacred, or revelation which was great, or prophesying, that I should engraven the heads of them upon these plates,

touch upon them as much as it were possible, for Christ s sake,

1:5 because of faith and great anxiety, it truly had been made manifest unto us concerning our people, what things should happen unto them.

1:6 we also had many revelations, and the spirit of much prophecy; we knew of Christ and his kingdom, which should come.

1:7 we labored diligently among our people, that we might persuade them to come unto Christ, and partake of the goodness of God, that they might enter into his rest, lest by any means he should swear in his wrath they should not enter in,

1:8 we would to God that we could persuade all men not to rebel against God,

that all men would believe in Christ, and view his death, and suffer his cross and bear the shame of the world;

1:15 the people of Nephi, under the reign of the second king, began to grow hard in their hearts, and indulge themselves somewhat in wicked practices, such as like unto David of old desiring many wives and concubines, and also Solomon, his son.

1:16 they also began to search much gold and silver, and began to

be lifted up somewhat in pride.

1:17 I, Jacob, gave unto them these words as I taught them in the temple, having first obtained mine errand from the Lord.

1:18 I, Jacob, and my brother Joseph had been consecrated priests and teachers of this people,

1:19 we did magnify our office unto the Lord, taking upon us the responsibility, answering the sins of the people upon our own heads

laboring with our might their blood might not come upon our garments;

64

Book of Jacob 2:2 according to the responsibility which I am under to God, to magnify mine office with soberness, and that I might rid my garments of your sins, I come up into the temple this day that I might declare unto you the word of God.

2:3 I have hitherto been diligent in the office of my calling;

2:5 know that by the help of the all-powerful Creator of heaven and earth I can tell you concerning your thoughts,

ye are beginning to labor in sin, which sin appeareth very abominable unto me, yea, and abominable unto God.

2:7 it grieveth me that I must use so much boldness of speech concerning you, before your wives and your children,

2:9 constrained, because of the strict commandment which I have received from God,

2:10 I must do according to the strict commands of God, and under the glance of the piercing eye of the Almighty God.

2:11 as I inquired of the Lord, thus came the word unto me, saying:
Jacob, get thou up into the temple on the morrow, and declare
the word which I shall give thee unto this people.

2:12 many of you have begun to search for gold, and for silver, and
for all manner of precious ores,

2:13 you have obtained many riches; and because some of you
have obtained more abundantly than that of your brethren ye
are lifted up in the pride of your hearts, and wear stiff necks and
high heads because of the costliness of your apparel, and
persecute your brethren because ye suppose that ye are better
than they.

2:14 he condemneth you, and if ye persist in these things his
judgments must speedily come unto you.

2:15 he can pierce you, and with one glance of his eye he can smite
you to the dust!

2:17 Think of your brethren like unto yourselves, and be familiar with
all and free with your substance, that they may be rich like unto
you.

2:18 before ye seek for riches, seek ye for the kingdom of God.

2:19 after ye have obtained a hope in Christ ye shall obtain riches, if
ye seek them; and ye will seek them for the intent to do good
to clothe the naked, and to feed the hungry, and to liberate the
captive, and administer relief to the sick and the afflicted.

65

Book of Jacob 2:20 I have spoken unto you concerning pride;

2:21 such things are abominable unto him who created all flesh?

all flesh is of the dust; and for the selfsame end hath he created them, that they should keep his commandments and glorify him forever.

2:23 the word of God burdens me because of your grosser crimes.

thus saith the Lord: This people begin to wax in iniquity; they understand not the scriptures,

they seek to excuse themselves in committing whoredoms, because of the things which were written concerning David, and Solomon his son.

2:24 David and Solomon truly had many wives and concubines, which thing was abominable before me, saith the Lord.

2:25 thus saith the Lord, I have led this people forth out of the land of Jerusalem, by the power of mine arm, that I might raise up unto me a righteous branch from the fruit of the loins of Joseph.

2:26 I the Lord God will not suffer that this people shall do like unto them of old.

2:27 hearken to the word of the Lord: For there shall not any man among you have save it be one wife; and concubines he shall have none;

2:28 I, the Lord God, delight in the chastity of women.

whoredoms are an abomination before me; thus saith the Lord of Hosts.

2:29 this people shall keep my commandments, saith the Lord of Hosts, or cursed be the land for their sakes.

2:30 if I will, saith the Lord of Hosts, raise up seed unto me, I will command my people; otherwise they shall hearken unto these things.

2:31 I, the Lord, have seen the sorrow, and heard the mourning of

the daughters of my people in the land of Jerusalem, yea, and in all the lands of my people, because of the wickedness and abominations of their husbands.

2:33 they shall not commit whoredoms, like unto them of old, saith the Lord of Hosts.

2:34 these commandments were given to our father, Lehi;

2:35 ye have done greater iniquities than the Lamanites, our brethren.

Ye have broken the hearts of your tender wives, and lost the confidence of your children, because of your bad examples before them;

because of the strictness of the word of God, which cometh down against you, many hearts died,

3:1 I, Jacob, would speak unto you that are pure in heart.

Look unto God with firmness of mind, and pray unto him with exceeding faith,

he will console you in your afflictions,

he will plead your cause, and send down justice upon those who seek your destruction.

3:3 wo, wo, unto you that are not pure in heart, that are filthy this day before God; for except ye repent the land is cursed for your sakes;

3:5 the Lamanites your brethren, whom ye hate because of their filthiness and the cursing which hath come upon their skins, are more righteous than you;

they have not forgotten the commandment of the Lord, which was given unto our fathers that they should have save it were one wife, and concubines they should have none,

3:7 their husbands love their wives, and their wives love their husbands; and their husbands and their wives love their children; and their unbelief and their hatred towards you is because of the iniquity of their fathers;

3:9 a commandment I give unto you, which is the word of God, that ye revile no more against them because of the darkness of their skins; neither shall ye revile against them because of their filthiness;

ye shall remember your own filthiness, and remember that their filthiness came because of their fathers.

3:10 ye shall remember your children, how that ye have grieved their hearts because of the example that ye have set before them;

remember that ye may, because of your filthiness, bring your children unto destruction, and their sins be heaped upon your heads at the last day.

3:11 hearken unto my words; arouse the faculties of your souls; shake yourselves that ye may awake from the slumber of death; and loose yourselves from the pains of hell that ye may not become angels to the devil, to be cast into that lake of fire and brimstone which is the second death.

3:12 warning them against fornication and lasciviousness, and every kind of sin, telling them the awful consequences of them.

66

Book of Jacob 4:1 the things which we write upon plates must remain;

4:3 we labor diligently to engraven these words upon plates,

hoping that our beloved brethren and our children will receive them with thankful hearts, and look upon them that they may learn with joy and not with sorrow, neither with contempt, concerning their first parents.

4:4 for this intent have we written these things, that they may know that we knew of Christ, and we had a hope of his glory many hundred years before his coming;

not only we ourselves had a hope of his glory, but also all the holy prophets which were before us.

4:5 they believed in Christ and worshiped the Father in his name, for this intent we keep the law of Moses, it pointing our souls to him;

for this cause it is sanctified unto us for righteousness, even as it was accounted unto Abraham in the wilderness to be obedient unto the commands of God in offering up his son Isaac, which is a similitude of God and his Only Begotten Son.

4:6 we search the prophets, and we have many revelations and the spirit of prophecy;

having all these witnesses we obtain a hope, and our faith becometh unshaken,

we truly can command in the name of Jesus and the very trees obey us, or the mountains, or the waves of the sea.

4:7 Nevertheless, the Lord God showeth us our weakness we may know that it is by his grace, and his great condescensions unto the children of men, that we have power to do these things.

4:8 great and marvelous are the works of the Lord. How unsearchable are the depths of the mysteries of him; and it is

impossible that man should find out all his ways.

no man knoweth of his ways save it be revealed unto him;

67

Book of Jacob 4: 9 by the power of his word man came upon the face of the earth, which earth was created by the power of his word.

if God being able to speak and the world was, and to speak and man was created, O then, why not able to command the earth, or the workmanship of his hands upon the face of it, according to his will and pleasure?

4:10 seek not to counsel the Lord, but to take counsel from his hand.

he counseleth in wisdom, and in justice, and in great mercy, over all his works.

4:11 be reconciled unto him through the atonement of Christ, his Only Begotten Son, and ye may obtain a resurrection, according to the power of the resurrection which is in Christ, and be presented as the first-fruits of Christ unto God, having faith, and obtained a good hope of glory in him before he manifesteth himself in the flesh.

4:12 speak of the atonement of Christ, and attain to a perfect knowledge of him,

to attain to the knowledge of a resurrection and the world to come?

4:13 he that prophesieth, let him prophesy to the understanding of men;

the Spirit speaketh the truth and lieth not.

it speaketh of things as they really are, and of things as they

really will be;

68

Book of Jacob 4:13 we are not witnesses alone in these things; for God also spake them unto prophets of old.

4:14 the Jews were a stiffnecked people; and they despised the words of plainness, and killed the prophets, and sought for things that they could not understand.

which blindness came by looking beyond the mark, they must needs fall;

4:15 I perceive by the workings of the Spirit which is in me, that by the stumbling of the Jews they will reject the stone upon which they might build and have safe foundation.

4:16 according to the scriptures, this stone shall become the great, and the last, and the only sure foundation, upon which the Jews can build.

4:17 how is it possible that these, after having rejected the sure foundation, can ever build upon it, that it may become the head of their corner?

4:18 I will unfold this mystery unto you;

69

Book of Jacob 5:2 Hearken, O ye house of Israel, and hear the words of me, a prophet of the Lord.

5:3 thus saith the Lord, I will liken thee, O house of Israel, like unto a tame olive-tree, which a man took and nourished in his

vineyard;

it grew, and waxed old, and began to decay.

5:4 he said: I will prune it, and dig about it, and nourish it, that perhaps it may shoot forth young and tender branches, and it perish not.

5:6 after many days it began to put forth somewhat a little, young and tender branches; but behold, the main top thereof began to perish.

5:7 pluck off those main branches which are beginning to wither away, and we will cast them into the fire that they may be burned.

5:8 I will take these young and tender branches, and I will graft them whithersoever I will.

5:11 the Lord of the vineyard caused that it should be digged about, and pruned, and nourished,

5:14 the Lord of the vineyard went his way, and hid the natural branches of the tame olive-tree in the nethermost parts of the vineyard,

5:15 a long time passed away, and the Lord of the vineyard said unto his servant: Come, let us go down into the vineyard, that we may labor in the vineyard.

5:20 And he said unto the servant: Take of the fruit thereof, and lay it up against the season, that I may preserve it unto mine own self; for behold, said he, this long time have I nourished it, and it hath brought forth much fruit.

5:24 the Lord of the vineyard said again unto his servant: Look hither, and behold another branch also, which I have planted; behold that I have nourished it also, and it hath brought forth

fruit.

5:26 the Lord of the vineyard said unto the servant: Pluck off the branches that have not brought forth good fruit, and cast them into the fire.

5:29 a long time had passed away, and the Lord of the vineyard said unto his servant: Come, let us go down into the vineyard, that we may labor again in the vineyard. For behold, the time draweth near, and the end soon cometh;

5:32 this time it hath brought forth much fruit, and there is none of it which is good.

5:35 the Lord of the vineyard said unto his servant: The tree profiteth me nothing, and the roots thereof profit me nothing so long as it shall bring forth evil fruit.

5:36 Nevertheless, I know that the roots are good, and for mine own purpose I have preserved them; and because of their much strength they have hitherto brought forth, from the wild branches, good fruit.

5:37 But behold, the wild branches have grown and have overrun the roots thereof; and because that the wild branches have overcome the roots thereof it hath brought forth much evil fruit; and because that it hath brought forth so much evil fruit thou beholdest that it beginneth to perish; and it will soon become ripened, that it may be cast into the fire, except we should do something for it to preserve it.

5:41 the Lord of the vineyard wept, and said unto the servant: What could I have done more for my vineyard?

5:42 Behold, I knew that all the fruit of the vineyard, save it were these, had become corrupted. And now these which have once

brought forth good fruit have also become corrupted;

5:70 it came to pass that the Lord of the vineyard sent his servant;
and the servant went and did as the Lord had commanded him,
and brought other servants; and they were few.

5:71 And the Lord of the vineyard said unto them: Go to, and labor in
the vineyard, with your might. For behold, this is the last time
that I shall nourish my vineyard; for the end is nigh at hand, and
the season speedily cometh; and if ye labor with your might
with me ye shall have joy in the fruit which I shall lay up unto
myself against the time which will soon come.

5:74 the Lord of the vineyard had preserved unto himself the natural
fruit, which was most precious unto him from the beginning.

5:75 behold ye shall have joy with me because of the fruit of my
vineyard.

5:76 For behold, for a long time will I lay up of the fruit of my
vineyard unto mine own self against the season,

5:77 when the time cometh that evil fruit shall again come into my
vineyard, then will I cause the good and the bad to be
gathered; and the good will I preserve unto myself, and the bad
will I cast away into its own place. And then cometh the season
and the end; and my vineyard will I cause to be burned with
fire.

70

Book of Jacob 6:2 the day that he shall set his hand again the second time to
recover his people, is the day, yea, even the last time, that the
servants of the Lord shall go forth in his power, to nourish and

prune his vineyard; and after that the end soon cometh.

6:3 how blessed are they who have labored diligently in his vineyard; and how cursed are they who shall be cast out into their own place!

the world shall be burned with fire.

6:4 how merciful is our God unto us, for he remembereth the house of Israel, both roots and branches;

he stretches forth his hands unto them all the day long;

they are a stiffnecked and a gainsaying people;

as many as will not harden their hearts shall be saved in the kingdom of God.

6:5 repent, and come with full purpose of heart, cleave unto God as he cleaveth unto you.

6:6 today, if ye will hear his voice, harden not your hearts;

6:8 Will ye reject the words of the prophets; will ye reject all the words which have been spoken concerning Christ,

and deny the good word of Christ, and the power of God, and the gift of the Holy Ghost, and quench the Holy Spirit, and make a mock of the great plan of redemption, which hath been laid for you?

6:9 if ye will do these things, that the power of the redemption and the resurrection, which is in Christ, will bring you to stand with shame and awful guilt before the bar of God?

6:10 And according to the power of justice, ye must go away into that lake of fire and brimstone, whose flames are unquenchable, which lake of fire and brimstone is endless torment.

6:11 repent ye, and enter in at the strait gate, and continue in the way which is narrow, until ye shall obtain eternal life.

71

Book of Jacob 7:1 Sherem.

7:2 began to preach among the people, and to declare unto them that there should be no Christ.

7:4 he had a perfect knowledge of the language of the people; wherefore, he could use much flattery, and much power of speech, according to the power of the devil.

7:5 he had hope to shake me from the faith,
for I truly had seen angels, and they had ministered unto me.

I had heard the voice of the Lord speaking unto me in very word, from time to time;

7:6 on this wise did he speak unto me, saying: Brother Jacob, I have sought much opportunity that I might speak unto you; for I have heard and also know that thou goest about much, preaching that which ye call the gospel, or the doctrine of Christ.

7:7 And ye have led away much of this people that they pervert the right way of God, and keep not the law of Moses which is the right way; and convert the law of Moses into the worship of a being which ye say shall come many hundred years hence.

And now behold, I, Sherem, declare unto you that this is blasphemy; for no man knoweth of such things; for he cannot tell of things to come.

7:9 And I said unto him: Deniest thou the Christ who shall come?

And he said: If there should be a Christ, I would not deny him; but I know that there is no Christ, neither has been, nor ever will be.

7:10 And I said unto him: Believest thou the scriptures? And he said, Yea.

7:11 And I said unto him: Then ye do not understand them; for they truly testify of Christ. Behold, I say unto you that none of the prophets have written, nor prophesied, save they have spoken concerning this Christ.

7:12 And this is not all it has been made manifest unto me, for I have heard and seen; and it also has been made manifest unto me by the power of the Holy Ghost; wherefore, I know if there should be no atonement made all mankind must be lost.

7:13 And it came to pass that he said unto me: Show me a sign by this power of the Holy Ghost, in the which ye know so much.

7:14 And I said unto him: What am I that I should tempt God to show unto thee a sign in the thing which thou knowest to be true? Yet thou wilt deny it, because thou art of the devil. Nevertheless, not my will be done; but if God shall smite thee, let that be a sign unto thee that he has power, both in heaven and in earth; and also, that Christ shall come. And thy will, O Lord, be done, and not mine.

7:15 the power of the Lord came upon him, insomuch that he fell to the earth.

72

Book of Jacob 7:17on the morrow the multitude were gathered together; and he

spake plainly unto them and denied the things which he had taught them, and confessed the Christ, and the power of the Holy Ghost, and the ministering of angels.

7:18 he spake plainly unto them, that he had been deceived by the power of the devil.

he spake of hell, and of eternity, and of eternal punishment.

7:19 he said: I fear lest I have committed the unpardonable sin, for I have lied unto God; for I denied the Christ, and said that I believed the scriptures; and they truly testify of him.

I have thus lied unto God I greatly fear lest my case shall be awful; but I confess unto God.

7:22 I had requested it of my Father who was in heaven; for he had heard my cry and answered my prayer.

7:23 the love of God was restored again among the people; and they searched the scriptures, and hearkened no more to the words of this wicked man.

73

Book of Enos 1:3 the words which I had often heard my father speak concerning eternal life, and the joy of the saints, sunk deep into my heart.

1:4 I kneeled down before my Maker, and I cried unto him in mighty prayer and supplication for mine own soul;

1:5 And there came a voice unto me, saying: Enos, thy sins are forgiven thee, and thou shalt be blessed.

1:6 And I, Enos, knew that God could not lie;

1:7 And I said: Lord, how is it done?

1:8 And he said unto me: Because of thy faith in Christ, whom thou

hast never before heard nor seen. And many years pass away before he shall manifest himself in the flesh; wherefore, go to, thy faith hath made thee whole.

1:9 when I had heard these words I began to feel a desire for the welfare of my brethren, the Nephites; wherefore, I did pour out my whole soul unto God for them.

1:10 And while I was thus struggling in the spirit, behold, the voice of the Lord came into my mind again, saying: I will visit thy brethren according to their diligence in keeping my commandments.

their transgressions will I bring down with sorrow upon their own heads.

1:11 after I, Enos, had heard these words, my faith began to be unshaken in the Lord; and I prayed unto him with many long strugglings for my brethren, the Lamanites.

1:12 after I had prayed and labored with all diligence, the Lord said unto me: I will grant unto thee according to thy desires, because of thy faith.

1:13 this was the desire which I desired of him that if it should so be, that my people, the Nephites, should fall into transgression, and by any means be destroyed, and the Lamanites should not be destroyed, that the Lord God would preserve a record of my people, the Nephites; even if it so be by the power of his holy arm, that it might be brought forth at some future day unto the Lamanites, that, perhaps, they might be brought unto salvation

1:15 I cried unto him continually, for he had said unto me: Whatsoever thing ye shall ask in faith, believing that ye shall

receive in the name of Christ, ye shall receive it.

1:16 And I had faith, and I did cry unto God that he would preserve the records;

he covenanted with me that he would bring them forth unto the Lamanites in his own due time.

Book of Enos 1:17 And I, Enos, knew it would be according to the covenant which he had made; wherefore my soul did rest.

1:18 the Lord said unto me: Thy fathers have also required of me this thing; and it shall be done unto them according to their faith; for their faith was like unto thine.

1:27 I soon go to the place of my rest, which is with my Redeemer; for I know that in him I shall rest. And I rejoice in the day when my mortal shall put on immortality, and shall stand before him; then shall I see his face with pleasure, and he will say unto me: Come unto me, ye blessed, there is a place prepared for you in the mansions of my Father.

74

Book of Jarom:1:2 For have not they revealed the plan of salvation?

1:4 And there are many among us who have many revelations, for they are not all stiffnecked.

And as many as are not stiffnecked and have faith, have communion with the Holy Spirit, which maketh manifest unto the children of men, according to their faith.

1:5 They observed to keep the law of Moses and the sabbath day holy unto the Lord.

And they profaned not; neither did they blaspheme.

And the laws of the land were exceedingly strict.

1:7 our kings and our leaders were mighty men in the faith of the Lord; and they taught the people the ways of the Lord;

wherefore, we withstood the Lamanites and swept them away out of our lands, and began to fortify our cities, or whatsoever place of our inheritance.

1:8 we multiplied exceedingly, and spread upon the face of the land, and became exceedingly rich in gold, and in silver, and in precious things, and in fine workmanship of wood, in buildings, and in machinery, and also in iron and copper, and brass and steel, making all manner of tools of every kind to till the ground, and weapons of war yea, the sharp pointed arrow, and the quiver, and the dart, and the javelin, and all preparations for war.

75

Book of Jarom:9 But the word of the Lord was verified, which he spake unto our fathers, saying that: Inasmuch as ye will keep my commandments ye shall prosper in the land.

1:10 the prophets of the Lord did threaten the people of Nephi, according to the word of God, that if they did not keep the commandments, but should fall into transgression, they should be destroyed from off the face of the land.

1:11 the prophets, and the priests, and the teachers, did labor diligently, exhorting with all long-suffering the people to diligence; teaching the law of Moses, and the intent for which it was given; persuading them to look forward unto the Messiah,

and believe in him to come as though he already was.

1:12 for they did prick their hearts with the word, continually stirring them up unto repentance.

76

Book of Omni 1:6 the Lord would not suffer, after he had led them out of the land of Jerusalem and kept and preserved them from falling into the hands of their enemies, yea, he would not suffer that the words should not be verified, which he spake unto our fathers, saying that: Inasmuch as ye will not keep my commandments ye shall not prosper in the land.

1:7 the Lord did visit them in great judgment;

77

Book of Omni 1:12 Mosiah, who was made king over the land of Zarahemla; he being warned of the Lord that he should flee out of the land of Nephi, and as many as would hearken unto the voice of the Lord should also depart out of the land with him, into the wilderness

1:13 he did according as the Lord had commanded him.

they departed out of the land into the wilderness, as many as would hearken unto the voice of the Lord; and they were led by many preachings and prophesyings.

they were admonished continually by the word of God;

they were led by the power of his arm, through the wilderness, until they came down into the land which is called the land of

Zarahemla.

1:14 Zarahemla did rejoice exceedingly, because the Lord had sent the people of Mosiah with the plates of brass which contained the record of the Jews.

78

Book of Omni 1:15 the people of Zarahemla came out from Jerusalem at the time that Zedekiah, king of Judah, was carried away captive into Babylon.

1:16 they journeyed in the wilderness, and were brought by the hand of the Lord across the great waters,

1:17 at the time that Mosiah discovered them, they had become exceedingly numerous.

their language had become corrupted; and they had brought no records with them; and they denied the being of their Creator;

1:18 after they were taught in the language of Mosiah, Zarahemla gave a genealogy of his fathers, according to his memory; and they are written,

Book of Omni 1:25 knowing king Benjamin to be a just man before the Lord, wherefore, I shall deliver up these plates unto him, exhorting all men to come unto God, the Holy One of Israel, and believe in prophesying, and in revelations,

in the ministering of angels, and in the gift of speaking with tongues, and in the gift of interpreting languages, and in all things which are good;

there is nothing which is good save it comes from the Lord;
that which is evil cometh from the devil.

1:26 I would that ye should come unto Christ, who is the Holy One of Israel, and partake of his salvation, and the power of his redemption.

Yea, come unto him, and offer your whole souls as an offering unto him, and continue in fasting and praying, and endure to the end; and as the Lord liveth ye will be saved.

80

Words of Mormon 1:6 I shall take these plates, which contain these prophesyings and revelations, and put them with the remainder of my record,

1:7 thus it whispereth me, according to the workings of the Spirit of the Lord which is in me.

the Lord knoweth all things which are to come;

1:8 my prayer to God is concerning my brethren, that they may once again come to the knowledge of God, yea, the redemption of Christ; that they may once again be a delightsome people.

81

Book of Mosiah 1:2 he caused that they should be taught in all the language of his fathers, that thereby they might become men of understanding; and that they might know concerning the

prophecies which had been spoken by the mouths of their fathers, which were delivered them by the hand of the Lord.

1:3 he also taught them concerning the records which were engraven on the plates of brass,

ye should remember that were it not for these plates, which contain these records and these commandments, we must have suffered in ignorance,

not knowing the mysteries of God.

1:4 it were not possible that our father, Lehi, could have remembered all these things, to have taught them to his children, except it were for the help of these plates;

having been taught in the language of the Egyptians therefore he could read these engravings, and teach them to his children, that thereby they could teach them to their children, and so fulfilling the commandments of God, even down to this present time.

1:5 kept and preserved by the hand of God, that we might read and understand of his mysteries, and have his commandments always before our eyes,

1:6 I would that ye should remember that these sayings are true, and also that these records are true.

1:7 ye should remember to search them diligently,
ye should keep the commandments of God,

82

Mosiah 1:10 I shall proclaim unto this my people out of mine own mouth that thou art a king and a ruler over this people,

1:11 I shall give this people a name,
they have been a diligent people in keeping the
commandments of the Lord.

1:13 if this highly favored people of the Lord should fall into
transgression, and become a wicked and an adulterous
people, that the Lord will deliver them up, that thereby they
become weak like unto their brethren; and he will no more
preserve them by his matchless and marvelous power, as he
has hitherto preserved our fathers.

1:15 he gave him charge concerning all the affairs of the kingdom.

1:16 he also gave him charge concerning the records which were
engraven on the plates of brass; and also the plates of Nephi;
and also, the sword of Laban, and the ball or director, which
led our fathers through the wilderness, which was prepared by
the hand of the Lord that thereby they might be led, every one
according to the heed and diligence which they gave unto him.

1:17 as they were unfaithful they did not prosper nor progress in
their journey,
to stir them up in remembrance of their duty.

83

Mosiah 1:18 gather themselves together, to go up to the temple to hear the
words

2:1 the people gathered themselves together throughout all the
land, that they might go up to the temple to hear the words

2:3 they also took of the firstlings of their flocks, that they might offer
sacrifice and burnt offerings according to the law of Moses;

2:4 that they might give thanks to the Lord their God, who had brought them out of the land of Jerusalem, and who had delivered them out of the hands of their enemies,

appointed just men to be their teachers, and also a just man to be their king,

taught them to keep the commandments of God, that they might rejoice and be filled with love towards God and all men.

84*

Mosiah 2:5 they came up to the temple, they pitched their tents round about, every man according to his family, consisting of his wife, and his sons, and his daughters, and their sons, and their daughters, from the eldest down to the youngest, every family being separate one from another.

2:6 And they pitched their tents round about the temple, every man having his tent with the door thereof towards the temple,

2:7 the multitude being so great that king Benjamin could not teach them all within the walls of the temple,

2:8 he caused that the words which he spake should be written and sent forth among those that were not under the sound of his voice,

2:9 all ye that have assembled yourselves together,
open your ears that ye may hear, and your hearts that ye may understand, and your minds that the mysteries of God may be unfolded to your view.

2:11 I am like as yourselves, subject to all manner of infirmities in body and mind;

yet I have been chosen by this people, and consecrated by my father, and was suffered by the hand of the Lord that I should be a ruler and a king over this people; and have been kept and preserved by his matchless power, to serve you with all the might, mind and strength which the Lord hath granted unto me.

2:12 I have been suffered to spend my days in your service, even up to this time, and have not sought gold nor silver nor any manner of riches of you;

2:13 Neither have I suffered that ye should be confined in dungeons, nor that ye should make slaves one of another, nor that ye should murder, or plunder, or steal, or commit adultery; nor even have I suffered that ye should commit any manner of wickedness,

taught you that ye should keep the commandments of the Lord,
2:14 I, myself, have labored with mine own hands that I might serve you,

2:15 I can answer a clear conscience before God this day.

2:16 I had spent my days in your service, I do not desire to boast, for I have only been in the service of God.

2:17 when ye are in the service of your fellow beings ye are only in the service of your God.

2:20 you should render all the thanks and praise which your whole soul has power to possess, to that God who has created you, and has kept and preserved you, and has caused that ye should rejoice, and has granted that ye should live in peace one with another

2:21 ye should serve him who has created you from the beginning,

and is preserving you from day to day, by lending you breath,
that ye may live and move and do according to your own will,
and even supporting you from one moment to another

if ye should serve him with all your whole souls yet ye would be
unprofitable servants.

2:23 in the first place, he hath created you, and granted unto you
your lives, for which ye are indebted unto him.

2:24 secondly, he doth require that ye should do as he hath
commanded you; for which if ye do, he doth immediately bless
you; and therefore he hath paid you.

ye are still indebted unto him,

2:25 Ye cannot say that ye are even as much as the dust of the
earth; yet ye were created of the dust of the earth; but behold, it
belongeth to him who created you.

2:27 I had served you, walking with a clear conscience before God,
even so I at this time have caused that ye should assemble
yourselves together, that I might be found blameless, and that
your blood should not come upon me, when I shall stand to be
judged of God of the things whereof he hath commanded me
concerning you.

2:28 I have caused that ye should assemble yourselves together
that I might rid my garments of your blood,

that I might go down in peace, and my immortal spirit may join
the choirs above in singing the praises of a just God.

2:30 my whole frame doth tremble exceedingly while attempting to
speak unto you; but the Lord God doth support me, and hath
suffered me that I should speak unto you,

2:31 if ye shall keep the commandments of my son, or the

commandments of God which shall be delivered unto you by him, ye shall prosper in the land, and your enemies shall have no power over you.

2:33 he receiveth for his wages an everlasting punishment, having transgressed the law of God contrary to his own knowledge.

2:34 ye are eternally indebted to your heavenly Father, to render to him all that you have and are;

2:36 after ye have known and have been taught all these things, if ye should transgress and go contrary to that which has been spoken, that ye do withdraw yourselves from the Spirit of the Lord, that it may have no place in you to guide you in wisdom's paths

2:38 if that man repenteth not, and remaineth and dieth an enemy to God, the demands of divine justice do awaken his immortal soul to a lively sense of his own guilt, which doth cause him to shrink from the presence of the Lord, and doth fill his breast with guilt, and pain, and anguish, which is like an unquenchable fire, whose flame ascendeth up forever and ever.

2:40 I pray that ye should awake to a remembrance of the awful situation of those that have fallen into transgression.

2:41 And moreover, I would desire that ye should consider on the blessed and happy state of those that keep the commandments of God.

they are blessed in all things, both temporal and spiritual; and if they hold out faithful to the end they are received into heaven, that thereby they may dwell with God in a state of never-ending happiness.

3:2 the things which I shall tell you are made known unto me by an angel from God.

3:3 And he said unto me: Awake, and hear the words which I shall tell thee;

3:5 the time cometh, and is not far distant, that with power, the Lord Omnipotent who reigneth, who was, and is from all eternity to all eternity, shall come down from heaven among the children of men, and shall dwell in a tabernacle of clay, and shall go forth amongst men, working mighty miracles, such as healing the sick, raising the dead, causing the lame to walk, the blind to receive their sight, and the deaf to hear, and curing all manner of diseases.

3:6 And he shall cast out devils, or the evil spirits which dwell in the hearts of the children of men.

3:7 And lo, he shall suffer temptations, and pain of body, hunger, thirst, and fatigue, even more than man can suffer, except it be unto death; for behold, blood cometh from every pore, so great shall be his anguish for the wickedness and the abominations of his people.

3:8 And he shall be called Jesus Christ, the Son of God, the Father of heaven and earth, the Creator of all things from the beginning; and his mother shall be called Mary.

3:9 And lo, he cometh unto his own, that salvation might come unto the children of men even through faith on his name; and even after all this they shall consider him a man, and say that he hath a devil, and shall scourge him, and shall crucify him.

3:10 And he shall rise the third day from the dead; and behold, he standeth to judge the world; and behold, all these things are

done that a righteous judgment might come upon the children of men.

85

Mosiah 3:11 his blood atoneth for the sins of those who have fallen by the transgression of Adam, who have died not knowing the will of God concerning them, or who have ignorantly sinned.

3:12 wo unto him who knoweth that he rebelleth against God! For salvation cometh to none such except it be through repentance and faith on the Lord Jesus Christ.

3:13 And the Lord God hath sent his holy prophets among all the children of men, to declare these things to every kindred, nation, and tongue, that thereby whosoever should believe that Christ should come, the same might receive remission of their sins, and rejoice with exceedingly great joy, even as though he had already come among them.

3:14 the Lord God saw that his people were a stiffnecked people, and he appointed unto them a law, even the law of Moses.

3:15 holy prophets spake unto them concerning his coming; yet they hardened their hearts, and understood not that the law of Moses availeth nothing except it were through the atonement of his blood.

3:16 as in Adam, or by nature, they fall, even so the blood of Christ atoneth for their sins.

3:17 there shall be no other name given nor any other way nor means whereby salvation can come unto the children of men, only in and through the name of Christ, the Lord Omnipotent.

3:18 he judgeth, and his judgment is just; and the infant perisheth not that dieth in his infancy; but men drink damnation to their own souls except they humble themselves and become as little children, and believe that salvation was, and is, and is to come, in and through the atoning blood of Christ, the Lord Omnipotent.

3:19 For the natural man is an enemy to God, and has been from the fall of Adam, and will be, forever and ever,

unless he yields to the enticings of the Holy Spirit, and putteth off the natural man and becometh a saint through the atonement of Christ the Lord, and becometh as a child, submissive, meek, humble, patient, full of love, willing to submit to all things which the Lord seeth fit to inflict upon him, even as a child doth submit to his father.

3:20 the time shall come when the knowledge of the Savior shall spread throughout every nation, kindred, tongue, and people.

3:21 when that time cometh, none shall be found blameless before God, except it be little children, only through repentance and faith on the name of the Lord God Omnipotent.

3:23 And now I have spoken the words which the Lord God hath commanded me.

3:24 And thus saith the Lord: They shall stand as a bright testimony against this people, at the judgment day; whereof they shall be judged, every man according to his works, whether they be good, or whether they be evil.

3:25 And if they be evil they are consigned to an awful view of their own guilt and abominations, which doth cause them to shrink from the presence of the Lord into a state of misery and

endless torment, from whence they can no more return;

3:26 they have drunk out of the cup of the wrath of God, which justice could no more deny unto them than it could deny that Adam should fall because of his partaking of the forbidden fruit;

3:27 their torment is as a lake of fire and brimstone, whose flames are unquenchable, and whose smoke ascendeth up forever and ever.

86

Mosiah 4:1 made an end of speaking the words which had been delivered unto him by the angel of the Lord,

4:2 they had viewed themselves in their own carnal state, even less than the dust of the earth.

O have mercy, and apply the atoning blood of Christ that we may receive forgiveness of our sins, and our hearts may be purified; for we believe in Jesus Christ, the Son of God, who created heaven and earth, and all things; who shall come down among the children of men.

4:3 the Spirit of the Lord came upon them, and they were filled with joy, having received a remission of their sins, and having peace of conscience, because of the exceeding faith which they had in Jesus Christ

4:5 the knowledge of the goodness of God at this time has awakened you to a sense of your nothingness, and your worthless and fallen state

4:6 ye have come to a knowledge of the goodness of God, and his matchless power, and his wisdom, and his patience, and his

long-suffering towards the children of men; and also, the atonement which has been prepared from the foundation of the world, that thereby salvation might come to him that should put his trust in the Lord, and should be diligent in keeping his commandments, and continue in the faith even unto the end of his life,

4:7 this is the man who receiveth salvation, through the atonement which was prepared from the foundation of the world for all mankind, which ever were since the fall of Adam, or who are, or who ever shall be, even unto the end of the world.

4:8 And this is the means whereby salvation cometh.

4:9 Believe in God; believe that he is,
he created all things, both in heaven and in earth;
he has all wisdom, and all power, both in heaven and in earth;
man doth not comprehend all the things which the Lord can comprehend.

4:10 ye must repent of your sins and forsake them, and humble yourselves before God; and ask in sincerity of heart that he would forgive you;

if you believe all these things see that ye do them.

4:11 ye have come to the knowledge of the glory of God, or if ye have known of his goodness and have tasted of his love, and have received a remission of your sins, which causeth such exceedingly great joy in your souls, even so I would that ye should remember, and always retain in remembrance, the greatness of God, and your own nothingness, and his goodness and long-suffering towards you, unworthy creatures, and humble yourselves even in the depths of humility, calling

on the name of the Lord daily, and standing steadfastly in the faith of that which is to come, which was spoken by the mouth of the angel.

4:12 ye do this ye shall always rejoice, and be filled with the love of God, and always retain a remission of your sins;

ye shall grow in the knowledge of the glory of him that created you, or in the knowledge of that which is just and true.

4:13 ye will not have a mind to injure one another, but to live peaceably, and to render to every man according to that which is his due.

4:14 ye will not suffer your children that they go hungry, or naked; neither will ye suffer that they transgress the laws of God, and fight and quarrel one with another, and serve the devil, who is the master of sin, or who is the evil spirit which hath been spoken of by our fathers, he being an enemy to all righteousness.

4:15 ye will teach them to walk in the ways of truth and soberness; ye will teach them to love one another, and to serve one another.

4:16 ye yourselves will succor those that stand in need of your succor; ye will administer of your substance unto him that standeth in need; and ye will not suffer that the beggar putteth up his petition to you in vain, and turn him out to perish.

4:19 are we not all beggars?

Do we not all depend upon the same Being, even God, for all the substance which we have, for both food and raiment, and for gold, and for silver, and for all the riches which we have of every kind?

4:20 ye have been calling on his name, and begging for a remission of your sins.

he has poured out his Spirit upon you, and has caused that your hearts should be filled with joy, and has caused that your mouths should be stopped that ye could not find utterance, so exceedingly great was your joy.

4:21 if God, who has created you, on whom you are dependent for your lives and for all that ye have and are, doth grant unto you whatsoever ye ask that is right, in faith, believing that ye shall receive,

ye ought to impart of the substance that ye have one to another.

4:22 if ye judge the man who putteth up his petition to you for your substance that he perish not, and condemn him, how much more just will be your condemnation for withholding your substance, which doth not belong to you but to God, to whom also your life belongeth;

4:23 I say these things unto those who are rich

4:24 I say unto the poor, ye who have not and yet have sufficient, that ye remain from day to day; I mean all you who deny the beggar, because ye have not; I would that ye say in your hearts that: I give not because I have not,

4:25 now, if ye say this in your hearts ye remain guiltless, otherwise ye are condemned; and your condemnation is just for ye covet that which ye have not received.

4:26 for the sake of retaining a remission of your sins from day to day, that ye may walk guiltless before God I would that ye should impart of your substance to the poor, every man

according to that which he hath, such as feeding the hungry, clothing the naked, visiting the sick and administering to their relief, both spiritually and temporally, according to their wants.

4:27 And see that all these things are done in wisdom and order; for it is not requisite that a man should run faster than he has strength.

4:28 ye should remember, that whosoever among you borroweth of his neighbor should return the thing that he borroweth, according as he doth agree, or else thou shalt commit sin; and perhaps thou shalt cause thy neighbor to commit sin also.

4:30 if ye do not watch yourselves, and your thoughts, and your words, and your deeds, and observe the commandment God, and continue in the faith of what ye have heard concerning the coming of our Lord, even unto the end of your lives, ye must perish.

And now, O man, remember, and perish not.

88

Mosiah 5:2 we believe all the words which thou hast spoken unto us; we know of their surety and truth, because of the Spirit of the Lord Omnipotent, which has wrought a mighty change in us, or in our hearts, that we have no more disposition to do evil, but to do good continually.

5:3 through the infinite goodness of God, and the manifestations of his Spirit, have great views of that which is to come; and were it expedient, we could prophesy of all things.

5:4 it is the faith which we have had on the things which our king

has spoken unto us that has brought us to this great knowledge, whereby we do rejoice with such exceedingly great joy.

5:5 we are willing to enter into a covenant with our God to do his will, and to be obedient to his commandments in all things that he shall command us, all the remainder of our days, that we may not bring upon ourselves a never-ending torment, as has been spoken by the angel, that we may not drink out of the cup of the wrath of God.

5:6 the covenant which ye have made is a righteous covenant.

5:7 because of the covenant which ye have made ye shall be called the children of Christ, his sons, and his daughters; this day he hath spiritually begotten you; ye say that your hearts are changed through faith on his name; therefore, ye are born of him and have become his sons and his daughters.

5:8 under this head ye are made free, and there is no other head whereby ye can be made free. There is no other name given whereby salvation cometh;

I would that ye should take upon you the name of Christ, all you that have entered into the covenant with God that ye should be obedient unto the end of your lives.

5:9 whosoever doeth this shall be found at the right hand of God, for he shall know the name by which he is called; for he shall be called by the name of Christ.

5:10 whosoever shall not take upon him the name of Christ must be called by some other name;

5:11 ye should remember also, that this is the name that I said I

should give unto you that never should be blotted out, except it be through transgression;

take heed that ye do not transgress, that the name be not blotted out of your hearts.

5:12 I would that ye should remember to retain the name written always in your hearts, that ye are not found on the left hand of God, but that ye hear and know the voice by which ye shall be called, and also, the name by which he shall call you.

5:13 how knoweth a man the master whom he has not served,

5:15 ye should be steadfast and immovable, always abounding in good works, that Christ, the Lord God Omnipotent, may seal you his, that you may be brought to heaven, that ye may have everlasting salvation and eternal life, through the wisdom, and power, and justice, and mercy of him who created all things, in heaven and in earth, who is God above all.

89

Mosiah 6:1 he should take the names of all those who had entered into a covenant with God to keep his commandments.

6:2 there was not one soul, except it were little children, but who had entered into the covenant and had taken upon them the name of Christ.

6:3 consecrated his son Mosiah to be a ruler and a king over his people,

appointed priests to teach the people, that thereby they might hear and know the commandments of God, and to stir them up in remembrance of the oath which they had made,

Mosiah 7:17 king Limhi sent a proclamation among all his people, that thereby they might gather themselves together to the temple to hear the words which he should speak unto them.

7:19 lift up your heads, and rejoice, and put your trust in God, in that God who was the God of Abraham, and Isaac, and Jacob; and also, that God who brought the children of Israel out of the land of Egypt, and caused that they should walk through the Red Sea on dry ground, and fed them with manna that they might not perish in the wilderness;

7:20 that same God has brought our fathers out of the land of Jerusalem, and has kept and preserved his people even until now;

it is because of our iniquities and abominations that he has brought us into bondage.

7:24 how many of our brethren have been slain, and their blood has been spilt in vain, and all because of iniquity.

7:25 For if this people had not fallen into transgression the Lord would not have suffered that this great evil should come upon them.

7:26 a prophet of the Lord have they slain; yea, a chosen man of God, who told them of their wickedness and abominations, and prophesied of many things which are to come, yea, even the coming of Christ.

7:27 he said unto them that Christ was the God, the Father of all things, and said that he should take upon him the image of

man, and it should be the image after which man was created
in the beginning;

he said that man was created after the image God,

God should come down among the children of men, and take
upon him flesh and blood, and go forth upon the face of the
earth

7:29 the Lord hath said: I will not succor my people in the day of
their transgression; but I will hedge up their ways that they
prosper not; and their doings shall be as a stumbling block
before them.

7:30 he saith: If my people shall sow filthiness they shall reap the
chaff thereof in the whirlwind; and the effect thereof is poison.

7:31 he saith: If my people shall sow filthiness they shall reap the
east wind, which bringeth immediate destruction.

7:33 if ye will turn to the Lord with full purpose of heart, and put your
trust in him, and serve him with all diligence of mind, if ye do
this, he will, according to his own will and pleasure, deliver you
out of bondage.

91

Mosiah 8:9 they have brought twenty-four plates which are filled with
engravings, and they are of pure gold.

8:11 there is no one in the land that is able to interpret the language
or the engravings that are on the plates.

8:12 Knowest thou of any one that can translate? For I am desirous
that these records should be translated into our language;

8:13 Ammon said unto him: I can assuredly tell thee, O king, of a

man that can translate the records; for he has wherewith that he can look, and translate all records that are of ancient date; and it is a gift from God. And the things are called interpreters, and no man can look in them except he be commanded, lest he should look for that he ought not and he should perish. And whosoever is commanded to look in them, the same is called seer.

8:16 a seer is a revelator and a prophet also; and a gift which is greater can no man have, except he should possess the power of God, which no man can; yet a man may have great power given him from God.

8:17 But a seer can know of things which are past, and also of things which are to come, and by them shall all things be revealed, or, rather, shall secret things be made manifest, and hidden things shall come to light, and things which are not known shall be made known by them, and also things shall be made known by them which otherwise could not be known.

8:18 God has provided a means that man, through faith, might work mighty miracles; therefore he becometh a great benefit to his fellow beings.

8:19 Doubtless a great mystery is contained within these plates, and these interpreters were doubtless prepared for the purpose of unfolding all such mysteries to the children of men.

8:20 how marvelous are the works of the Lord, and how long doth he suffer with his people; yea, and how blind and impenetrable are the understandings of the children of men;

Mosiah 9:3 we were smitten with famine and sore afflictions; for we were slow to remember the Lord our God.

9:6 I went in unto the king, and he covenanted with me that I might possess the land

9:12 they were a lazy and an idolatrous people; therefore they were desirous to bring us into bondage, that they might glut themselves with the labors of our hands; yea, that they might feast themselves upon the flocks of our fields.

9:17 I and my people did cry mightily to the Lord that he would deliver us out of the hands of our enemies, for we were awakened to a remembrance of the deliverance of our fathers.

9:18 God did hear our cries and did answer our prayers; and we did go forth in his might;

10:4 I did cause that the men should till the ground, and raise all manner of grain and all manner of fruit of every kind.

10:5 I did cause that the women should spin, and toil, and work, and work all manner of fine linen, yea, and cloth of every kind, that we might clothe our nakedness;

11:1 Zeniff conferred the kingdom upon Noah, one of his sons;

11:2 he did not keep the commandments of God, but he did walk after the desires of his own heart.

he had many wives and concubines.

11:3 he laid a tax of one fifth part of all they possessed,

11:4 all this did he take to support himself, and his wives and his concubines; and also his priests, and their wives and their concubines;

11:5 he put down all the priests that had been consecrated by his

father, and consecrated new ones in their stead, such as were lifted up in the pride of their hearts.

11:8 king Noah built many elegant and spacious buildings;

11:10 he also caused that his workmen should work all manner of fine work within the walls of the temple, of fine wood, and of copper, and of brass.

11:11 And the seats which were set apart for the high priests, which were above all the other seats, he did ornament with pure gold;

11:14 he placed his heart upon his riches, and he spent his time in riotous living with his wives and his concubines; and so did also his priests spend their time with harlots.

11:15 he planted vineyards round about in the land; and he built wine-presses, and made wine in abundance; and therefore he became a wine-bibber,

11:19 did boast, and did delight in blood, and the shedding of the blood of their brethren, and this because of the wickedness of their king and priests.

93

Mosiah 11:20 there was a man among them whose name was Abinadi; and he went forth among them, and began to prophesy,

Behold, thus saith the Lord, and thus hath he commanded me, saying, Go forth, and say unto this people, thus saith the Lord

Wo be unto this people, for I have seen their abominations, and their wickedness, and their whoredoms; and except they repent I will visit them in mine anger.

11:21 except they repent and turn to the Lord their God, behold, I will

deliver them into the hands of their enemies;

11:22 they shall know that I am the Lord their God, and am a jealous God, visiting the iniquities of my people.

11:23 except this people repent and turn unto the Lord their God, they shall be brought into bondage; and none shall deliver them, except it be the Lord the Almighty God.

11:25 except they repent in sackcloth and ashes, and cry mightily to the Lord their God, I will not hear their prayers, neither will I deliver them out of their afflictions;

11:29 king Noah hardened his heart against the word of the Lord, and he did not repent of his evil doings.

94

Mosiah 12:1 after the space of two years that Abinadi came among them in disguise, that they knew him not, and began to prophesy among them, saying: Thus has the Lord commanded me,
they have hardened their hearts against my words;
they have repented not of their evil doings;
I will visit them in my anger, yea, in my fierce anger will I visit them in their iniquities and abominations.

12:2 the Lord said unto me: Stretch forth thy hand and prophesy saying: Thus saith the Lord,

this generation, because of their iniquities, shall be brought into bondage, and shall be smitten on the cheek; yea, and shall be driven by men, and shall be slain; and the vultures of the air, and the dogs, yea, and the wild beasts, shall devour their flesh.

12:3 the life of king Noah shall be valued even as a garment in a hot

furnace; for he shall know that I am the Lord.

12:4 I will smite this my people with sore afflictions, yea, with famine and with pestilence;

12:6 I will send forth hail among them, and it shall smite them; and they shall also be smitten with the east wind; and insects shall pester their land also, and devour their grain.

12:7 And they shall be smitten with a great pestilence and all this will I do because of their iniquities and abominations.

12:8 except they repent I will utterly destroy them from off the face of the earth; yet they shall leave a record behind them,

12:14 we are guiltless, and thou, O king, hast not sinned; therefore, this man has lied concerning you, and he has prophesied in vain.

12:17 king Noah caused that Abinadi should be cast into prison; and he commanded that the priests should gather themselves together that he might hold a council with them what he should do with him.

12:19 they began to question him, that they might cross him,
he did withstand them in all their questions, and did confound them in all their words.

12:21 How beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of him that bringeth good tidings; that publisheth peace; that bringeth good tidings of good; that publisheth salvation; that saith unto Zion, Thy God reigneth;

12:22 Thy watchmen shall lift up the voice; with the voice together shall they sing; for they shall see eye to eye when the Lord shall bring again Zion;

12:23 Break forth into joy; sing together ye waste places of

Jerusalem; for the Lord hath comforted his people, he hath redeemed Jerusalem;

12:24 The Lord hath made bare his holy arm in the eyes of all the nations, and all the ends of the earth shall see the salvation of our God?

12:27 what teach ye this people?

12:28 We teach the law of Moses.

12:29 he said unto them: If ye teach the law of Moses why do ye not keep it? Why do ye set your hearts upon riches? Why do ye commit whoredoms and spend your strength with harlots, yea, and cause this people to commit sin, that the Lord has cause to send me to prophesy against this people, yea, even a great evil against this people?

12:31 ye have said that ye teach the law of Moses. And what know ye concerning the law of Moses?

12:32 they answered and said that salvation did come by the law of Moses.

12:33 if ye keep the commandments of God ye shall be saved; yea, if ye keep the commandments which the Lord delivered unto Moses in the mount of Sinai, saying:

12:34 I am the Lord thy God, who hath brought thee out of the land of Egypt, out of the house of bondage.

12:35 Thou shalt have no other God before me.

12:36 Thou shalt not make unto thee any graven image, or any likeness of any thing in heaven above, or things which are in the earth beneath.

13:2 they stood forth and attempted to lay their hands on him; but he withstood them, and said unto them:

13:3 Touch me not, for God shall smite you if ye lay your hands upon me, for I have not delivered the message which the Lord sent me to deliver;

13:5 the Spirit of the Lord was upon him; and his face shone with exceeding luster, even as Moses did while in the mount of Sinai, while speaking with the Lord.

13:6 And he spake with power and authority from God;

13:11 I read unto you the remainder of the commandments of God,

13:12 Thou shalt not make unto thee any graven image, or any likeness of things which are in heaven above, or which are in the earth beneath, or which are in the water under the earth.

13:13 And again: Thou shalt not bow down thyself unto them, nor serve them; for I the Lord thy God am a jealous God, visiting the iniquities of the fathers upon the children, unto the third and fourth generations of them that hate me;

13:14 And showing mercy unto thousands of them that love me and keep my commandments.

13:15 Thou shalt not take the name of the Lord thy God in vain; for the Lord will not hold him guiltless that taketh his name in vain.

13:16 Remember the sabbath day, to keep it holy.

13:17 Six days shalt thou labor, and do all thy work;

13:18 But the seventh day, the sabbath of the Lord thy God, thou shalt not do any work, thou, nor thy son, nor thy daughter, thy manservant, nor thy maid-servant, nor thy cattle, nor thy stranger that is within thy gates;

13:19 For in six days the Lord made heaven and earth, and the sea, and all that in them is; wherefore the Lord blessed the sabbath day, and hallowed it.

13:20 Honor thy father and thy mother, that thy days may be long upon the land which the Lord thy God giveth thee.

13:21 Thou shalt not kill.

13:22 Thou shalt not commit adultery. Thou shalt not steal.

13:23 Thou shalt not bear false witness against thy neighbor.

13:24 Thou shalt not covet thy neighbor s house, thou shalt not covet thy neighbor s wife, nor his man-servant, nor his maid-servant, nor his ox, nor his ass, nor anything that is thy neighbor s.

95

Mosiah 13:27 it is expedient that ye should keep the law of Moses as yet;

but I say unto you, that the time shall come when it shall no more be expedient to keep the law of Moses.

13:28 salvation doth not come by the law alone;

were it not for the atonement, which God himself shall make for the sins and iniquities of his people, that they must unavoidably perish, notwithstanding the law of Moses.

13:29 it was expedient that there should be a law given to the children of Israel, yea, even a very strict law; for they were a stiffnecked people, quick to do iniquity, and slow to remember the Lord their God;

13:30 Therefore there was a law given them, yea, a law of performances and of ordinances, a law which they were to observe strictly from day to day,

to keep them in remembrance of God and their duty towards him.

13:31 all these things were types of things to come.

13:32 they did not all understand the law; and this because of the hardness of their hearts;

they understood not that there could not any man be saved except it were through the redemption of God.

13:33 did not Moses prophesy unto them concerning the coming of the Messiah, and that God should redeem his people?

all the prophets who have prophesied ever since the world began have they not spoken more or less concerning these things?

13:34 Have they not said that God himself should come down among the children of men, and take upon him the form of a man, and go forth in mighty power upon the face of the earth?

13:35 Yea, and have they not said also that he should bring to pass the resurrection of the dead, and that he, himself, should be oppressed and afflicted?

Mosiah 14:1 Yea, even doth not Isaiah say: Who hath believed our report, and to whom is the arm of the Lord revealed?

14:2 For he shall grow up before him as a tender plant, and as a root out of dry ground; he hath no form nor comeliness; and when we shall see him there is no beauty that we should desire him.

14:3 He is despised and rejected of men; a man of sorrows, and acquainted with grief; and we hid as it were our faces from him; he was despised, and we esteemed him not.

14:4 Surely he has borne our griefs, and carried our sorrows; yet we did esteem him stricken, smitten of God, and afflicted.

14:5 But he was wounded for our transgressions, he was bruised for our iniquities; the chastisement of our peace was upon him;

and with his stripes we are healed.

14:6 All we, like sheep, have gone astray; we have turned every one to his own way; and the Lord hath laid on him the iniquities of us all.

14:7 He was oppressed, and he was afflicted, yet he opened not his mouth; he is brought as a lamb to the slaughter, and as a sheep before her shearers is dumb so he opened not his mouth.

14:8 He was taken from prison and from judgment; and who shall declare his generation? For he was cut off out of the land of the living; for the transgressions of my people was he stricken.

14:9 And he made his grave with the wicked, and with the rich in his death; because he had done no evil, neither was any deceit in his mouth.

14:10 Yet it pleased the Lord to bruise him; he hath put him to grief; when thou shalt make his soul an offering for sin he shall see his seed, he shall prolong his days, and the pleasure of the Lord shall prosper in his hand.

14:11 He shall see the travail of his soul, and shall be satisfied; by his knowledge shall my righteous servant justify many; for he shall bear their iniquities.

14:12 Therefore will I divide him a portion with the great, and he shall divide the spoil with the strong; because he hath poured out his soul unto death; and he was numbered with the transgressors; and he bore the sins of many, and made intercession for the transgressors.

15:1 God himself shall come down among the children of men, and shall redeem his people.

15:2 And because he dwelleth in flesh he shall be called the Son of God, and having subjected the flesh to the will of the Father, being the Father and the Son

15:3 The Father, because he was conceived by the power of God; and the Son, because of the flesh; thus becoming the Father and Son

15:4 And they are one God, yea, the very Eternal Father of heaven and of earth.

15:5 And thus the flesh becoming subject to the Spirit, or the Son to the Father, being one God, suffereth temptation, and yieldeth not to the temptation, but suffereth himself to be mocked, and scourged, and cast out, and disowned by his people.

15:6 And after all this, after working many mighty miracles among the children of men, he shall be led, yea, even as Isaiah said, as a sheep before the shearer is dumb, so he opened not his mouth.

15:7 Yea, even so he shall be led, crucified, and slain, the flesh becoming subject even unto death, the will of the Son being swallowed up in the will of the Father.

15:8 And thus God breaketh the bands of death, having gained the victory over death; giving the Son power to make intercession for the children of men

15:9 Having ascended into heaven, having the bowels of mercy; being filled with compassion towards the children of men; standing betwixt them and justice; having broken the bands of death, taken upon himself their iniquity and their transgressions, having redeemed them, and satisfied the demands of justice.

15:11 whosoever has heard the words of the prophets, yea, all the holy prophets who have prophesied concerning the coming of the Lord I say unto you, that all those who have hearkened unto their words, and believed that the Lord would redeem his people, and have looked forward to that day for a remission of their sins, I say unto you, that these are his seed, or they are the heirs of the kingdom of God.

15:12 For these are they whose sins he has borne; these are they for whom he has died, to redeem them from their transgressions.

96

Mosiah 15:13 all the holy prophets ever since the world began? I say unto you that they are his seed.

15:14 And these are they who have published peace, who have brought good tidings of good, who have published salvation;

15:15 And O how beautiful upon the mountains were their feet!

15:16 how beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of those that are still publishing peace!

15:17 how beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of those who shall hereafter publish peace, yea, from this time henceforth and forever!

15:18 how beautiful upon the mountains are the feet of him that bringeth good tidings, that is the founder of peace,

even the Lord, who has redeemed his people; yea, him who has granted salvation unto his people;

15:19 For were it not for the redemption which he hath made for his people, which was prepared from the foundation of the world,

all mankind must have perished.

15:20 the bands of death shall be broken, and the Son reigneth, and hath power over the dead;

he bringeth to pass the resurrection of the dead.

15:21 there cometh a resurrection, even a first resurrection; yea, even a resurrection of those that have been, and who are, and who shall be, even until the resurrection of Christ for so shall he be called.

15:22 the resurrection of all the prophets, and all those that have believed in their words, or all those that have kept the commandments of God, shall come forth in the first resurrection;

15:23 They are raised to dwell with God who has redeemed them; thus they have eternal life through Christ, who has broken the bands of death.

15:24 these are those who have part in the first resurrection; and these are they that have died before Christ came, in their ignorance, not having salvation declared unto them.

thus the Lord bringeth about the restoration of these; and they have a part in the first resurrection, or have eternal life, being redeemed by the Lord.

15:25 little children also have eternal life.

15:26 fear, and tremble before God, for ye ought to tremble; for the Lord redeemeth none such that rebel against him and die in their sins;

even all those that have perished in their sins ever since the world began, that have wilfully rebelled against God, that have known the commandments of God, and would not keep them;

these are they that have no part in the first resurrection.

15:28 the time shall come that the salvation of the Lord shall be declared to every nation, kindred, tongue, and people.

15:29 Yea, Lord, thy watchmen shall lift up their voice; with the voice together shall they sing; for they shall see eye to eye, when the Lord shall bring again Zion.

15:30 Break forth into joy, sing together, ye waste places of Jerusalem; for the Lord hath comforted his people, he hath redeemed Jerusalem.

15:31 The Lord hath made bare his holy arm in the eyes of all the nations; and all the ends of the earth shall see the salvation of our God.

97

Mosiah 16:1 The time shall

every nation, kindred, tongue, and people shall see eye to eye and shall confess before God that his judgments are just.

16:2 And then shall the wicked be cast out, and they shall have cause to howl, and weep, and wail, and gnash their teeth; and this because they would not hearken unto the voice of the Lord; therefore the Lord redeemeth them not.

16:3 For they are carnal and devilish, and the devil has power over them;

even that old serpent that did beguile our first parents, which was the cause of their fall; which was the cause of all mankind becoming carnal, sensual, devilish, knowing evil from good, subjecting themselves to the devil.

16:4 Thus all mankind were lost; and behold, they would have been endlessly lost were it not that God redeemed his people from their lost and fallen state.

16:5 remember that he that persists in his own carnal nature, and goes on in the ways of sin and rebellion against God, remaineth in his fallen state and the devil hath all power over him.

he is as though there was no redemption made, being an enemy to God; and also is the devil an enemy to God.

16:6 if Christ had not come into the world, speaking of things to come as though they had already come, there could have been no redemption.

16:7 if Christ had not risen from the dead, or have broken the bands of death that the grave should have no victory, and that death should have no sting, there could have been no resurrection.

16:8 there is a resurrection, therefore the grave hath no victory, and the sting of death is swallowed up in Christ.

16:9 He is the light and the life of the world; yea, a light that is endless, that can never be darkened; yea, and also a life which is endless, that there can be no more death.

16:10 Even this mortal shall put on immortality, and this corruption shall put on incorruption, and shall be brought to stand before the bar of God, to be judged of him according to their works whether they be good or whether they be evil

16:11 If they be good, to the resurrection of endless life and happiness; and if they be evil, to the resurrection of endless damnation, being delivered up to the devil, who hath subjected them, which is damnation

16:12 Having gone according to their own carnal wills and desires;
having never called upon the Lord while the arms of mercy
were extended towards them; for the arms of mercy were
extended towards them,

they were commanded to repent and yet they would not repent.

16:13 And now, ought ye not to tremble and repent of your sins, and
remember that only in and through Christ ye can be saved?

16:14 if ye teach the law of Moses, also teach that it is a shadow of
those things which are to come

16:15 Teach them that redemption cometh through Christ the Lord,
who is the very Eternal Father.

98

Mosiah 18:1 Alma,

repented of his sins and iniquities,

went about privately among the people, and began to teach the
words of Abinadi

18:2 concerning that which was to come,

concerning the resurrection of the dead, and the redemption of
the people, which was to be brought to pass through the
power, and sufferings, and death of Christ, and his resurrection
and ascension into heaven.

18:3 And he taught them privately,

And many did believe his words.

18:4 as many as did believe him did go forth to a place which was
called Mormon,

18:5 Now, there was in Mormon a fountain of pure water, and Alma

resorted thither, there being near the water a thicket of small trees,

18:6 as many as believed him went thither to hear his words.

18:7 he did teach them, and did preach unto them repentance, and redemption, and faith on the Lord.

18:8 here are the waters of Mormon

as ye are desirous to come into the fold of God, and to be called his people, and are willing to bear one another's burdens, that they may be light;

18:9 Yea, and are willing to mourn with those that mourn; yea, and comfort those that stand in need of comfort, and to stand as witnesses of God at all times and in all things, and in all places that ye may be in, even until death, that ye may be redeemed of God, and be numbered with those of the first resurrection, that ye may have eternal life

18:10 Now I say unto you, if this be the desire of your hearts, what have you against being baptized in the name of the Lord, as a witness before him that ye have entered into a covenant with him, that ye will serve him and keep his commandments, that he may pour out his Spirit more abundantly upon you?

18:11 And now when the people had heard these words, they clapped their hands for joy, and exclaimed: This is the desire of our hearts.

18:12 Alma took Helam, he being one of the first, and went and stood forth in the water, and cried, saying: O Lord, pour out thy Spirit upon thy servant, that he may do this work with holiness of heart.

18:13 Helam, I baptize thee, having authority from the Almighty God,

as a testimony that ye have entered into a covenant to serve him until you are dead as to the mortal body; and may the Spirit of the Lord be poured out upon you; and may he grant unto you eternal life, through the redemption of Christ, whom he has prepared from the foundation of the world.

18:14 And after Alma had said these words, both Alma and Helam were buried in the water; and they arose and came forth out of the water rejoicing, being filled with the Spirit.

18:16 they were in number about two hundred and four souls; yea, and they were baptized in the waters of Mormon, and were filled with the grace of God.

18:17 And they were called the church of God, or the church of Christ, from that time forward.

18:18 Alma, having authority from God, ordained priests; even one priest to every fifty of their number did he ordain to preach unto them, and to teach them concerning the things pertaining to the kingdom of God.

18:20 he commanded them that they should preach nothing save it were repentance and faith on the Lord, who had redeemed his people.

18:21 he commanded them that there should be no contention one with another, but that they should look forward with one eye, having one faith and one baptism, having their hearts knit together in unity and in love one towards another.

18:23 he commanded them that they should observe the sabbath day, and keep it holy, and also every day they should give thanks to the Lord their God.

18:24 he also commanded them that the priests whom he had

ordained should labor with their own hands for their support.

18:25 there was one day in every week that was set apart that they should gather themselves together to teach the people, and to worship the Lord their God, and also, as often as it was in their power, to assemble themselves together.

18:26 the priests were not to depend upon the people for their support; but for their labor they were to receive the grace of God, that they might wax strong in the Spirit, having the knowledge of God, that they might teach with power and authority from God.

18:27 Alma commanded that the people of the church should impart of their substance, every one according to that which he had; if he have more abundantly he should impart more abundantly; and of him that had but little, but little should be required; and to him that had not should be given.

18:28 And thus they should impart of their substance of their own free will and good desires towards God, and to those priests that stood in need, yea, and to every needy, naked soul.

18:29 And this he said unto them, having been commanded of God; and they did walk uprightly before God, imparting to one another both temporally and spiritually according to their needs and their wants.

18:30 the place of Mormon, the waters of Mormon, the forest of Mormon, how beautiful are they to the eyes of them who there came to the knowledge of their Redeemer; yea, and how blessed are they, for they shall sing to his praise forever.

Mosiah 19:24 after they had ended the ceremony, that they returned to the land of Nephi, rejoicing, because their wives and their children were not slain;

100

Mosiah 21:17 there was a great number of women, more than there was of men; therefore king Limhi commanded that every man should impart to the support of the widows and their children, that they might not perish with hunger; and this they did because of the greatness of their number that had been slain.

21:30 they also did mourn for the death of Abinadi; and also for the departure of Alma and the people that went with him, who had formed a church of God through the strength and power of God, and faith on the words which had been spoken by Abinadi.

21:31 Yea, they did mourn for their departure, for they knew not whither they had fled. Now they would have gladly joined with them, for they themselves had entered into a covenant with God to serve him and keep his commandments.

21:32 And now since the coming of Ammon, king Limhi had also entered into a covenant with God, and also many of his people, to serve him and keep his commandments.

21:33 king Limhi and many of his people were desirous to be baptized; but there was none in the land that had authority from God.

21:35 They were desirous to be baptized as a witness and a

testimony that they were willing to serve God with all their hearts; nevertheless they did prolong the time;

101

Mosiah 23:1 Alma, having been warned of the Lord

therefore they gathered together their flocks, and took of their grain, and departed into the wilderness

23:7 thus saith the Lord: Ye shall not esteem one flesh above another, or one man shall not think himself above another;

23:9 remember the iniquity of king Noah and his priests; and I myself was caught in a snare, and did many things which were abominable in the sight of the Lord, which caused me sore repentance;

23:10 after much tribulation, the Lord did hear my cries, and did answer my prayers, and has made me an instrument in his hands

23:14 trust no one to be your teacher nor your minister, except he be a man of God, walking in his ways and keeping his commandments.

23:15 Thus did Alma teach his people, that every man should love his neighbor as himself, that there should be no contention among them.

23:16 Alma was their high priest, he being the founder of their church.

23:17 none received authority to preach or to teach except it were by him from God.

he consecrated all their priests and all their teachers; and none were consecrated except they were just men.

Mosiah 23:27 Alma went forth and stood among them, and exhorted them that they should not be frightened, but that they should remember the Lord their God and he would deliver them.

23:28 they hushed their fears, and began to cry unto the Lord

24:4 the language of Nephi began to be taught among all the people of the Lamanites.

24:5 they knew not God; neither did the brethren of Amulon teach them anything concerning the Lord their God, neither the law of Moses;

24:6 they taught them that they should keep their record, and that they might write one to another.

24:7 thus the Lamanites began to increase in riches, and began to trade one with another and wax great, and began to be a cunning and a wise people, as to the wisdom of the world,

delighting in all manner of wickedness and plunder, except it were among their own brethren.

24:9 he exercised authority over them, and put tasks upon them, and put task-masters over them.

24:10 And it came to pass that so great were their afflictions that they began to cry mightily to God.

24:11 he put guards over them to watch them, that whosoever should be found calling upon God should be put to death.

24:12 And Alma and his people did not raise their voices to the Lord their God, but did pour out their hearts to him; and he did know the thoughts of their hearts.

24:13 the voice of the Lord came to them in their afflictions, saying:
Lift up your heads and be of good comfort, for I know of the
covenant which ye have made unto me; and I will covenant
with my people and deliver them out of bondage.

24:14 And I will also ease the burdens which are put upon your
shoulders, that even you cannot feel them upon your backs,
even while you are in bondage; and this will I do that ye may
stand as witnesses for me hereafter, and that ye may know of a
surety that I, the Lord God, do visit my people in their afflictions.

24:16 so great was their faith and their patience that the voice of the
Lord came unto them again, saying: Be of good comfort, for on
the morrow I will deliver you out of bondage.

24:21 they poured out their thanks to God because he had been
merciful unto them, and eased their burdens, and had
delivered them out of bondage;

103

Mosiah 25:15 Alma did speak unto them, when they were assembled
together in large bodies, and he went from one body to
another, preaching unto the people repentance and faith on
the Lord.

25:16 they should remember that it was the Lord that did deliver
them.

25:17 king Limhi was desirous that he might be baptized;
all his people were desirous that they might be baptized also.

25:18 Alma did go forth into the water and did baptize them; yea, he
did baptize them after the manner he did his brethren in the

waters of Mormon; yea, and as many as he did baptize did belong to the church of God; and this because of their belief on the words of Alma.

25:19 Alma that he might establish churches throughout all the land of Zarahemla; and gave him power to ordain priests and teachers over every church.

25:20 Now this was done because there were so many people that they could not all be governed by one teacher; neither could they all hear the word of God in one assembly;

25:21 Therefore they did assemble themselves together in different bodies, being called churches; every church having their priests and their teachers, and every priest preaching the word according as it was delivered to him by the mouth of Alma.

25:22 And thus, notwithstanding there being many churches they were all one church, yea, even the church of God; for there was nothing preached in all the churches except it were repentance and faith in God.

25:23 whosoever were desirous to take upon them the name of Christ, or of God, they did join the churches of God;

25:24 And they were called the people of God. And the Lord did pour out his Spirit upon them, and they were blessed, and prospered in the land.

104

Mosiah 26:1 there were many of the rising generation that could not understand the words of king Benjamin,
they did not believe the tradition of their fathers.

26:2 They did not believe what had been said concerning the resurrection of the dead, neither did they believe concerning the coming of Christ.

26:3 because of their unbelief they could not understand the word of God; and their hearts were hardened.

26:4 they would not be baptized; neither would they join the church.

26:6 they did deceive many with their flattering words, who were in the church, and did cause them to commit many sins; therefore it became expedient that those who committed sin, that were in the church, should be admonished by the church.

26:7 they were brought before the priests, and delivered up unto the priests by the teachers; and the priests brought them before Alma, who was the high priest.

26:9 there were many witnesses against them;

105

Mosiah 26:14 after he had poured out his whole soul to God, the voice of the Lord came to him, saying:

26:15 Blessed art thou, Alma, and blessed are they who were baptized in the waters of Mormon.

Thou art blessed because of thy exceeding faith in the words alone of my servant Abinadi.

26:16 blessed are they because of their exceeding faith in the words alone which thou hast spoken unto them.

26:17 blessed art thou because thou hast established a church among this people;

they shall be established, and they shall be my people.

26:18 blessed is this people who are willing to bear my name;

26:20 Thou art my servant; and I covenant with thee that thou shalt have eternal life; and thou shalt serve me and go forth in my name, and shalt gather together my sheep.

26:21 he that will hear my voice shall be my sheep; and him shall ye receive into the church, and him will I also receive.

26:22 this is my church; whosoever is baptized shall be baptized unto repentance.

whomsoever ye receive shall believe in my name; and him will I freely forgive.

26:23 For it is I that taketh upon me the sins of the world;

for it is I that hath created them;

it is I that granteth unto him that believeth unto the end a place at my right hand.

26:24 in my name are they called;

if they know me they shall come forth, and shall have a place eternally at my right hand.

26:25 when the second trump shall sound then shall they that never knew me come forth and shall stand before me.

26:26 then shall they know that I am the Lord their God, that I am their Redeemer; but they would not be redeemed.

26:27 then I will confess unto them that I never knew them; and they shall depart into everlasting fire prepared for the devil and his angels.

26:28 he that will not hear my voice, the same shall ye not receive into my church, for him I will not receive at the last day.

26:29 Go; and whosoever transgresseth against me, him shall ye judge according to the sins which he has committed;

if he confess his sins before thee and me, and repenteth in the sincerity of his heart, him shall ye forgive, and I will forgive him also.

26:30 as often as my people repent will I forgive them their trespasses against me.

26:31 ye shall also forgive one another your trespasses;

he that forgiveth not his neighbor s trespasses when he says that he repents, the same hath brought himself under condemnation.

26:32 Go; and whosoever will not repent of his sins the same shall not be numbered among my people;

26:33 when Alma had heard these words he wrote them down that he might have them, and that he might judge the people of that church according to the commandments of God.

106

Mosiah 26:34 Alma went and judged those that had been taken in iniquity, according to the word of the Lord.

26:35 whosoever repented of their sins and did confess them, them he did number among the people of the church;

26:36 those that would not confess their sins and repent of their iniquity, the same were not numbered among the people of the church, and their names were blotted out.

26:37 Alma did regulate all the affairs of the church; receiving many, and baptizing many.

26:38 walking in all diligence, teaching the word of God in all things, suffering all manner of afflictions, being persecuted by all those

who did not belong to the church of God.

26:39 they did admonish their brethren; and they were also admonished, every one by the word of God, according to his sins, or to the sins which he had committed, being commanded of God to pray without ceasing, and to give thanks in all things.

27:3 there was a strict command throughout all the churches that there should be no persecutions among them, that there should be an equality among all men;

27:4 That they should let no pride nor haughtiness disturb their peace; that every man should esteem his neighbor as himself, laboring with their own hands for their support.

27:5 all their priests and teachers should labor with their own hands for their support, in all cases save it were in sickness, or in much want; and doing these things, they did abound in the grace of God.

107

Mosiah 27:8 the sons of Mosiah were numbered among the unbelievers; and also one of the sons of Alma was numbered among them, he being called Alma, after his father; nevertheless, he became a very wicked and an idolatrous man.

27:10 for he did go about secretly with the sons of Mosiah seeking to destroy the church, and to lead astray the people of the Lord, contrary to the commandments of God,

27:11 they were going about rebelling against God,
the angel of the Lord appeared unto them; and he descended as it were in a cloud;

he spake as it were with a voice of thunder, which caused the earth to shake upon which they stood;

27:12 so great was their astonishment, that they fell to the earth, and understood not the words which he spake unto them.

27:13 he cried again, saying: Alma, arise and stand forth, for why persecutest thou the church of God?

For the Lord hath said: This is my church, and I will establish it; and nothing shall overthrow it, save it is the transgression of my people.

27:14 the angel said: Behold, the Lord hath heard the prayers of his people, and also the prayers of his servant, Alma, who is thy father; for he has prayed with much faith concerning thee that thou mightest be brought to the knowledge of the truth;

for this purpose have I come to convince thee of the power and authority of God, that the prayers of his servants might be answered according to their faith.

27:15 can ye dispute the power of God? For behold, doth not my voice shake the earth?

can ye not also behold me before you? And I am sent from God.

27:16 I say unto thee: Go, and remember the captivity of thy fathers in the land of Helam, and in the land of Nephi;

remember how great things he has done for them; for they were in bondage, and he has delivered them.

Alma, go thy way, and seek to destroy the church no more, that their prayers may be answered, and this even if thou wilt of thyself be cast off.

Mosiah 27:18 for great was their astonishment; for with their own eyes they had beheld an angel of the Lord;

his voice was as thunder, which shook the earth;

they knew that there was nothing save the power of God that could shake the earth and cause it to tremble as though it would part asunder.

27:20 his father rejoiced, for he knew that it was the power of God.

27:21 he caused that a multitude should be gathered together that they might witness what the Lord had done for his son, and also for those that were with him.

27:22 he caused that the priests should assemble themselves together;

they began to fast, and to pray to the Lord their God

27:23 after they had fasted and prayed for the space of two days and two nights, the limbs of Alma received their strength, and he stood up and began to speak unto them, bidding them to be of good comfort:

27:24 I have repented of my sins, and have been redeemed of the Lord;

I am born of the Spirit.

27:25 the Lord said unto me: Marvel not that all mankind, yea, men and women, all nations, kindreds, tongues and people, must be born again;

born of God, changed from their carnal and fallen state, to a state of righteousness, being redeemed of God, becoming his sons and daughters;

27:26 thus they become new creatures; and unless they do this, they can in nowise inherit the kingdom of God.

27:27 unless this be the case, they must be cast off;

27:28 after wading through much tribulation, repenting nigh unto death, the Lord in mercy hath seen fit to snatch me out of an everlasting burning, and I am born of God.

27:29 My soul hath been redeemed from the gall of bitterness and bonds of iniquity.

I was in the darkest abyss; but now I behold the marvelous light of God. My soul was racked with eternal torment; but I am snatched, and my soul is pained no more.

27:30 I rejected my Redeemer, and denied that which had been spoken of by our fathers; but now that they may foresee that he will come, and that he remembereth every creature of his creating, he will make himself manifest unto all.

27:31 every knee shall bow, and every tongue confess before him.

at the last day, when all men shall stand to be judged of him, then shall they confess that he is God; then shall they confess, who live without God in the world, that the judgment of an everlasting punishment is just upon them; and they shall quake, and tremble, and shrink beneath the glance of his all-searching eye.

27:32 Alma began from this time forward to teach the people, and those who were with Alma at the time the angel appeared unto them,

preaching the word of God in much tribulation, being greatly persecuted by those who were unbelievers, being smitten by many of them.

27:35 zealously striving to repair all the injuries which they had done to the church, confessing all their sins, and publishing all the things which they had seen, and explaining the prophecies and the scriptures to all who desired to hear them.

27:36 thus they were instruments in the hands of God in bringing many to the knowledge of the truth, yea, to the knowledge of their Redeemer.

109

Mosiah 28:1 they took a small number with them and returned to their father, the king,

they might impart the word of God to their brethren, the Lamanites

28:2 That perhaps they might bring them to the knowledge of the Lord their God, and convince them of the iniquity of their fathers;

28:3 Now they were desirous that salvation should be declared to every creature, for they could not bear that any human soul should perish; yea, even the very thoughts that any soul should endure endless torment did cause them to quake and tremble.

28:4 they suffered much anguish of soul because of their iniquities, suffering much and fearing that they should be cast off forever.

28:7 the Lord said unto Mosiah: Let them go up, for many shall believe on their words, and they shall have eternal life; and I will deliver thy sons out of the hands of the Lamanites.

110

Mosiah 28:11 he took the records which were engraven on the plates of brass, and also the plates of Nephi, and all the things which he had kept and preserved according to the commandments of God, after having translated and caused to be written the records which were on the plates of gold which had been found by the people of Limhi, which were delivered to him by the hand of Limhi;

28:13 he translated them by the means of those two stones which were fastened into the two rims of a bow.

28:14 Now these things were prepared from the beginning, and were handed down from generation to generation, for the purpose of interpreting languages;

28:15 And they have been kept and preserved by the hand of the Lord, that he should discover to every creature who should possess the land the iniquities and abominations of his people;

28:16 And whosoever has these things is called seer, after the manner of old times.

28:17 it gave an account of the people who were destroyed, from the time that they were destroyed back to the building of the great tower, at the time the Lord confounded the language of the people

they were scattered abroad upon the face of all the earth,
even from that time back until the creation of Adam.

111

Mosiah 28:20 king Mosiah had

took the plates of brass, and all the things which he had kept, and conferred them upon Alma, who was the son of Alma; yea, all the records, and also the interpreters, and conferred them upon him, and commanded him that he should keep and preserve them, and also keep a record of the people, handing them down from one generation to another, even as they had been handed down from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem.

29:11 I will be your king the remainder of my days; nevertheless, let us appoint judges, to judge this people according to our law;

we will appoint wise men to be judges, that will judge this people according to the commandments of God.

29:14 I myself have labored with all the power and faculties which I have possessed, to teach you the commandments of God, and to establish peace throughout the land, that there should be no wars nor contentions, no stealing, nor plundering, nor murdering, nor any manner of iniquity;

15 And whosoever has committed iniquity, him have I punished according to the crime which he has committed, according to the law

29:18 remember king Noah, his wickedness and his abominations,

29:19 were it not for the interposition of their all-wise Creator, and this because of their sincere repentance, they must unavoidably remain in bondage until now.

29:21 ye cannot dethrone an iniquitous king save it be through much contention, and the shedding of much blood.

29:22 For behold, he has his friends in iniquity, and he keepeth his guards about him; and he teareth up the laws of those who have reigned in righteousness before him; and he trampleth

under his feet the commandments of God;

29:23 And he enacteth laws, and sendeth them forth among his people, yea, laws after the manner of his own wickedness; and whosoever doth not obey his laws he causeth to be destroyed; and whosoever doth rebel against him he will send his armies against them to war, and if he can he will destroy them; and thus an unrighteous king doth pervert the ways of all righteousness.

29:25 choose you by the voice of this people, judges, that ye may be judged according to the laws which have been given you by our fathers, which are correct, and which were given them by the hand of the Lord.

29:26 this shall ye observe and make it your law to do your business by the voice of the people.

29:27 if the time comes that the voice of the people doth choose iniquity, then is the time that the judgments of God will come upon you;

29:28 if ye have judges, and they do not judge you according to the law which has been given, ye can cause that they may be judged of a higher judge.

29:29 If your higher judges do not judge righteous judgments, ye shall cause that a small number of your lower judges should be gathered together, and they shall judge your higher judges, according to the voice of the people.

29:32 I desire that this land be a land of liberty, and every man may enjoy his rights and privileges alike, so long as the Lord sees fit that we may live and inherit the land,

29:37 after king Mosiah had sent these things forth among the people

they were convinced of the truth of his words.

29:39 they assembled themselves together in bodies throughout the land, to cast in their voices concerning who should be their judges, to judge them according to the law which had been given them;

29:42 Alma was appointed to be the first chief judge, he being also the high priest, his father having conferred the office upon him, and having given him the charge concerning all the affairs of the church.

29:47 thus ended the reign of the kings over the people of Nephi; and thus ended the days of Alma, who was the founder of their church.

112

Book of Alma 1:1 he had established laws, and they were acknowledged by the people; therefore they were obliged to abide by the laws which he had made.

1:2 there was a man brought before him to be judged,

1:3 he had gone about among the people, preaching to them that which he termed to be the word of God, bearing down against the church;

every priest and teacher ought to become popular;

they ought not to labor with their hands, but that they ought to be supported by the people.

1:4 he also testified unto the people that all mankind should be saved at the last day, and that they need not fear nor tremble, but that they might lift up their heads and rejoice;

the Lord had created all men, and had also redeemed all men;
in the end, all men should have eternal life.

1:6 he began to be lifted up in the pride of his heart, and to wear
very costly apparel,

even began to establish a church after the manner of his
preaching.

1:9 Gideon withstood him with the words of God he was wroth with
Gideon, and drew his sword and began to smite him.

1:11 he stood before Alma and pleaded for himself with much
boldness.

1:12 thou art not only guilty of priestcraft, but hast endeavored to
enforce it by the sword;

1:14 thou art condemned to die, according to the law

113

Alma 1:16 many who loved the vain things of the world, and they went
forth preaching false doctrines; and this they did for the sake of
riches and honor.

1:17 they durst not lie, if it were known, for fear of the law, for liars
were punished;

1:18 they durst not steal, for fear of the law, for such were punished;
neither durst they rob, nor murder, for he that murdered was
punished unto death.

1:19 whosoever did not belong to the church of God began to
persecute those that did belong to the church of God, and had
taken upon them the name of Christ.

1:20 they did persecute them,

because of their humility; because they were not proud in their own eyes,

because they did impart the word of God, one with another, without money and without price.

114

Alma 1:21 there was a strict law among the people of the church there should not any man, belonging to the church, arise and persecute those that did not belong to the church, and that there should be no persecution among themselves.

1:22 there were many among them who began to be proud, and began to contend warmly with their adversaries, even unto blows;

1:24 For the hearts of many were hardened, their names were blotted out, they were remembered no more among the people of God. many withdrew themselves from among them.

1:25 a great trial to those that did stand fast in the faith; nevertheless, they were steadfast and immovable in keeping the commandments of God, they bore with patience the persecution which was heaped upon them.

1:26 when the priests left their labor to impart the word of God unto the people, the people also left their labors to hear the word of God.

when the priest had imparted unto them the word of God they all returned again diligently unto their labors;

the priest, not esteeming himself above his hearers, for the preacher was no better than the hearer, neither was the teacher any better than the learner;

they were all equal, and they did all labor, every man according to his strength.

1:27 they did impart of their substance, every man according to that which he had, to the poor, and the needy, and the sick, and the afflicted; and they did not wear costly apparel, yet they were neat and comely.

1:28 thus they did establish the affairs of the church;
thus they began to have continual peace again,

1:29 because of the steadiness of the church they began to be exceedingly rich, having abundance of all things whatsoever they stood in need an abundance of flocks and herds, and fatlings of every kind, and also abundance of grain, and of gold, and of silver, and of precious things, and abundance of silk and fine-twined linen, and all manner of good homely cloth.

1:30 thus, in their prosperous circumstances, they did not send away any who were naked, or that were hungry, or that were athirst, or that were sick, or that had not been nourished;

they did not set their hearts upon riches;

they were liberal to all, both old and young, both bond and free, both male and female, whether out of the church or in the church, having no respect to persons as to those who stood in need.

1:31 And thus they did prosper and become far more wealthy

1:32 those who did not belong to their church did indulge themselves in sorceries, and in idolatry or idleness, and in

babblings, and in envyings and strife; wearing costly apparel;
being lifted up in the pride of their own eyes; persecuting, lying,
thieving, robbing, committing whoredoms, and murdering, and
all manner of wickedness;

115

Alma 1:33 exercising the law upon them, every man suffering according to
that which he had done, they became more still, and durst not
commit any wickedness

2:1 there began to be a contention among the people;

Amlici, he being a very cunning man, yea, a wise man as to the
wisdom of the world,

2:2 had, by his cunning, drawn away much people after him;

they began to endeavor to establish Amlici to be king over the
people.

2:3 this was alarming to the people of the church,

for they knew that according to their law that such things must
be established by the voice of the people.

2:4 it was his intent to destroy the church of God.

2:8 Amlici did stir up those who were in his favor to anger against
those who were not in his favor.

2:9 they gathered themselves together, and did consecrate Amlici
to be their king.

2:29 Alma fought with Amlici with the sword, face to face; and they
did contend mightily, one with another.

2:30 Alma, being a man of God, being exercised with much faith,
cried, saying: O Lord, have mercy and spare my life, that I may

be an instrument in thy hands to save and preserve this people.

2:31 he slew Amlici with the sword.

2:32 he also contended with the king of the Lamanites;

3:6 the skins of the Lamanites were dark, according to the mark which was set upon their fathers, which was a curse upon them because of their transgression and their rebellion against their brethren,

3:8 this was done that their seed might be distinguished from the seed of their brethren, that thereby the Lord God might preserve his people, that they might not mix and believe in incorrect traditions which would prove their destruction.

3:19 they brought upon themselves the curse; and even so doth every man that is cursed bring upon himself his own condemnation.

3:26 in one year were thousands and tens of thousands of souls sent to the eternal world, that they might reap their rewards according to their works, whether they were good or whether they were bad, to reap eternal happiness or eternal misery, according to the spirit which they listed to obey, whether it be a good spirit or a bad one.

3:27 For every man receiveth wages of him whom he listeth to obey,

116

Alma 4:3 great were their afflictions that every soul had cause to mourn; they believed that it was the judgments of God sent upon them because of their wickedness and their abominations;

they were awakened to a remembrance of their duty.

4:4 they began to establish the church more fully;
many were baptized in the waters of Sidon and were joined to
the church of God;

they were baptized by the hand of Alma, who had been
consecrated the high priest over the people of the church, by
the hand of his father Alma.

4:5 there were about three thousand five hundred souls that united
themselves to the church of God and were baptized.

4:6 the people of the church began to wax proud, because of their
exceeding riches, and their fine silks, and their fine-twined
linen, and because of their many flocks and herds, and their
gold and their silver, and all manner of precious things, which
they had obtained by their industry;

they lifted up in the pride of their eyes, for they began to wear
very costly apparel.

4:7 this was the cause of much affliction to Alma, yea, and to many
of the people whom Alma had consecrated to be teachers, and
priests, and elders over the church;

many of them were sorely grieved for the wickedness which
they saw had begun to be among their people.

4:8 they saw and beheld with great sorrow that the people of the
church began to be lifted up in the pride of their eyes, and to
set their hearts upon riches and upon the vain things of the
world,

they began to be scornful, one towards another, and they
began to persecute those that did not believe according to their
own will and pleasure.

4:9 there began to be great contentions among the people of the church; yea, there were envyings, and strife, and malice, and persecutions, and pride, even to exceed the pride of those who did not belong to the church of God.

4:10 the wickedness of the church was a great stumbling-block to those who did not belong to the church;

4:12 he saw great inequality among the people, some lifting themselves up with their pride, despising others, turning their backs upon the needy and the naked and those who were hungry, and those who were athirst, and those who were sick and afflicted.

4:13 others were abasing themselves, succoring those who stood in need of their succor, such as imparting their substance to the poor and the needy, feeding the hungry, and suffering all manner of afflictions, for Christ's sake,

4:14 thus retaining a remission of their sins; being filled with great joy because of the resurrection of the dead, according to the will and power and deliverance of Jesus Christ from the bands of death.

117

Alma 4:16 he selected a wise man who was among the elders of the church, and gave him power according to the voice of the people, that he might have power to enact laws according to the laws which had been given, and to put them in force according to the wickedness and the crimes of the people.

4:18 Alma did not grant unto him the office of being high priest over

the church, but he retained the office of high priest unto himself;

4:19 this he did that he himself might go forth among his people, or among the people of Nephi, that he might preach the word of God unto them,

to stir them up in remembrance of their duty,

that he might pull down, by the word of God, all the pride and craftiness and all the contentions which were among his people, seeing no way that he might reclaim them save it were in bearing down in pure testimony against them.

4:20 Alma delivered up the judgment-seat to Nephiah, and confined himself wholly to the high priesthood of the holy order of God, to the testimony of the word, according to the spirit of revelation and prophecy.

118

Alma 5:1 Alma began to deliver the word of God unto the people,

5:3 having been consecrated by my father, Alma, to be a high priest over the church of God, he having power and authority from God to do these things,

he did baptize his brethren in the waters of Mormon.

5:5 they were in captivity, and again the Lord did deliver them out of bondage by the power of his word;

we were brought into this land, and here we began to establish the church of God throughout this land

5:6 you that belong to this church, have you sufficiently retained in remembrance the captivity of your fathers?

have you sufficiently retained in remembrance his mercy and

long-suffering towards them?

have ye sufficiently retained in remembrance that he has delivered their souls from hell?

5:7 he changed their hearts; yea, he awakened them out of a deep sleep, and they awoke unto God.

they were in the midst of darkness; nevertheless, their souls were illuminated by the light of the everlasting word;

they were encircled about by the bands of death, and the chains of hell, and an everlasting destruction did await them.

5:9 were the bands of death broken, and the chains of hell which encircled them about, were they loosed? I say unto you, Yea, they were loosed, and their souls did expand, and they did sing redeeming love.

they are saved.

5:11 did not my father Alma believe in the words which were delivered by the mouth of Abinadi? And was he not a holy prophet? Did he not speak the words of God,

5:12 according to his faith there was a mighty change wrought in his heart.

5:13 he preached the word unto your fathers, and a mighty change was also wrought in their hearts, and they humbled themselves and put their trust in the true and living God.

they were faithful until the end; therefore they were saved.

119

Alma 5:14 my brethren of the church, have ye spiritually been born of God?

Have ye received his image in your countenances?

Have ye experienced this mighty change in your hearts?

5:15 Do ye exercise faith in the redemption of him who created you?

Do you look forward with an eye of faith, and view this mortal body raised in immortality, and this corruption raised in incorruption, to stand before God to be judged according to the deeds which have been done in the mortal body?

5:16 can you imagine to yourselves that ye hear the voice of the Lord, saying unto you, in that day: Come unto me ye blessed, for behold, your works have been the works of righteousness upon the face of the earth?

5:18 can ye imagine yourselves brought before the tribunal of God with your souls filled with guilt and remorse, having a remembrance of all your guilt, yea, a perfect remembrance of all your wickedness, yea, a remembrance that ye have set at defiance the commandments of God?

5:19 can you look up, having the image of God engraven upon your countenances?

5:20 can ye think of being saved when you have yielded yourselves to become subjects to the devil?

5:21 ye will know at that day that ye cannot be saved; for there can no man be saved except his garments are washed white; yea, his garments must be purified until they are cleansed from all stain, through the blood of him of whom it has been spoken by our fathers, who should come to redeem his people from their sins.

5:22 how will any of you feel, if ye shall stand before the bar of God, having your garments stained with blood and all manner of

filthiness?

what will these things testify against you?

5:23 Behold will they not testify that ye are murderers, yea, and also that ye are guilty of all manner of wickedness?

5:24 do ye suppose that such an one can have a place to sit down in the kingdom of God, with Abraham, with Isaac, and with Jacob, and also all the holy prophets, whose garments are cleansed and are spotless, pure and white?

120

Alma 5:25 Nay; except ye make our Creator a liar from the beginning, or suppose that he is a liar from the beginning,

ye cannot suppose that such can have place in the kingdom of heaven; but they shall be cast out for they are the children of the kingdom of the devil.

5:26 if ye have experienced a change of heart, and if ye have felt to sing the song of redeeming love, I would ask, can ye feel so now?

5:27 Have ye walked, keeping yourselves blameless before God? Could ye say, if ye were called to die at this time, within yourselves, that ye have been sufficiently humble?

That your garments have been cleansed and made white through the blood of Christ, who will come to redeem his people from their sins?

5:28 are ye stripped of pride?

if ye are not ye are not prepared to meet God.

ye must prepare quickly; for the kingdom of heaven is soon at

hand, and such an one hath not eternal life.

5:29 is there one among you who is not stripped of envy?
such an one is not prepared; and I would that he should
prepare quickly, for the hour is close at hand, and he knoweth
not when the time shall come; for such an one is not found
guiltless.

5:30 is there one among you that doth make a mock of his brother,
or that heapeth upon him persecutions?

5:31 Wo unto such an one, for he is not prepared, and the time is at
hand that he must repent or he cannot be saved!

5:32 wo unto all ye workers of iniquity; repent, repent, for the Lord
God hath spoken it!

5:33 he sendeth an invitation unto all men, for the arms of mercy are
extended towards them, and he saith: Repent, and I will receive
you.

5:34 he saith: Come unto me and ye shall partake of the fruit of the
tree of life;

ye shall eat and drink of the bread and the waters of life freely;

5:35 come unto me and bring forth works of righteousness, and ye
shall not be hewn down and cast into the fire

5:36 the time is at hand that whosoever bringeth forth not good fruit,
or whosoever doeth not the works of righteousness, the same
have cause to wail and mourn.

5:37 O ye workers of iniquity; ye that are puffed up in the vain things
of the world,

ye that have professed to have known the ways of
righteousness nevertheless have gone astray, as sheep
having no shepherd, notwithstanding a shepherd hath called

after you and is still calling after you, but ye will not hearken unto his voice!

5:38 the good shepherd doth call you; yea, and in his own name he doth call you, which is the name of Christ; and if ye will not hearken unto the voice of the good shepherd, to the name by which ye are called, behold, ye are not the sheep of the good shepherd.

5:39 if ye are not the sheep of the good shepherd, of what fold are ye? Behold, I say unto you, that the devil is your shepherd, and ye are of his fold;

whosoever denieth this is a liar and a child of the devil.

5:40 whatsoever is good cometh from God, and whatsoever is evil cometh from the devil.

5:41 if a man bringeth forth good works he hearkeneth unto the voice of the good shepherd, and he doth follow him;

whosoever bringeth forth evil works, the same becometh a child of the devil, for he hearkeneth unto his voice, and doth follow him.

5:42 whosoever doeth this must receive his wages of him; therefore, for his wages he receiveth death, as to things pertaining unto righteousness, being dead unto all good works.

121

Alma 5:44 I am called to speak after this manner, according to the holy order of God, which is in Christ Jesus;

I am commanded to stand and testify unto this people the things which have been spoken by our fathers concerning the

things which are to come.

5:45 I do know that these things whereof I have spoken are true.

5:46 they are made known unto me by the Holy Spirit of God.

I have fasted and prayed many days that I might know these things of myself.

I do know of myself that they are true; for the Lord God hath made them manifest unto me by his Holy Spirit; and this is the spirit of revelation which is in me.

5:47 it has thus been revealed unto me, that the words which have been spoken by our fathers are true, even so according to the spirit of prophecy which is in me, which is also by the manifestation of the Spirit of God.

5:48 I say unto you, that I know of myself that whatsoever I shall say unto you, concerning that which is to come, is true;

I know that Jesus Christ shall come, yea, the Son, the Only Begotten of the Father, full of grace, and mercy, and truth.

it is he that cometh to take away the sins of the world, yea, the sins of every man who steadfastly believeth on his name.

122

Alma 5:49 this is the order after which I am called, yea, to preach unto my beloved brethren, yea, and every one that dwelleth in the land; yea, to preach unto all, both old and young, both bond and free; yea, I say unto you the aged, and also the middle aged, and the rising generation;

to cry unto them that they must repent and be born again.

5:50 thus saith the Spirit: Repent, all ye ends of the earth, for the

kingdom of heaven is soon at hand;

the Son of God cometh in his glory, in his might, majesty,
power, and dominion.

the Spirit saith: Behold the glory of the King of all the earth;
the King of heaven shall very soon shine forth among all the
children of men.

5:51 the Spirit saith unto me, yea, crieth unto me with a mighty
voice, saying: Go forth and say unto this people Repent, for
except ye repent ye can in nowise inherit the kingdom of
heaven.

5:52 the Spirit saith: Behold, the ax is laid at the root of the tree;
therefore every tree that bringeth not forth good fruit shall be
hewn down and cast into the fire, yea, a fire which cannot be
consumed, even an unquenchable fire. Behold, and
remember, the Holy One hath spoken it.

5:53 can ye withstand these sayings; yea, can ye lay aside these
things, and trample the Holy One under your feet;
can ye be puffed up in the pride of your hearts;
will ye still persist in the wearing of costly apparel and setting
your hearts upon the vain things of the world, upon your
riches?

5:54 will ye persist in supposing that ye are better one than another;
will ye persist in the persecution of your brethren, who humble
themselves and do walk after the holy order of God, wherewith
they have been brought into this church, having been
sanctified by the Holy Spirit, and they do bring forth works
which are meet for repentance

5:55 will you persist in turning your backs upon the poor, and the

needy, and in withholding your substance from them?

5:56 all ye that will persist in your wickedness, I say unto you that these are they who shall be hewn down and cast into the fire except they speedily repent.

5:57 all you that are desirous to follow the voice of the good shepherd, come ye out from the wicked, and be ye separate, and touch not their unclean things;

their names shall be blotted out, that the names of the wicked shall not be numbered among the names of the righteous, that the word of God may be fulfilled,

5:58 For the names of the righteous shall be written in the book of life, and unto them will I grant an inheritance at my right hand.

if ye speak against it, it matters not, for the word of God must be fulfilled.

5:59 what shepherd is there among you having many sheep doth not watch over them, that the wolves enter not and devour his flock?

if a wolf enter his flock doth he not drive him out?
at the last, if he can, he will destroy him.

5:60 the good shepherd doth call after you; and if you will hearken unto his voice he will bring you into his fold, and ye are his sheep; and he commandeth you that ye suffer no ravenous wolf to enter among you, that ye may not be destroyed.

5:61 I, Alma, do command you in the language of him who hath commanded me, that ye observe to do the words which I have spoken unto you.

5:62 I speak by way of command unto you that belong to the church; unto those who do not belong to the church I speak by way of

invitation, saying: Come and be baptized unto repentance, that ye also may be partakers of the fruit of the tree of life.

123

Alma 6:1 he ordained priests and elders, by laying on his hands according to the order of God, to preside and watch over the church.

6:2 whosoever did not belong to the church who repented of their sins were baptized unto repentance, and were received into the church.

6:3 whosoever did belong to the church that did not repent of their wickedness and humble themselves before God I mean those who were lifted up in the pride of their hearts the same were rejected, and their names were blotted out, that their names were not numbered among those of the righteous.

6:4 thus they began to establish the order of the church in the city of Zarahemla.

6:5 none were deprived of the privilege of assembling themselves together to hear the word of God.

6:6 the children of God were commanded that they should gather themselves together oft, and join in fasting and mighty prayer in behalf of the welfare of the souls of those who knew not God.

124

Alma 6:8 Alma went and began to declare the word of God unto the church

according to the revelation of the truth of the word which had
been spoken by his fathers,
according to the spirit of prophecy which was in him,
according to the testimony of Jesus Christ, the Son of God, who
should come to redeem his people from their sins,
the holy order by which he was called.

125

Alma 7:1 I attempt to address you in my language;
I having been wholly confined to the judgment-seat,
7:2 the Lord in much mercy hath granted that I should come unto
you.
7:3 I have come having great hopes and much desire that I should
find that ye had humbled yourselves before God, and that ye
had continued in the supplicating of his grace, that I should find
that ye were blameless before him,
7:5 I trust, according to the Spirit of God which is in me, that I shall
also have joy over you;
7:6 I trust that ye are not in a state of so much unbelief as were
your brethren;
I trust that ye are not lifted up in the pride of your hearts;
I trust that ye have not set your hearts upon riches and the vain
things of the world;
I trust that you do not worship idols, but that ye do worship the
true and living God,
that ye look forward for the remission of your sins, with an
everlasting faith, which is to come.

7:7 the time is not far distant that the Redeemer liveth and cometh among his people.

7:8 I do not say that he will come among us at the time of his dwelling in his mortal tabernacle; for behold, the Spirit hath not said unto me that this should be the case.

that the Lord God hath power to do all things which are according to his word.

7:9 the Spirit hath said this much unto me, saying: Cry unto this people, saying Repent ye, and prepare the way of the Lord, and walk in his paths, which are straight; for behold, the kingdom of heaven is at hand, and the Son of God cometh upon the face of the earth.

7:10 he shall be born of Mary, at Jerusalem which is the land of our forefathers, she being a virgin, a precious and chosen vessel, who shall be overshadowed and conceive by the power of the Holy Ghost, and bring forth a son, yea, even the Son of God.

7:11 he shall go forth, suffering pains and afflictions and temptations of every kind;

that the word might be fulfilled which saith he will take upon him the pains and the sicknesses of his people.

7:12 And he will take upon him death, that he may loose the bands of death which bind his people; and he will take upon him their infirmities, that his bowels may be filled with mercy, according to the flesh, that he may know according to the flesh how to succor his people according to their infirmities.

7:13 the Son of God suffereth according to the flesh that he might take upon him the sins of his people, that he might blot out their transgressions according to the power of his deliverance;

7:14 ye must repent, and be born again;
the Spirit saith if ye are not born again ye cannot inherit the
kingdom of heaven;

therefore come and be baptized unto repentance, that ye may
be washed from your sins, that ye may have faith on the Lamb
of God, who taketh away the sins of the world, who is mighty to
save and to cleanse from all unrighteousness.

7:15 come and fear not, and lay aside every sin, which easily doth
beset you, which doth bind you down to destruction,

come and go forth, and show unto your God that ye are willing
to repent of your sins and enter into a covenant with him to
keep his commandments, and witness it unto him this day by
going into the waters of baptism.

7:16 whosoever doeth this, and keepeth the commandments of God
from thenceforth, the same will remember

he will remember that I have said unto him, he shall have
eternal life, according to the testimony of the Holy Spirit, which
testifieth in me.

7:17 the way that I know that ye believe them is by the manifestation
of the Spirit which is in me.

because your faith is strong concerning that, yea, concerning
the things which I have spoken, great is my joy.

7:18 I had much desire that ye were not in the state of dilemma like
your brethren,

7:19 I perceive that ye are in the paths of righteousness;

I perceive that ye are in the path which leads to the kingdom of
God;

I perceive that ye are making his paths straight.

7:20 I perceive that it has been made known unto you, by the testimony of his word,

that he cannot walk in crooked paths; neither doth he vary from that which he hath said;

neither hath he a shadow of turning from the right to the left, or from that which is right to that which is wrong;

his course is one eternal round.

7:21 he doth not dwell in unholy temples;

neither can filthiness or anything which is unclean be received into the kingdom of God;

the time shall come, yea, and it shall be at the last day, that he who is filthy shall remain in his filthiness.

126

Alma 7:22 I have said these things unto you that I might awaken you to a sense of your duty to God,

that ye may walk blameless before him,

that ye may walk after the holy order of God, after which ye have been received.

7:23 I would that ye should be humble,

and be submissive and gentle; easy to be entreated; full of patience and long-suffering; being temperate in all things; being diligent in keeping the commandments of God at all times; asking for whatsoever things ye stand in need, both spiritual and temporal; always returning thanks unto God for whatsoever things ye do receive.

7:24 And see that ye have faith, hope, and charity, and then ye will always abound in good works.

7:25 may the Lord bless you,

keep your garments spotless, that ye may at last be brought to sit down with Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, and the holy prophets who have been ever since the world began,

having your garments spotless even as their garments are spotless, in the kingdom of heaven to go no more out.

7:26 I have spoken these words unto you according to the Spirit which testifieth in me;

my soul doth exceedingly rejoice, because of the exceeding diligence and heed which ye have given unto my word.

7:27 may the peace of God rest upon you, and upon your houses and lands, and upon your flocks and herds, and all that you possess, your women and your children, according to your faith and good works,

127

Alma 8:1 Alma returned from the land of Gideon, after having taught the people of Gideon many things which cannot be written, having established the order of the church, according as he had before done in the land of Zarahemla,

he returned to his own house at Zarahemla to rest himself from the labors which he had performed.

128

Alma 8:4 he began to teach the people in the land of Melek
according to the holy order of God, by which he had been
called;

8:5 the people came to him throughout all the borders of the land
which was by the wilderness side.

they were baptized throughout all the land;

8:6 when he had finished his work at Melek he departed thence,

129

Alma 8:8 Alma had come to the city of Ammonihah
he began to preach the word of God unto them.

8:9 Satan had gotten great hold upon the hearts of the people of
the city of Ammonihah;

8:10 Alma labored much in the spirit, wrestling with God in mighty
prayer, that he would pour out his Spirit upon the people

that he would also grant that he might baptize them unto
repentance.

8:11 they hardened their hearts,

we know that thou art high priest over the church which thou
hast established in many parts of the land, according to your
tradition;

8:12 thou hast no power over us;

8:13 when the people had said this, and withstood all his words,
and reviled him, and spit upon him, and caused that he should

be cast out of their city, he departed thence and took his
journey towards the city which was called Aaron.

8:14 an angel of the Lord appeared unto him, saying:

8:15 Blessed art thou, Alma; therefore, lift up thy head and rejoice, for thou hast great cause to rejoice; for thou hast been faithful in keeping the commandments of God from the time which thou receivedst thy first message from him. Behold, I am he that delivered it unto you.

8:16 And behold, I am sent to command thee that thou return to the city of Ammonihah, and preach again unto the people of the city;

preach unto them.

say unto them, except they repent the Lord God will destroy them.

8:17 they do study at this time that they may destroy the liberty of thy people, (for thus saith the Lord) which is contrary to the statutes, and judgments, and commandments which he has given unto his people.

8:18 after Alma had received his message from the angel of the Lord he returned speedily to the land of Ammonihah.

8:19 he was an hungered,

he said to a man: Will ye give to an humble servant of God something to eat?

8:20 the man said unto him: I am a Nephite, and I know that thou art a holy prophet of God, for thou art the man whom an angel said in a vision: Thou shalt receive. Therefore, go with me into my house and I will impart unto thee of my food; and I know that thou wilt be a blessing unto me and my house.

8:21 And it came to pass that the man received him into his house; and the man was called Amulek; and he brought forth bread and meat and set before Alma.

8:22 Alma ate bread and was filled; and he blessed Amulek and his house, and he gave thanks unto God.

8:23 after he had eaten and was filled he said unto Amulek: I am Alma, and am the high priest over the church of God throughout the land.

8:26 Amulek, because thou hast fed me and taken me in, thou art blessed; for I was an hungered, for I had fasted many days.

130

Alma 8:29 the word came to Alma, saying: Go; and also say unto my servant Amulek, go forth and prophesy unto this people, saying Repent ye, for thus saith the Lord, except ye repent I will visit this people in mine anger; yea, and I will not turn my fierce anger away.

8:30 Alma went forth, and also Amulek, among the people, to declare the words of God unto them; and they were filled with the Holy Ghost.

8:31 they had power given unto them, insomuch that they could not be confined in dungeons; neither was it possible that any man could slay them; nevertheless they did not exercise their power until they were bound in bands and cast into prison. Now, this was done that the Lord might show forth his power in them.

131

Alma 9:1 I, Alma, having been commanded of God that I should take Amulek and go forth and preach again unto this people,

as I began to preach unto them, they began to contend with me, saying:

9:2 Who art thou? Suppose ye that we shall believe the testimony of one man, although he should preach unto us that the earth should pass away?

9:3 they knew not that the earth should pass away.

9:4 And they said also: We will not believe thy words if thou shouldst prophesy that this great city should be destroyed in one day.

9:5 Now they knew not that God could do such marvelous works, for they were a hard-hearted and a stiffnecked people.

9:6 they said: Who is God, that sendeth no more authority than one man among this people, to declare unto them the truth of such great and marvelous things?

9:7 they stood forth to lay their hands on me; but behold, they did not.

I stood with boldness to declare unto them, yea, I did boldly testify unto them, saying:

9:8 Behold, O ye wicked and perverse generation, how have ye forgotten the tradition of your fathers; yea, how soon ye have forgotten the commandments of God.

9:9 Do ye not remember that our father, Lehi, was brought out of Jerusalem by the hand of God?

Do ye not remember that they were all led by him through the wilderness?

9:10 have ye forgotten so soon how many times he delivered our fathers out of the hands of their enemies, and preserved them from being destroyed, even by the hands of their own

brethren?

9:11 Yea, and if it had not been for his matchless power, and his mercy, and his long-suffering towards us, we should unavoidably have been cut off from the face of the earth long before this period of time, and perhaps been consigned to a state of endless misery and woe.

9:12 he commandeth you to repent; and except ye repent, ye can in nowise inherit the kingdom of God.

he has commanded you to repent, or he will utterly destroy you from off the face of the earth; yea, he will visit you in his anger, and in his fierce anger he will not turn away.

9:13 do ye not remember the words which he spake unto Lehi, saying that: Inasmuch as ye shall keep my commandments, ye shall prosper in the land?

And again it is said that: Inasmuch as ye will not keep my commandments ye shall be cut off from the presence of the Lord.

9:14 I would that ye should remember, that inasmuch as the Lamanites have not kept the commandments of God, they have been cut off from the presence of the Lord.

Now we see that the word of the Lord has been verified in this thing, and the Lamanites have been cut off from his presence, from the beginning of their transgressions in the land.

9:15 Nevertheless I say unto you, that it shall be more tolerable for them in the day of judgment than for you, if ye remain in your sins, yea, and even more tolerable for them in this life than for you, except ye repent.

9:16 For there are many promises which are extended to the

Lamanites; for it is because of the traditions of their fathers that caused them to remain in their state of ignorance; therefore the Lord will be merciful unto them and prolong their existence in the land.

9:17 And at some period of time they will be brought to believe in his word, and to know of the incorrectness of the traditions of their fathers; and many of them will be saved, for the Lord will be merciful unto all who call on his name.

9:18 But behold, I say unto you that if ye persist in your wickedness that your days shall not be prolonged in the land, for the Lamanites shall be sent upon you;

if ye repent not they shall come in a time when you know not, and ye shall be visited with utter destruction; and it shall be according to the fierce anger of the Lord.

9:19 For he will not suffer you that ye shall live in your iniquities, to destroy his people.

Nay; he would rather suffer that the Lamanites might destroy all his people who are called the people of Nephi, if it were possible that they could fall into sins and transgressions, after having had so much light and so much knowledge given unto them of the Lord their God;

9:20 after having been such a highly favored people of the Lord; having been favored above every other nation, kindred, tongue, or people;

having had all things made known unto them, according to their desires, and their faith, and prayers, of that which has been, and which is, and which is to come;

9:21 Having been visited by the Spirit of God;

having conversed with angels, and having been spoken unto by the voice of the Lord;

having the spirit of prophecy, and the spirit of revelation, and also many gifts, the gift of speaking with tongues, and the gift of preaching, and the gift of the Holy Ghost, and the gift of translation;

9:22 having been delivered of God out of the land of Jerusalem, by the hand of the Lord;

having been saved from famine, and from sickness, and all manner of diseases of every kind;

having waxed strong in battle, that they might not be destroyed;

having been brought out of bondage time after time,

having been kept and preserved until now;

they have been prospered until they are rich in all manner of things

9:23 if this people, who have received so many blessings from the hand of the Lord, should transgress contrary to the light and knowledge which they do have, I say unto you that if this be the case, that if they should fall into transgression, it would be far more tolerable for the Lamanites than for them.

9:24 the promises of the Lord are extended to the Lamanites, but they are not unto you if ye transgress;

for has not the Lord expressly promised and firmly decreed, that if ye will rebel against him that ye shall utterly be destroyed from off the face of the earth?

9:25 for this cause, that ye may not be destroyed, the Lord has sent his angel to visit many of his people, declaring unto them that they must go forth and cry mightily unto this people, saying:

Repent ye, for the kingdom of heaven is nigh at hand;

9:26 not many days hence the Son of God shall come in his glory;
his glory shall be the glory of the Only Begotten of the Father,
full of grace, equity, and truth, full of patience, mercy, and long-
suffering, quick to hear the cries of his people and to answer
their prayers.

9:27 he cometh to redeem those who will be baptized unto
repentance, through faith on his name.

9:28 prepare ye the way of the Lord,
the time is at hand that all men shall reap a reward of their
works, according to that which they have been
if they have been righteous they shall reap the salvation of their
souls, according to the power and deliverance of Jesus Christ;
if they have been evil they shall reap the damnation of their
souls, according to the power and captivation of the devil.

9:29 this is the voice of the angel, crying unto the people.

9:30 now, my beloved brethren, for ye are my brethren, and ye
ought to be beloved, and ye ought to bring forth works which
are meet for repentance, seeing that your hearts have been
grossly hardened against the word of God, and seeing that ye
are a lost and a fallen people.

132

Alma 10:2 I am Amulek; I am the son of Giddonah, who was the son of
Ishmael, who was a descendant of Aminadi;

it was that same Aminadi who interpreted the writing which was
upon the wall of the temple, which was written by the finger of

God.

10:3 Aminadi was a descendant of Nephi, who was the son of Lehi, who came out of the land of Jerusalem, who was a descendant of Manasseh, who was the son of Joseph who was sold into Egypt by the hands of his brethren.

10:4 I am also a man of no small reputation among all those who know me;

I have many kindreds and friends, and I have also acquired much riches by the hand of my industry.

10:5 after all this, I never have known much of the ways of the Lord, and his mysteries and marvelous power.

I mistake, for I have seen much of his mysteries and his marvelous power; yea, even in the preservation of the lives of this people.

10:6 Nevertheless, I did harden my heart, for I was called many times and I would not hear;

I knew concerning these things, yet I would not know; therefore I went on rebelling against God, in the wickedness of my heart,

10:7 As I was journeying to see a very near kindred, behold an angel of the Lord appeared unto me and said: Amulek, return to thine own house, for thou shalt feed a prophet of the Lord; yea, a holy man, who is a chosen man of God;

he has fasted many days because of the sins of this people, and he is an hungered, and thou shalt receive him into thy house and feed him, and he shall bless thee and thy house; and the blessing of the Lord shall rest upon thee and thy house.

10:8 I obeyed the voice of the angel, and returned towards my

house.

as I was going thither I found the man whom the angel said
unto me: Thou shalt receive into thy house

it was this same man who has been speaking unto you
concerning the things of God.

10:9 the angel said unto me he is a holy man; wherefore I know he
is a holy man because it was said by an angel of God.

10:10 I know that the things whereof he hath testified are true;
as the Lord liveth, even so has he sent his angel to make these
things manifest unto me;

10:11 he hath blessed mine house, he hath blessed me, and my
women, and my children, and my father and my kinsfolk;

10:12 the people began to be astonished, seeing there was more
than one witness who testified of the things whereof they were
accused, and also of the things which were to come,

133

Alma 10:13 there were some among them who thought to question them,
that by their cunning devices they might catch them in their
words, that they might find witness against them, that they
might deliver them to their judges that they might be judged
according to the law,

10:14 it was those men who sought to destroy them, who were
lawyers, who were hired or appointed by the people to
administer the law at their times of trials, or at the trials of the
crimes of the people before the judges.

10:15 these lawyers were learned in all the arts and cunning of the

people; and this was to enable them that they might be skilful in their profession.

10:17 as they began to question him, he perceived their thoughts, and he said unto them: O ye wicked and perverse generation, ye lawyers and hypocrites, for ye are laying the foundation of the devil; for ye are laying traps and snares to catch the holy ones of God.

10:18 Ye are laying plans to pervert the ways of the righteous, and to bring down the wrath of God upon your heads, even to the utter destruction of this people.

10:19 if the time should come that the voice of this people should choose iniquity, that is, if the time should come that this people should fall into transgression, they would be ripe for destruction.

10:20 well doth the Lord judge of your iniquities; well doth he cry unto this people, by the voice of his angels: Repent ye, repent, for the kingdom of heaven is at hand.

10:21 well doth he cry, by the voice of his angels that: I will come down among my people, with equity and justice in my hands.

10:22 if it were not for the prayers of the righteous, who are now in the land, that ye would even now be visited with utter destruction; yet it would not be by flood, as were the people in the days of Noah, but it would be by famine, and by pestilence, and the sword.

10:23 it is by the prayers of the righteous that ye are spared; if ye will cast out the righteous from among you then will not the Lord stay his hand; but in his fierce anger he will come out against you; then ye shall be smitten by famine, and by

pestilence, and by the sword; and the time is soon at hand
except ye repent.

10:24 the people were more angry with Amulek, and they cried out,
saying: This man doth revile against our laws which are just,
and our wise lawyers whom we have selected.

10:25 Amulek stretched forth his hand, and cried the mightier unto
them, saying: O ye wicked and perverse generation, why hath
Satan got such great hold upon your hearts? Why will ye yield
yourselves unto him that he may have power over you, to blind
your eyes, that ye will not understand the words which are
spoken, according to their truth?

10:26 have I testified against your law?

ye say that I have spoken against your law; but I have not, but I
have spoken in favor of your law, to your condemnation.

10:27 the foundation of the destruction of this people is beginning to
be laid by the unrighteousness of your lawyers and your
judges.

10:28 the people cried out against him, saying: Now we know that
this man is a child of the devil, for he hath lied unto us; for he
hath spoken against our law.

10:30 the lawyers put it into their hearts that they should remember
these things against him.

10:32 Now the object of these lawyers was to get gain; and they got
gain according to their employ.

134

Alma 11:1 it was in the law of Mosiah that every man who was a judge of

the law, or those who were appointed to be judges, should receive wages according to the time which they labored to judge those who were brought before them to be judged.

11:20 they did stir up the people to riotings, and all manner of disturbances and wickedness, that they might have more employ, that they might get money according to the suits which were brought before them;

11:21 Zeezrom was a man who was expert in the devices of the devil, that he might destroy that which was good;

11:22 Zeezrom said unto him: Behold, here are six onties of silver, and all these will I give thee if thou wilt deny the existence of a Supreme Being.

11:23 Now Amulek said: O thou child of hell, why tempt ye me? Knowest thou that the righteous yieldeth to no such temptations?

11:24 Believest thou that there is no God? I say unto you, Nay, thou knowest that there is a God, but thou lovest that lucre more than him.

11:25 And now thou hast lied before God unto me.

11:26 Zeezrom said unto him: Thou sayest there is a true and living God?

11:27 And Amulek said: Yea, there is a true and living God.

11:28 Now Zeezrom said: Is there more than one God?

11:29 And he answered, No.

11:30 Now Zeezrom said unto him again: How knowest thou these things?

11:31 And he said: An angel hath made them known unto me.

11:32 And Zeezrom said again: Who is he that shall come? Is it the

Son of God?

11:33 And he said unto him, Yea.

11:34 And Zeezrom said again: Shall he save his people in their sins? And Amulek answered and said unto him: I say unto you he shall not, for it is impossible for him to deny his word.

11:35 Now Zeezrom said unto the people: See that ye remember these things; for he said there is but one God; yet he saith that the Son of God shall come, but he shall not save his people as though he had authority to command God.

11:36 Now Amulek saith again unto him: Behold thou hast lied, for thou sayest that I spake as though I had authority to command God because I said he shall not save his people in their sins.

11:37 And I say unto you again that he cannot save them in their sins; for I cannot deny his word, and he hath said that no unclean thing can inherit the kingdom of heaven; therefore, how can ye be saved, except ye inherit the kingdom of heaven? Therefore, ye cannot be saved in your sins.

11:38 Zeezrom saith again unto him: Is the Son of God the very Eternal Father?

135

Alma 11:39 Amulek said unto him: Yea, he is the very Eternal Father of heaven and of earth, and all things which in them are; he is the beginning and the end, the first and the last;

11:40 he shall come into the world to redeem his people; and he shall take upon him the transgressions of those who believe on his name; and these are they that shall have eternal life, and

salvation cometh to none else.

11:41 the wicked remain as though there had been no redemption made, except it be the loosing of the bands of death;

the day cometh that all shall rise from the dead and stand before God, and be judged according to their works.

11:42 Now, there is a death which is called a temporal death; and the death of Christ shall loose the bands of this temporal death, that all shall be raised from this temporal death.

11:43 The spirit and the body shall be reunited again in its perfect form; both limb and joint shall be restored to its proper frame, even as we now are at this time; and we shall be brought to stand before God, knowing even as we know now, and have a bright recollection of all our guilt.

11:44 Now, this restoration shall come to all, both old and young, both bond and free, both male and female, both the wicked and the righteous; and even there shall not so much as a hair of their heads be lost;

but every thing shall be restored to its perfect frame, as it is now, or in the body, and shall be brought and be arraigned before the bar of Christ the Son, and God the Father, and the Holy Spirit, which is one Eternal God, to be judged according to their works, whether they be good or whether they be evil.

11:45 I have spoken unto you concerning the death of the mortal body, and also concerning the resurrection of the mortal body.

I say unto you that this mortal body is raised to an immortal body, that is from death, even from the first death unto life, that they can die no more; their spirits uniting with their bodies, never to be divided; thus the whole becoming spiritual and

immortal, that they can no more see corruption.

136*

Alma 12:1 he opened his mouth and began to speak unto him, and to establish the words of Amulek, and to explain things beyond, or to unfold the scriptures beyond that which Amulek had done.

12:3 thou hast been taken in thy lying and craftiness, for thou hast not lied unto men only but thou hast lied unto God; for behold, he knows all thy thoughts,

thou seest that thy thoughts are made known unto us by his Spirit;

12:4 thou seest that we know that thy plan was a very subtle plan, as to the subtlety of the devil,

for to lie and to deceive this people that thou mightest set them against us, to revile us and to cast us out

12:5 ye should remember

12:6 this was a snare of the adversary, which he has laid to catch this people, that he might bring you into subjection unto him, that he might encircle you about with his chains, that he might chain you down to everlasting destruction, according to the power of his captivity.

12:7 Zeezrom began to tremble more exceedingly, for he was convinced more and more of the power of God;

he was convinced that they knew the thoughts and intents of his heart;

12:8 Zeezrom began to inquire of them diligently, that he might know more concerning the kingdom of God.

What does this mean which Amulek hath spoken concerning the resurrection of the dead, that all shall rise from the dead, both the just and the unjust, and are brought to stand before God to be judged according to their works?

12:9 It is given unto many to know the mysteries of God; nevertheless they are laid under a strict command that they shall not impart only according to the portion of his word which he doth grant unto the children of men, according to the heed and diligence which they give unto him.

12:10 therefore, he that will harden his heart, the same receiveth the lesser portion of the word; and he that will not harden his heart, to him is given the greater portion of the word, until it is given unto him to know the mysteries of God until he know them in full.

12:11 they that will harden their hearts, to them is given the lesser portion of the word until they know nothing concerning his mysteries; and then they are taken captive by the devil, and led by his will down to destruction. Now this is what is meant by the chains of hell.

12:12 Amulek hath spoken plainly concerning death, and being raised from this mortality to a state of immortality, and being brought before the bar of God, to be judged according to our works.

12:13 if we have hardened our hearts against the word, insomuch that it has not been found in us, then will our state be awful, for then we shall be condemned.

12:14 For our words will condemn us, yea, all our works will condemn us; we shall not be found spotless; and our thoughts will also

condemn us; and in this awful state we shall not dare to look up to our God; and we would fain be glad if we could command the rocks and the mountains to fall upon us to hide us from his presence.

12:15 we must come forth and stand before him in his glory, and in his power, and in his might, majesty, and dominion, and acknowledge to our everlasting shame that all his judgments are just; that he is just in all his works, and that he is merciful unto the children of men, and that he has all power to save every man that believeth on his name and bringeth forth fruit meet for repentance.

12:16 then cometh a death, even a second death, which is a spiritual death; then is a time that whosoever dieth in his sins, as to a temporal death, shall also die a spiritual death;

he shall die as to things pertaining unto righteousness.

12:17 Then is the time when their torments shall be as a lake of fire and brimstone, whose flame ascendeth up forever and ever; and then is the time that they shall be chained down to an everlasting destruction, according to the power and captivity of Satan, he having subjected them according to his will.

12:18 they shall be as though there had been no redemption made; for they cannot be redeemed according to God's justice; and they cannot die, seeing there is no more corruption.

137*

Alma 12:20 Antionah, who was a chief ruler among them, came forth and said

What is this that thou hast said, that man should rise from the dead and be changed from this mortal to an immortal state that the soul can never die?

12:21 What does the scripture mean, which saith that God placed a cherubim and a flaming sword on the east of the garden of Eden, lest our first parents should enter and partake of the fruit of the tree of life, and live forever?

thus we see that there was no possible chance that they should live forever.

12:22 Adam did fall by the partaking of the forbidden fruit, according to the word of God; and thus we see, that by his fall, all mankind became a lost and fallen people.

12:23 if it had been possible for Adam to have partaken of the fruit of the tree of life at that time, there would have been no death, and the word would have been void, making God a liar, for he said: If thou eat thou shalt surely die.

12:24 And we see that death comes upon mankind, yea, the death which has been spoken of by Amulek, which is the temporal death;

there was a space granted unto man in which he might repent; therefore this life became a probationary state; a time to prepare to meet God; a time to prepare for that endless state which has been spoken of by us, which is after the resurrection of the dead.

12:25 if it had not been for the plan of redemption, which was laid from the foundation of the world, there could have been no resurrection of the dead;

but there was a plan of redemption laid, which shall bring to

pass the resurrection of the dead, of which has been spoken.

12:26 if it were possible that our first parents could have gone forth and partaken of the tree of life they would have been forever miserable, having no preparatory state; and thus the plan of redemption would have been frustrated, and the word of God would have been void, taking none effect.

12:27 it was appointed unto men that they must die; and after death, they must come to judgment, even that same judgment of which we have spoken, which is the end.

12:28 after God had appointed that these things should come unto man, behold, then he saw that it was expedient that man should know concerning the things whereof he had appointed unto them;

12:29 he sent angels to converse with them, who caused men to behold of his glory.

12:30 they began from that time forth to call on his name;

God conversed with men, and made known unto them the plan of redemption, which had been prepared from the foundation of the world;

this he made known unto them according to their faith and repentance and their holy works.

12:31 he gave commandments unto men, they having first transgressed the first commandments as to things which were temporal, and becoming as Gods, knowing good from evil, placing themselves in a state to act, or being placed in a state to act according to their wills and pleasures, whether to do evil or to do good

12:32 God gave unto them commandments,

after having made known unto them the plan of redemption, that they should not do evil, the penalty thereof being a second death, which was an everlasting death as to things pertaining unto righteousness; for on such the plan of redemption could have no power, for the works of justice could not be destroyed, according to the supreme goodness of God.

12:33 God did call on men, in the name of his Son, (this being the plan of redemption which was laid) saying: If ye will repent, and harden not your hearts, then will I have mercy upon you, through mine Only Begotten Son;

12:34 whosoever repenteth, and hardeneth not his heart, he shall have claim on mercy through mine Only Begotten Son, unto a remission of his sins;

these shall enter into my rest.

12:35 whosoever will harden his heart and will do iniquity, behold, I swear in my wrath that he shall not enter into my rest.

12:36 if ye will harden your hearts ye shall not enter into the rest of the Lord;

your iniquity provoketh him that he sendeth down his wrath upon you as in the first provocation, yea, according to his word in the last provocation as well as the first, to the everlasting destruction of your souls; therefore, according to his word, unto the last death, as well as the first.

12:37 seeing we know these things, and they are true, let us repent, and harden not our hearts, that we provoke not the Lord our God to pull down his wrath upon us in these his second commandments which he has given unto us;

let us enter into the rest of God, which is prepared according to

his word.

138*

Alma 13:1 cite your minds forward to the time when the Lord God gave these commandments unto his children;

 remember that the Lord God ordained priests, after his holy order, which was after the order of his Son, to teach these things unto the people.

13:2 those priests were ordained after the order of his Son, in a manner that thereby the people might know in what manner to look forward to his Son for redemption.

13:3 this is the manner after which they were ordained being called and prepared from the foundation of the world according to the foreknowledge of God, on account of their exceeding faith and good works;

 being left to choose good or evil;

 they having chosen good, and exercising exceedingly great faith, are called with a holy calling,

 with that holy calling which was prepared with, and according to, a preparatory redemption

13:4 they have been called to this holy calling on account of their faith, while others would reject the Spirit of God on account of the hardness of their hearts and blindness of their minds,

 if it had not been for this they might have had as great privilege as their brethren.

13:5 in the first place they were on the same standing with their brethren;

this holy calling being prepared from the foundation of the world for such as would not harden their hearts, being in and through the atonement of the Only Begotten Son, who was prepared

13:6 thus being called by this holy calling, and ordained unto the high priesthood of the holy order of God,

to teach his commandments unto the children of men, that they also might enter into his rest

13:7 This high priesthood being after the order of his Son, which order was from the foundation of the world;

being without beginning of days or end of years, being prepared from eternity to all eternity, according to his foreknowledge of all things

13:8 they were ordained after this manner being called with a holy calling, and ordained with a holy ordinance, and taking upon them the high priesthood of the holy order, which calling, and ordinance, and high priesthood, is without beginning or end

9 Thus they become high priests forever, after the order of the Son, the Only Begotten of the Father, who is without beginning of days or end of years, who is full of grace, equity, and truth.

And thus it is.

139*

Alma 13:10 concerning the holy order, or this high priesthood, there were many who were ordained and became high priests of God;

it was on account of their exceeding faith and repentance, and their righteousness before God, they choosing to repent and

work righteousness rather than to perish;

13:11 Therefore they were called after this holy order, and were sanctified,

their garments were washed white through the blood of the Lamb.

13:12 they, after being sanctified by the Holy Ghost, having their garments made white, being pure and spotless before God, could not look upon sin save it were with abhorrence;

there were many, exceedingly great many, who were made pure and entered into the rest of the Lord their God.

140

Alma 13:13 ye should humble yourselves before God,

bring forth fruit meet for repentance, that ye may also enter into that rest.

13:14 humble yourselves even as the people in the days of Melchizedek,

a high priest after this same order

who also took upon him the high priesthood forever.

13:15 it was this same Melchizedek to whom Abraham paid tithes; yea, even our father Abraham paid tithes of one-tenth part of all he possessed.

13:16 these ordinances were given after this manner,

that thereby the people might look forward on the Son of God,

it being a type of his order, or it being his order,

that they might look forward to him for a remission of their sins,

that they might enter into the rest of the Lord.

141

Alma 13:17 Melchizedek was a king over the land of Salem;

his people had waxed strong in iniquity and abomination; yea,
they had all gone astray; they were full of all manner of
wickedness;

13:18 But Melchizedek having exercised mighty faith, and received
the office of the high priesthood according to the holy order of
God,

did preach repentance unto his people.

they did repent;

Melchizedek did establish peace in the land in his days;
therefore he was called the prince of peace, for he was the king
of Salem;

13:19 there were many before him, and also there were many
afterwards, but none were greater;

13:20 the scriptures are before you; if ye will wrest them it shall be to
your own destruction.

142*

Alma 13:21 Now is the time to repent, for the day of salvation draweth nigh;

13:22 the voice of the Lord, by the mouth of angels, doth declare it
unto all nations;

doth declare it, that they may have glad tidings of great joy;

he doth sound these glad tidings among all his people,

even to them that are scattered abroad upon the face of the

earth;

13:23 they are made known unto us in plain terms, that we may understand, that we cannot err; and this because of our being wanderers in a strange land;

we are thus highly favored, for we have these glad tidings declared unto us in all parts of our vineyard.

13:24 angels are declaring it unto many at this time in our land;

this is for the purpose of preparing the hearts of the children of men to receive his word at the time of his coming in his glory.

13:25 we only wait to hear the joyful news declared unto us by the mouth of angels, of his coming;

the time cometh, we know not how soon.

13:26 it shall be made known unto just and holy men, by the mouth of angels, at the time of his coming, that the words of our fathers may be fulfilled, according to that which they have spoken concerning him, which was according to the spirit of prophecy which was in them.

143

Alma 13:27 hearken unto my words, and cast off your sins, and not procrastinate the day of your repentance;

13:28 humble yourselves before the Lord, and call on his holy name, and watch and pray continually, that ye may not be tempted above that which ye can bear,

thus be led by the Holy Spirit,

becoming humble, meek, submissive, patient, full of love and

all long-suffering;

13:29 Having faith on the Lord;

having a hope that ye shall receive eternal life;

having the love of God always in your hearts, that ye may be lifted up at the last day and enter into his rest.

13:30 may the Lord grant unto you repentance, that ye may not bring down his wrath upon you, that ye may not be bound down by the chains of hell, that ye may not suffer the second death.

144

Alma 14:1 many of them did believe on his words,

began to repent,

to search the scriptures.

14:2 the more part of them were desirous that they might destroy Alma and Amulek; for they were angry with Alma, because of the plainness of his words unto Zeezrom;

they also said that Amulek had lied unto them, and had reviled against their law

14:3 they had testified so plainly against their wickedness,

14:4 they took them and bound them with strong cords, and took them before the chief judge of the land.

14:5 the people went forth and witnessed against them testifying that they had reviled against the law,

also testified that there was but one God, and that he should send his Son among the people, but he should not save them;

14:6 Zeezrom was astonished at the words which had been spoken; he also knew concerning the blindness of the minds, which he

had caused among the people by his lying words;

his soul began to be harrowed up under a consciousness of his own guilt; yea, he began to be encircled about by the pains of hell.

14:7 he began to cry unto the people, saying: Behold, I am guilty, and these men are spotless before God.

he began to plead for them from that time forth; but they reviled him, saying: Art thou also possessed with the devil?

they spit upon him, and cast him out from among them, also all those who believed in the words which had been spoken by Alma and Amulek;

14:8 they brought their wives and children together, and whosoever believed or had been taught to believe in the word of God they caused that they should be cast into the fire,

they also brought forth their records which contained the holy scriptures, and cast them into the fire also, that they might be burned and destroyed by fire.

14:9 they took Alma and Amulek, and carried them forth to the place of martyrdom, that they might witness the destruction of those who were consumed by fire.

14:10 let us stretch forth our hands, and exercise the power of God which is in us, and save them from the flames.

14:11 But Alma said unto him: The Spirit constraineth me that I must not stretch forth mine hand; for behold the Lord receiveth them up unto himself, in glory;

he doth suffer that they may do this thing, or that the people may do this thing unto them, according to the hardness of their hearts, that the judgments which he shall exercise upon them

in his wrath may be just;

the blood of the innocent shall stand as a witness against them, yea, and cry mightily against them at the last day.

14:14 the chief judge of the land came and stood before Alma and Amulek, as they were bound; and he smote them with his hand upon their cheeks, and said unto them: After what ye have seen, will ye preach again unto this people, that they shall be cast into a lake of fire and brimstone?

14:15 Behold, ye see that ye had not power to save those who had been cast into the fire; neither has God saved them because they were of thy faith.

14:17 Alma and Amulek answered him nothing; and he smote them again, and delivered them to the officers to be cast into prison.

145

Alma 14:20 the judge also smote them again on their cheeks. And many came forth also, and smote them, saying: Will ye stand again and judge this people, and condemn our law?

If ye have such great power why do ye not deliver yourselves?

14:21 And many such things did they say unto them, gnashing their teeth upon them, and spitting upon them, and saying: How shall we look when we are damned?

14:22 they did mock them for many days.

they did withhold food from them that they might hunger, and water that they might thirst; and they also did take from them their clothes that they were naked; and thus they were bound with strong cords, and confined in prison.

14:23 they had thus suffered for many days,
the chief judge over the land of Ammonihah and many of their
teachers and their lawyers went in unto the prison where Alma
and Amulek were bound with cords.

14:24 chief judge stood before them, and smote them again, and said
unto them: If ye have the power of God deliver yourselves from
these bands, and then we will believe that the Lord will destroy
this people according to your words.

14:25 when the last had spoken unto them the power of God was
upon Alma and Amulek, and they rose and stood upon their
feet.

14:26 Alma cried, saying: How long shall we suffer these great
afflictions, O Lord? O Lord, give us strength according to our
faith which is in Christ, even unto deliverance.

they broke the cords with which they were bound;
when the people saw this, they began to flee, for the fear of
destruction had come upon them.

14:27 so great was their fear that they fell to the earth, and did not
obtain the outer door of the prison; and the earth shook
mightily, and the walls of the prison were rent in twain, so that
they fell to the earth;

the chief judge, and the lawyers, and priests, and teachers,
who smote upon Alma and Amulek, were slain by the fall
thereof.

14:28 Alma and Amulek came forth out of the prison, and they were
not hurt;

the Lord had granted unto them power, according to their faith
which was in Christ.

they straightway came forth out of the prison; and they were loosed from their bands; and the prison had fallen to the earth, and every soul within the walls thereof, save it were Alma and Amulek, was slain;

14:29 the people having heard a great noise came running together by multitudes to know the cause of it;

when they saw Alma and Amulek coming forth out of the prison, and the walls thereof had fallen to the earth, they were struck with great fear, and fled from the presence of Alma and Amulek

15:1 Alma and Amulek were commanded to depart out of that city;

146

Alma 15:2 And they related unto them all that had happened unto their wives and children, and also concerning themselves, and of their power of deliverance.

15:3 Zeezrom lay sick at Sidom, with a burning fever, which was caused by the great tribulations of his mind on account of his wickedness,

15:5 they found him upon his bed, sick, being very low with a burning fever; and his mind also was exceedingly sore because of his iniquities;

when he saw them he stretched forth his hand, and besought them that they would heal him.

15:6 Alma said unto him, taking him by the hand:

Believest thou in the power of Christ unto salvation?

15:7 And he answered and said: Yea, I believe all the words that

thou hast taught.

15:8 Alma said: If thou believest in the redemption of Christ thou canst be healed.

15:9 And he said: Yea, I believe according to thy words.

15:10 then Alma cried unto the Lord, saying: O Lord our God, have mercy on this man, and heal him according to his faith which is in Christ.

15:11 Alma had said these words, Zeezrom leaped upon his feet, and began to walk; and this was done to the great astonishment of all the people;

15:12 Alma baptized Zeezrom unto the Lord; and he began from that time forth to preach unto the people.

15:13 Alma established a church in the land of Sidom, consecrated priests and teachers in the land, to baptize unto the Lord whosoever were desirous to be baptized.

15:14 they were many; for they did flock in from all the region round about Sidom, and were baptized.

15:15 the people that were in the land of Ammonihah, they yet remained a hard-hearted and a stiffnecked people;

they repented not of their sins, ascribing all the power of Alma and Amulek to the devil;

they were of the profession of Nehor, and did not believe in the repentance of their sins.

15:16 Amulek having forsaken all his gold, and silver, and his precious things, which were in the land of Ammonihah, for the word of God, he being rejected by those who were once his friends and also by his father and his kindred;

147

Alma 15:17 Alma having established the church at Sidom, seeing a great check, yea, seeing that the people were checked as to the pride of their hearts,

began to humble themselves before God,

began to assemble themselves together at their sanctuaries to worship God before the altar,

watching and praying continually, that they might be delivered from Satan, and from death, and from destruction

15:18 he took Amulek and came over to the land of Zarahemla, and took him to his own house,

did administer unto him in his tribulations, and strengthened him in the Lord.

148*

Alma 16:13 Alma and Amulek went forth preaching repentance to the people

in their temples, and in their sanctuaries, and also in their synagogues, which were built after the manner of the Jews.

16:14 as many as would hear their words, unto them they did impart the word of God, without any respect of persons, continually.

16:15 thus did Alma and Amulek go forth, and also many more who had been chosen for the work, to preach the word throughout all the land.

the establishment of the church became general throughout the land, in all the region round about, among all the people of

the Nephites.

16:16 there was no inequality among them; the Lord did pour out his Spirit on all the face of the land

to prepare the minds of the children of men, or to prepare their hearts to receive the word which should be taught among them at the time of his coming

16:17 That they might not be hardened against the word, that they might not be unbelieving, and go on to destruction,

but that they might receive the word with joy, and as a branch be grafted into the true vine,

that they might enter into the rest of the Lord their God.

149*

Alma 16:18 those priests who did go forth among the people did preach against all lyings, and deceivings, and envyings, and strifes, and malice, and revilings, and stealing, robbing, plundering, murdering, committing adultery, and all manner of lasciviousness, crying that these things ought not so to be

16:19 Holding forth things which must shortly come; yea, holding forth the coming of the Son of God, his sufferings and death, and also the resurrection of the dead.

16:20 many of the people did inquire concerning the place where the Son of God should come;

they were taught that he would appear unto them after his resurrection;

this the people did hear with great joy and gladness.

16:21 the church had been established throughout all the land

having got the victory over the devil,
the word of God being preached in its purity in all the land,
the Lord pouring out his blessings upon the people

150

Alma 17:1 he met with the sons of Mosiah

17:2 Now these sons of Mosiah were with Alma at the time the angel
first appeared unto him;

Alma did rejoice exceedingly to see his brethren;
what added more to his joy, they were still his brethren in the
Lord;

they had waxed strong in the knowledge of the truth;
they were men of a sound understanding
they had searched the scriptures diligently, that they might
know the word of God.

17:3 they had given themselves to much prayer, and fasting;
they had the spirit of prophecy, and the spirit of revelation,
when they taught, they taught with power and authority of God.

17:4 they had been teaching the word of God for the space of
fourteen years among the Lamanites, having had much
success in bringing many to the knowledge of the truth;
by the power of their words many were brought before the altar
of God, to call on his name and confess their sins before him.

17:5 they had many afflictions; they did suffer much, both in body
and in mind, such as hunger, thirst and fatigue, and also much
labor in the spirit.

Alma 17:8 they departed into the wilderness with their numbers which they had selected, to go up to the land of Nephi, to preach the word of God unto the Lamanites.

17:9 they journeyed many days in the wilderness,
 they fasted much and prayed much that the Lord would grant unto them a portion of his Spirit to go with them, and abide with them, that they might be an instrument in the hands of God to bring, if it were possible, their brethren, the Lamanites, to the knowledge of the truth, to the knowledge of the baseness of the traditions of their fathers, which were not correct.

17:10 the Lord did visit them with his Spirit, and said unto them: Be comforted. And they were comforted.

17:11 the Lord said unto them also: Go forth among the Lamanites, thy brethren, and establish my word; yet ye shall be patient in long-suffering and afflictions, that ye may show forth good examples unto them in me,

I will make an instrument of thee in my hands unto the salvation of many souls.

Alma 17:12 the hearts of the sons of Mosiah, and also those who were with them, took courage to go forth unto the Lamanites to declare unto them the word of God.

17:13 when they had arrived in the borders of the land of the Lamanites, that they separated themselves and departed one

from another, trusting in the Lord that they should meet again at the close of their harvest;

they supposed that great was the work which they had undertaken.

17:14 they had undertaken to preach the word of God to a wild and a hardened and a ferocious people;

a people who delighted in murdering the Nephites, and robbing and plundering them;

their hearts were set upon riches, or upon gold and silver, and precious stones;

they sought to obtain these things by murdering and plundering, that they might not labor for them with their own hands.

17:15 they were a very indolent people, many of whom did worship idols,

the curse of God had fallen upon them because of the traditions of their fathers; notwithstanding the promises of the Lord were extended unto them on the conditions of repentance.

17:16 this was the cause for which the sons of Mosiah had undertaken the work,

that perhaps they might bring them unto repentance; that perhaps they might bring them to know the plan of redemption.

17:17 they separated themselves one from another, and went forth among them, every man alone, according to the word and power of God which was given unto him.

Alma 17:18 Ammon being the chief among them, or rather he did administer unto them,

he departed from them,

having blessed them according to their several stations,

having imparted the word of God unto them, or administered unto them before his departure;

17:20 as Ammon entered the land of Ishmael, the Lamanites took him and bound him, as was their custom to bind all the Nephites who fell into their hands, and carry them before the king;

it was left to the pleasure of the king to slay them, or to retain them in captivity, or to cast them into prison, or to cast them out of his land,

17:24 king Lamoni was much pleased with Ammon, and caused that his bands should be loosed;

he would that Ammon should take one of his daughters to wife.

17:25 Ammon said unto him: Nay, but I will be thy servant.

154

Alma 17:17 he was set among other servants to watch the flocks of Lamoni,

17:26 he had been in the service of the king three days,

going forth with their flocks to the place of water, which was called the water of Sebus,

17:27 a certain number of the Lamanites, who had been with their flocks to water, stood and scattered the flocks of Ammon and the servants of the king,

17:28 the king will slay us, as he has our brethren because their

flocks were scattered by the wickedness of these men.

17:29 when Ammon saw this his heart was swollen within him with joy; for, said he, I will show forth my power unto these my fellow-servants, or the power which is in me, in restoring these flocks unto the king, that I may win the hearts of these my fellow-servants, that I may lead them to believe in my words.

17:31 he flattered them by his words,

My brethren, be of good cheer

let us go in search of the flocks,

we will gather them together and bring them back unto the place of water;

thus we will preserve the flocks unto the king and he will not slay us.

17:32 they rushed forth with much swiftness and did head the flocks of the king, and did gather them together again to the place of water.

17:33 those men again stood to scatter their flocks;

Ammon said unto his brethren: Encircle the flocks round about that they flee not;

I go and contend with these men who do scatter our flocks.

17:35 they knew not that the Lord had promised Mosiah that he would deliver his sons out of their hands;

neither did they know anything concerning the Lord; therefore they delighted in the destruction of their brethren;

17:36 Ammon stood forth and began to cast stones at them with his sling; yea, with mighty power he did sling stones amongst them;

thus he slew a certain number of them insomuch that they

began to be astonished at his power;

they were angry because of the slain of their brethren, and they were determined that he should fall;

17:37 every man that lifted his club to smite Ammon, he smote off their arms with his sword;

17:39 when he had driven them afar off, he returned and they watered their flocks and returned them to the pasture of the king,

155

Alma 18:2 they had all testified to the things which they had seen, he had learned of the faithfulness of Ammon in preserving his flocks,

also of his great power in contending against those who sought to slay him,

Behold, is not this the Great Spirit who doth send such great punishments upon this people, because of their murders?

18:5 Notwithstanding they believed in a Great Spirit they supposed that whatsoever they did

Lamoni began to fear exceedingly, with fear lest he had done wrong in slaying his servants;

18:6 For he had slain many of them because their brethren had scattered their flocks at the place of water;

18:7 it was the practice of these Lamanites to stand by the waters of Sebus to scatter the flocks of the people, that thereby they might drive away many that were scattered unto their own land, it being a practice of plunder among them.

18:10 when king Lamoni heard that Ammon was preparing his horses and his chariots he was more astonished, because of the faithfulness of Ammon,

he doth remember all my commandments to execute them.

18:12 when Ammon had made ready the horses and the chariots for the king and his servants, he went in unto the king, and he saw that the countenance of the king was changed;

18:14 Ammon turned himself unto the king, and said unto him: What wilt thou that I should do for thee, O king?

the king answered him not for the space of an hour, according to their time,

18:16 filled with the Spirit of God, therefore he perceived the thoughts of the king.

18:17 I am a man, and am thy servant; therefore, whatsoever thou desirest which is right, that will I do.

18:18 king Lamoni did open his mouth, and said unto him: Who art thou? Art thou that Great Spirit, who knows all things?

18:19 Ammon answered and said unto him: I am not.

156

Alma 18:21 whatsoever thou desirest of me I will grant it unto thee.

18:22 Ammon being wise, yet harmless, he said unto Lamoni: Wilt thou hearken unto my words, if I tell thee by what power I do these things?

18:23 the king answered him, and said: Yea, I will believe all thy words. And thus he was caught with guile.

18:24 Believest thou that there is a God?

18:25 And he answered, and said unto him: I do not know what that meaneth.

18:26 then Ammon said: Believest thou that there is a Great Spirit?

18:27 And he said, Yea.

18:28 And Ammon said: This is God.

Ammon said unto him again: Believest thou that this Great Spirit, who is God, created all things which are in heaven and in the earth?

18:29 he said: Yea, I believe that he created all things which are in the earth; but I do not know the heavens.

18:30 And Ammon said unto him: The heavens is a place where God dwells and all his holy angels.

18:31 And king Lamoni said: Is it above the earth?

18:32 And Ammon said: Yea, and he looketh down upon all the children of men; and he knows all the thoughts and intents of the heart; for by his hand were they all created from the beginning.

18:33 king Lamoni said: I believe all these things which thou hast spoken. Art thou sent from God?

18:34 Ammon said unto him: I am a man;

man in the beginning was created after the image of God,
I am called by his Holy Spirit to teach these things unto this people, that they may be brought to a knowledge of that which is just and true;

18:35 a portion of that Spirit dwelleth in me, which giveth me knowledge, and also power according to my faith and desires which are in God.

Alma 18:36 he began at the creation of the world, and also the creation of Adam, and told him all the things concerning the fall of man, rehearsed and laid before him the records and the holy scriptures of the people, which had been spoken by the prophets, even down to the time that their father, Lehi, left Jerusalem.

18:37 And he also rehearsed unto them (for it was unto the king and to his servants) all the journeyings of their fathers in the wilderness, and all their sufferings with hunger and thirst, and their travail, and so forth.

18:38 he also rehearsed unto them concerning the rebellions of Laman and Lemuel, and the sons of Ishmael, yea, all their rebellions did he relate unto them;

he expounded unto them all the records and scriptures from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem down to the present time.

18:39 he expounded unto them the plan of redemption, which was prepared from the foundation of the world;

he also made known unto them concerning the coming of Christ,

all the works of the Lord did he make known unto them.

18:40 the king believed all his words.

18:41 he began to cry unto the Lord, saying: O Lord, have mercy; according to thy abundant mercy which thou hast had upon the people of Nephi, have upon me, and my people.

18:42 And now, when he had said this, he fell unto the earth, as if he were dead.

18:43 and he lay as if he were dead for the space of two days and two nights;

158

Alma 19:4 The servants of my husband have made it known unto me that thou art a prophet of a holy God,

that thou hast power to do many mighty works in his name;

19:5 I would that ye should go in and see my husband, for he has been laid upon his bed for the space of two days and two nights; and some say that he is not dead, but others say that he is dead and that he stinketh, and that he ought to be placed in the sepulchre;

19:6 this was what Ammon desired, for he knew that king Lamoni was under the power of God; he knew that the dark veil of unbelief was being cast away from his mind, and the light which did light up his mind, which was the light of the glory of God, which was a marvelous light of his goodness

this light had infused such joy into his soul, the cloud of darkness having been dispelled, and that the light of everlasting life was lit up in his soul,

he knew that this had overcome his natural frame, and he was carried away in God

19:7 he went in to see the king according as the queen had desired him; and he saw the king, and he knew that he was not dead.

19:8 he said unto the queen: He is not dead, but he sleepeth in God, and on the morrow he shall rise again; therefore bury him not.

19:9 And Ammon said unto her: Believest thou this? And she said

unto him: I have had no witness save thy word, and the word of our servants; nevertheless I believe that it shall be according as thou hast said.

19:10 And Ammon said unto her: Blessed art thou because of thy exceeding faith; I say unto thee, woman, there has not been such great faith among all the people of the Nephites.

19:11 she watched over the bed of her husband, from that time even until that time on the morrow which Ammon had appointed that he should rise.

19:12 he arose, according to the words of Ammon; and as he arose, he stretched forth his hand unto the woman, and said: Blessed be the name of God, and blessed art thou.

19:13 as sure as thou livest, behold, I have seen my Redeemer; and he shall come forth, and be born of a woman, and he shall redeem all mankind who believe on his name.

Now, when he had said these words, his heart was swollen within him, and he sunk again with joy; and the queen also sunk down, being overpowered by the Spirit.

159

Alma 19:14 Ammon seeing the Spirit of the Lord poured out according to his prayers upon the Lamanites, his brethren, who had been the cause of so much mourning among the Nephites, or among all the people of God because of their iniquities and their traditions, he fell upon his knees, and began to pour out his soul in prayer and thanksgiving to God for what he had done for his brethren; and he was also overpowered with joy; and

thus they all three had sunk to the earth.

19:15 Now, when the servants of the king had seen that they had fallen, they also began to cry unto God, for the fear of the Lord had come upon them also, for it was they who had stood before the king and testified unto him concerning the great power of Ammon.

19:16 they did call on the name of the Lord, in their might, even until they had all fallen to the earth, save it were one of the Lamanitish women, whose name was Abish, she having been converted unto the Lord for many years, on account of a remarkable vision of her father

19:17 Thus, having been converted to the Lord, and never having made it known,

160

Alma 19:17 she knew that it was the power of God; and supposing that this opportunity, by making known unto the people what had happened among them, that by beholding this scene it would cause them to believe in the power of God, therefore she ran forth from house to house, making it known unto the people.

19:18 they began to assemble themselves together unto the house of the king.

there came a multitude, and to their astonishment, they beheld the king, and the queen, and their servants prostrate upon the earth, and they all lay there as though they were dead;

they also saw Ammon, and behold, he was a Nephite.

19:19 the people began to murmur among themselves; some saying

that it was a great evil that had come upon them, or upon the king and his house, because he had suffered that the Nephite should remain in the land.

19:20 others rebuked them, saying: The king hath brought this evil upon his house, because he slew his servants who had had their flocks scattered at the waters of Sebus.

19:22 Now, one of them, whose brother had been slain with the sword of Ammon, being exceedingly angry with Ammon, drew his sword and went forth that he might let it fall upon Ammon, to slay him; and as he lifted the sword to smite him, behold, he fell dead.

19:24 when the multitude beheld that the man had fallen dead, who lifted the sword to slay Ammon, fear came upon them all, and they durst not put forth their hands to touch him or any of those who had fallen; and they began to marvel again among themselves what could be the cause of this great power, or what all these things could mean.

19:25 there were many among them who said that Ammon was the Great Spirit, and others said he was sent by the Great Spirit;

19:26 But others rebuked them all, saying that he was a monster, who had been sent from the Nephites to torment them.

19:27 And there were some who said that Ammon was sent by the Great Spirit to afflict them because of their iniquities; and that it was the Great Spirit that had always attended the Nephites, who had ever delivered them out of their hands; and they said that it was this Great Spirit who had destroyed so many of their brethren, the Lamanites.

19:28 while they were thus contending, the woman servant who had

caused the multitude to be gathered together came, and when she saw the contention which was among the multitude she was exceedingly sorrowful, even unto tears.

19:29 she went and took the queen by the hand, that perhaps she might raise her from the ground; and as soon as she touched her hand she arose and stood upon her feet, and cried with a loud voice, saying:

O blessed Jesus, who has saved me from an awful hell! O blessed God, have mercy on this people!

19:30 And when she had said this, she clasped her hands, being filled with joy, speaking many words which were not understood;

when she had done this, she took the king, Lamoni, by the hand, and behold he arose and stood upon his feet.

19:31 he, immediately, seeing the contention among his people, went forth and began to rebuke them, and to teach them the words which he had heard from the mouth of Ammon;

as many as heard his words believed, and were converted unto the Lord.

19:32 But there were many among them who would not hear his words; therefore they went their way.

161

Alma 19:33 when Ammon arose he also administered unto them, and also did all the servants of Lamoni; and they did all declare unto the people the selfsame thing that their hearts had been changed; that they had no more desire to do evil.

19:34 many did declare unto the people that they had seen angels
and had conversed with them;

they had told them things of God, and of his righteousness.

19:35 there were many that did believe in their words;

as many as did believe were baptized;

they became a righteous people,

they did establish a church among them.

19:36 thus the work of the Lord did commence among the Lamanites;

thus the Lord did begin to pour out his Spirit upon them;

we see that his arm is extended to all people who will repent
and believe on his name.

162

Alma 20:1 when they had established a church in that land,

king Lamoni desired that Ammon should go with him to the
land of Nephi, that he might show him unto his father.

20:2 the voice of the Lord came to Ammon saying: Thou shalt not go
up to the land of Nephi, for behold, the king will seek thy life;

but thou shalt go to the land of Middoni; for behold, thy brother
Aaron, and also Muloki and Ammah are in prison.

20:3 when Ammon had heard this, he said unto Lamoni: Behold, my
brother and brethren are in prison at Middoni, and I go that I
may deliver them.

20:4 Lamoni said unto him: Who told thee that thy brethren were in
prison?

20:5 And Ammon said unto him: No one hath told me, save it be
God; and he said unto me Go and deliver thy brethren, for

they are in prison in the land of Middoni.

20:8 as Ammon and Lamoni were journeying thither, they met the father of Lamoni, who was king over all the land.

20:13 his father was angry with him, and said: Lamoni, thou art going to deliver these Nephites, who are sons of a liar. Behold, he robbed our fathers; and now his children are also come amongst us that they may, by their cunning and their lyings, deceive us, that they again may rob us of our property.

20:26 when he saw that Ammon had no desire to destroy him, and when he also saw the great love he had for his son Lamoni, he was astonished exceedingly, and said: Because this is all that thou hast desired, that I would release thy brethren, and suffer that my son Lamoni should retain his kingdom, behold, I will grant unto you that my son may retain his kingdom from this time and forever; and I will govern him no more

163*

Alma 21:4 Aaron came to the city of Jerusalem, and first began to preach to the Amalekites.

And he began to preach to them in their synagogues, for they had built synagogues after the order of the Nehors;

21:5 there arose an Amalekite and began to contend with him, saying: What is that thou hast testified? Hast thou seen an angel? Why do not angels appear unto us? Behold are not this people as good as thy people?

21:6 Thou also sayest, except we repent we shall perish. How knowest thou the thought and intent of our hearts? How

knowest thou that we have cause to repent? How knowest thou that we are not a righteous people?

Behold, we have built sanctuaries, and we do assemble ourselves together to worship God. We do believe that God will save all men.

21:7 Now Aaron said unto him: Believest thou that the Son of God shall come to redeem mankind from their sins?

21:8 And the man said unto him: We do not believe that thou knowest any such thing.

We do not believe in these foolish traditions. We do not believe that thou knowest of things to come, neither do we believe that thy fathers and also that our fathers did know concerning the things which they spake, of that which is to come.

21:9 Now Aaron began to open the scriptures unto them concerning the coming of Christ, and also concerning the resurrection of the dead, and that there could be no redemption for mankind save it were through the death and sufferings of Christ, and the atonement of his blood.

21:10 as he began to expound these things unto them they were angry with him, and began to mock him; and they would not hear the words which he spake.

21:11 Therefore, when he saw that they would not hear his words, he departed out of their synagogue,

164

Alma 21:12 they departed and came over into the land of Middoni.
they did preach the word unto many, and few believed on the

words which they taught.

21:13 Aaron and a certain number of his brethren were taken and cast into prison,

21:14 those who were cast into prison suffered many things, and they were delivered by the hand of Lamoni and Ammon, and they were fed and clothed.

21:15 they went forth again to declare the word, and thus they were delivered for the first time out of prison;

21:16 they went forth whithersoever they were led by the Spirit of the Lord, preaching the word of God in every synagogue of the Amalekites, or in every assembly of the Lamanites where they could be admitted.

21:17 the Lord began to bless them, insomuch that they brought many to the knowledge of the truth; yea, they did convince many of their sins, and of the traditions of their fathers, which were not correct.

165

Alma 21:18 Ammon and Lamoni returned from the land of Middoni to the land of Ishmael,

21:20 he caused that there should be synagogues built in the land of Ishmael;

he caused that his people, or the people who were under his reign, should assemble themselves together.

21:21 he did also declare unto them that they were a people who were under him, and that they were a free people, that they were free from the oppressions of the king, his father;

21:22 he also declared unto them that they might have the liberty of worshiping the Lord their God according to their desires, in whatsoever place they were in, if it were in the land which was under the reign of king Lamoni.

21:23 Ammon did preach unto the people of king Lamoni;
he did teach them all things concerning things pertaining to righteousness.

he did exhort them daily, with all diligence;
they gave heed unto his word,
they were zealous for keeping the commandments of God.

166*

Alma 22:1 Aaron and his brethren; for after he departed from the land of Middoni he was led by the Spirit to the land of Nephi, even to the house of the king which was over all the land save it were the land of Ishmael; and he was the father of Lamoni.

22:3 the king said unto them: Arise, for I will grant unto you your lives, and I will not suffer that ye shall be my servants; but I will insist that ye shall administer unto me; for I have been somewhat troubled in mind because of the generosity and the greatness of the words of thy brother Ammon;

22:6 what is this that Ammon said If ye will repent ye shall be saved, and if ye will not repent, ye shall be cast off at the last day?

22:7 And Aaron answered him and said unto him: Believest thou that there is a God?

And the king said: I know that the Amalekites say that there is a

God, and I have granted unto them that they should build sanctuaries, that they may assemble themselves together to worship him. And if now thou sayest there is a God, behold I will believe.

22:8 when Aaron heard this, his heart began to rejoice, and he said: Behold, assuredly as thou livest, O king, there is a God.

22:9 And the king said: Is God that Great Spirit that brought our fathers out of the land of Jerusalem?

22:10 And Aaron said unto him: Yea, he is that Great Spirit, and he created all things both in heaven and in earth. Believest thou this?

22:11 And he said: Yea, I believe that the Great Spirit created all things, and I desire that ye should tell me concerning all these things, and I will believe thy words.

22:12 when Aaron saw that the king would believe his words, he began from the creation of Adam, reading the scriptures unto the king

how God created man after his own image,
that God gave him commandments, and that because of transgression, man had fallen.

22:13 Aaron did expound unto him the scriptures from the creation of Adam, laying the fall of man before him, and their carnal state and also the plan of redemption, which was prepared from the foundation of the world,

through Christ, for all whosoever would believe on his name.

22:14 since man had fallen he could not merit anything of himself; but the sufferings and death of Christ atone for their sins, through faith and repentance, and so forth;

he breaketh the bands of death, that the grave shall have no victory, and that the sting of death should be swallowed up in the hopes of glory;

22:15 after Aaron had expounded these things unto him, the king said: What shall I do that I may have this eternal life of which thou hast spoken? Yea, what shall I do that I may be born of God, having this wicked spirit rooted out of my breast, and receive his Spirit, that I may be filled with joy, that I may not be cast off at the last day?

Behold, said he, I will give up all that I possess, yea, I will forsake my kingdom, that I may receive this great joy.

22:16 Aaron said unto him: If thou desirest this thing, if thou wilt bow down before God, yea, if thou wilt repent of all thy sins, and will bow down before God, and call on his name in faith, believing that ye shall receive, then shalt thou receive the hope which thou desirest.

167

Alma 22:17 when Aaron had said these words, the king did bow down before the Lord, upon his knees; yea, even he did prostrate himself upon the earth, and cried mightily, saying:

22:18 O God, Aaron hath told me that there is a God; and if there is a God, and if thou art God, wilt thou make thyself known unto me,

I will give away all my sins to know thee,
that I may be raised from the dead,
and be saved at the last day.

And now when the king had said these words, he was struck as

if he were dead.

22:19 his servants ran and told the queen all that had happened unto the king.

And she came in unto the king; and when she saw him lay as if he were dead, and also Aaron and his brethren standing as though they had been the cause of his fall, she was angry with them, and commanded that her servants, or the servants of the king, should take them and slay them.

22:20 Now the servants had seen the cause of the king's fall, therefore they durst not lay their hands on Aaron and his brethren;

they pled with the queen saying: Why commandest thou that we should slay these men, when behold one of them is mightier than us all? Therefore we shall fall before them.

22:21 Now when the queen saw the fear of the servants she also began to fear exceedingly, lest there should some evil come upon her.

And she commanded her servants that they should go and call the people, that they might slay Aaron and his brethren.

22:22 he put forth his hand and raised the king from the earth, and said unto him: Stand. And he stood upon his feet, receiving his strength.

22:23 Now this was done in the presence of the queen and many of the servants. And when they saw it they greatly marveled, and began to fear.

And the king stood forth, and began to minister unto them.

And he did minister unto them, insomuch that his whole household were converted unto the Lord.

22:24 Now there was a multitude gathered together because of the commandment of the queen, and there began to be great murmurings among them because of Aaron and his brethren.

22:25 But the king stood forth among them and administered unto them.

22:26 when the king saw that the people were pacified, he caused that Aaron and his brethren should stand forth in the midst of the multitude, and that they should preach the word unto them.

22:27 the king sent a proclamation throughout all the land, amongst all his people who were in all his land, who were in all the regions round about,

168

Alma 23:1 the king of the Lamanites sent a proclamation among all his people, that they should not lay their hands on Ammon, or Aaron, or Omner, or Himni, nor either of their brethren who should go forth preaching the word of God, in whatsoever place they should be, in any part of their land.

23:2 Yea, he sent a decree among them, that they should not lay their hands on them to bind them, or to cast them into prison; neither should they spit upon them, nor smite them, nor cast them out of their synagogues, nor scourge them; neither should they cast stones at them, but that they should have free access to their houses, and also their temples, and their sanctuaries.

23:3 And thus they might go forth and preach the word according to their desires, for the king had been converted unto the Lord, and all his household;

therefore he sent his proclamation throughout the land unto his people, that the word of God might have no obstruction, but that it might go forth throughout all the land, that his people might be convinced concerning the wicked traditions of their fathers, that they might be convinced that they were all brethren, that they ought not to murder, nor to plunder, nor to steal, nor to commit adultery, nor to commit any manner of wickedness.

23:4 Aaron and his brethren went forth from city to city, and from one house of worship to another, establishing churches, and consecrating priests and teachers throughout the land among the Lamanites, to preach and to teach the word of God among them;

thus they began to have great success.

23:5 And thousands were brought to the knowledge of the Lord, yea, thousands were brought to believe in the traditions of the Nephites;

they were taught the records and prophecies which were handed down even to the present time.

23:6 as sure as the Lord liveth, so sure as many as believed, or as many as were brought to the knowledge of the truth, through the preaching of Ammon and his brethren, according to the spirit of revelation and of prophecy, and the power of God working miracles in them

as many of the Lamanites as believed in their preaching, and were converted unto the Lord, never did fall away.

23:7 For they became a righteous people; they did lay down the weapons of their rebellion, they did not fight against God any more, neither against any of

their brethren.

23:8 these are they who were converted unto the Lord:

23:14 the Amalekites were not converted, save only one; neither were any of the Amulonites; but they did harden their hearts, and also the hearts of the Lamanites in that part of the land wheresoever they dwelt,

23:15 we have named all the cities of the Lamanites in which they did repent and come to the knowledge of the truth, and were converted.

23:16 And now it came to pass that the king and those who were converted were desirous that they might have a name, that thereby they might be distinguished from their brethren;

23:17 they called their names Anti-Nephi-Lehies; and they were called by this name and were no more called Lamanites.

23:18 And they began to be a very industrious people; yea, and they were friendly with the Nephites; therefore, they did open a correspondence with them, and the curse of God did no more follow them.

169

Alma 24:4 the king died in that selfsame year that the Lamanites began to make preparations for war against the people of God.

24:6 there was not one soul among all the people who had been converted unto the Lord that would take up arms against their brethren; nay, they would not even make any preparations for war;

their king commanded them that they should not.

24:7 Now, these are the words which he said unto the people concerning the matter: I thank my God, my beloved people, that our great God has in goodness sent these our brethren, the Nephites, unto us to preach unto us, and to convince us of the traditions of our wicked fathers.

24:8 I thank my great God that he has given us a portion of his Spirit to soften our hearts, that we have opened a correspondence with these brethren, the Nephites.

24:9 I also thank my God, that by opening this correspondence we have been convinced of our sins, and of the many murders which we have committed.

24:10 I also thank my God, yea, my great God, that he hath granted unto us that we might repent of these things, and also that he hath forgiven us of those our many sins and murders which we have committed, and taken away the guilt from our hearts, through the merits of his Son.

170*

Alma 24:11 since it has been all that we could do, (as we were the most lost of all mankind) to repent of all our sins and the many murders which we have committed, and to get God to take them away from our hearts, for it was all we could do to repent sufficiently before God that he would take away our stain

24:12 Now, my best beloved brethren, since God hath taken away our stains, and our swords have become bright, then let us stain our swords no more with the blood of our brethren.

24:13 Nay, let us retain our swords that they be not stained with the

blood of our brethren; for perhaps, if we should stain our swords again they can no more be washed bright through the blood of the Son of our great God, which shall be shed for the atonement of our sins.

24:14 And the great God has had mercy on us, and made these things known unto us that we might not perish; yea, and he has made these things known unto us beforehand, because he loveth our souls as well as he loveth our children;

therefore, in his mercy he doth visit us by his angels, that the plan of salvation might be made known unto us as well as unto future generations.

24:15 Oh, how merciful is our God!

since it has been as much as we could do to get our stains taken away from us, and our swords are made bright, let us hide them away that they may be kept bright, as a testimony to our God at the last day, or at the day that we shall be brought to stand before him to be judged, that we have not stained our swords in the blood of our brethren since he imparted his word unto us and has made us clean thereby.

24:16 And now, my brethren, if our brethren seek to destroy us, behold, we will hide away our swords, yea, even we will bury them deep in the earth, that they may be kept bright, as a testimony that we have never used them, at the last day; and if our brethren destroy us, behold, we shall go to our God and shall be saved.

Alma 24:17 when the king had made an end of these sayings, and all the people were assembled together,

they took their swords, and all the weapons which were used for the shedding of man's blood, and they did bury them up deep in the earth.

24:18 this they did, it being in their view a testimony to God, and also to men, that they never would use weapons again for the shedding of man's blood;

this they did, vouching and covenanting with God, that rather than shed the blood of their brethren they would give up their own lives;

rather than take away from a brother they would give unto him; rather than spend their days in idleness they would labor abundantly with their hands.

24:19 when these Lamanites were brought to believe and to know the truth, they were firm, and would suffer even unto death rather than commit sin;

they buried their weapons of peace, or they buried the weapons of war, for peace.

172

Alma 24:20 their brethren, the Lamanites, made preparations for war, and came up to the land of Nephi for the purpose of destroying the king, and to place another in his stead, and also of destroying the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi out of the land.

24:21 when the people saw that they were coming against them they went out to meet them, and prostrated themselves before them

to the earth, and began to call on the name of the Lord;

they were in this attitude when the Lamanites began to fall upon them, and began to slay them with the sword.

24:22 without meeting any resistance, they did slay a thousand and five of them; and we know that they are blessed, for they have gone to dwell with their God.

24:23 Now when the Lamanites saw that their brethren would not flee from the sword, neither would they turn aside to the right hand or to the left, but that they would lie down and perish, and praised God even in the very act of perishing under the sword

24:24 there were many whose hearts had swollen in them for those of their brethren who had fallen under the sword, for they repented of the things which they had done.

24:25 they threw down their weapons of war, and they would not take them again, for they were stung for the murders which they had committed;

they came down even as their brethren, relying upon the mercies of those whose arms were lifted to slay them.

24:26 the people of God were joined that day by more than the number who had been slain;

those who had been slain were righteous people, therefore we have no reason to doubt but what they were saved.

24:27 And there was not a wicked man slain among them; but there were more than a thousand brought to the knowledge of the truth; thus we see that the Lord worketh in many ways to the salvation of his people.

24:28 Now the greatest number of those of the Lamanites who slew

so many of their brethren were Amalekites and Amulonites, the greatest number of whom were after the order of the Nehors.

24:29 Now, among those who joined the people of the Lord, there were none who were Amalekites or Amulonites, or who were of the order of Nehor, but they were actual descendants of Laman and Lemuel.

24:30 And thus we can plainly discern, that after a people have been once enlightened by the Spirit of God, and have had great knowledge of things pertaining to righteousness, and then have fallen away into sin and transgression, they become more hardened, and thus their state becomes worse than though they had never known these things.

173

Alma 25:1 those Lamanites were more angry because they had slain their brethren;

therefore they swore vengeance upon the Nephites;

25:3 they had many battles with the Nephites, in the which they were driven and slain.

25:4 And among the Lamanites who were slain were almost all the seed of Amulon and his brethren, who were the priests of Noah, and they were slain by the hands of the Nephites;

25:6 For many of them, after having suffered much loss and so many afflictions, began to be stirred up in remembrance of the words which Aaron and his brethren had preached to them in their land;

they began to disbelieve the traditions of their fathers,

and to believe in the Lord,
and that he gave great power unto the Nephites;
and thus there were many of them converted in the wilderness.

25:7 those rulers who were the remnant of the children of Amulon
caused that they should be put to death, yea, all those that
believed in these things.

174

Alma 25:13 when the Lamanites saw that they could not overpower the
Nephites they returned again to their own land;

many of them came over to dwell in the land of Ishmael and the
land of Nephi, and did join themselves to the people of God,

25:14 they did also bury their weapons of war,

they began to be a righteous people; and they did walk in the
ways of the Lord, and did observe to keep his commandments
and his statutes.

25:15 they did keep the law of Moses; for it was expedient that they
should keep the law of Moses as yet, for it was not all fulfilled.

But notwithstanding the law of Moses, they did look forward to
the coming of Christ, considering that the law of Moses was a
type of his coming, and believing that they must keep those
outward performances until the time that he should be revealed
unto them.

25:16 they did not suppose that salvation came by the law of Moses;
but the law of Moses did serve to strengthen their faith in Christ;

they did retain a hope through faith, unto eternal salvation,
relying upon the spirit of prophecy, which spake of those things

to come.

26:1 My brothers and my brethren, behold I say unto you, how great reason have we to rejoice; for could we have supposed when we started from the land of Zarahemla that God would have granted unto us such great blessings?

26:3 for our brethren, the Lamanites, were in darkness, yea, even in the darkest abyss,

 behold, how many of them are brought to behold the marvelous light of God!

 this is the blessing which hath been bestowed upon us, that we have been made instruments in the hands of God to bring about this great work.

26:4 thousands of them do rejoice, and have been brought into the fold of God.

26:5 the field was ripe, and blessed are ye, for ye did thrust in the sickle, and did reap with your might, yea, all the day long did ye labor;

 behold the number of your sheaves! And they shall be gathered into the garners, that they are not wasted.

26:6 they shall not be beaten down by the storm at the last day;

 neither shall they be harrowed up by the whirlwinds;

 when the storm cometh they shall be gathered together in their place, that the storm cannot penetrate to them;

 neither shall they be driven with fierce winds whithersoever the enemy listeth to carry them.

26:7 they are in the hands of the Lord of the harvest,

 they are his; and he will raise them up at the last day.

26:8 Blessed be the name of our God; let us sing to his praise, yea,

let us give thanks to his holy name, for he doth work
righteousness forever.

175

Alma 26:11 I do not boast in my own strength, nor in my own wisdom; but
behold, my joy is full,

my heart is brim with joy, and I will rejoice in my God.

26:12 I know that I am nothing; as to my strength I am weak; therefore
I will not boast of myself,

I will boast of my God, for in his strength I can do all things;

26:13 Behold, how many thousands of our brethren has he loosed
from the pains of hell;

they are brought to sing redeeming love,

this because of the power of his word which is in us,

26:14 we have reason to praise him forever, for he is the Most High
God, and has loosed our brethren from the chains of hell.

26:15 they were encircled about with everlasting darkness and
destruction;

he has brought them into his everlasting light,

into everlasting salvation;

they are encircled about with the matchless bounty of his love;

26:16 let us glory, yea, we will glory in the Lord; yea, we will rejoice,
for our joy is full; yea, we will praise our God forever.

176

Alma 26:17 Who could have supposed that our God would have been so

merciful as to have snatched us from our awful, sinful, and polluted state?

26:18 we went forth even in wrath, with mighty threatenings to destroy his church.

26:20 he did not exercise his justice upon us, but in his great mercy hath brought us over that everlasting gulf of death and misery, even to the salvation of our souls.

26:21 there is none that knoweth these things, save it be the penitent.

26:22 Yea, he that repenteth and exerciseth faith, and bringeth forth good works, and prayeth continually without ceasing unto such it is given to know the mysteries of God;

unto such it shall be given to reveal things which never have been revealed;

it shall be given unto such to bring thousands of souls to repentance, even as it has been given unto us to bring these our brethren to repentance.

26:23 do ye remember, my brethren, that we said unto our brethren in the land of Zarahemla,

26:24 they said unto us: Do ye suppose that ye can bring the Lamanites to the knowledge of the truth? Do ye suppose that ye can convince the Lamanites of the incorrectness of the traditions of their fathers, as stiffnecked a people as they are; whose hearts delight in the shedding of blood; whose days have been spent in the grossest iniquity;

26:25 they did say: Let us take up arms against them, that we destroy them and their iniquity out of the land, lest they overrun us and destroy us.

26:27 when our hearts were depressed, and we were about to turn

back, behold, the Lord comforted us, and said: Go amongst thy brethren, the Lamanites, and bear with patience thine afflictions,

26:28 we have been patient in our sufferings, and we have suffered every privation;

we have traveled from house to house, relying upon the mercies of the world not upon the mercies of the world alone but upon the mercies of God.

26:29 we have entered into their houses and taught them, and we have taught them in their streets;

we have taught them upon their hills;

we have also entered into their temples and their synagogues and taught them;

we have been cast out, and mocked, and spit upon, and smote upon our cheeks;

we have been stoned, and taken and bound with strong cords, and cast into prison;

through the power and wisdom of God we have been delivered again.

26:30 we have suffered all manner of afflictions,

that perhaps we might be the means of saving some soul; and we supposed that our joy would be full if perhaps we could be the means of saving some.

26:31 Now behold, we can look forth and see the fruits of our labors;

we can witness of their sincerity, because of their love towards their brethren and also towards us.

26:32 they had rather sacrifice their lives than even to take the life of their enemy;

26:33 has there been so great love in all the land? Behold, I say unto you, Nay, there has not, even among the Nephites.

26:35 there never were men that had so great reason to rejoice as we, since the world began;

unto boasting in my God; for he has all power, all wisdom, and all understanding;

he comprehendeth all things,

he is a merciful Being, even unto salvation, to those who will repent and believe on his name.

26:36 this is my life and my light, my joy and my salvation, and my redemption from everlasting wo.

26:37 God is mindful of every people, whatsoever land they may be in;

he numbereth his people, and his bowels of mercy are over all the earth.

178

Alma 27:1 they returned again to the land of Nephi.

27:2 when they saw that they could not seek revenge from the Nephites, they began to stir up the people in anger against their brethren, the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi;

they began again to destroy them.

27:3 this people again refused to take their arms, and they suffered themselves to be slain according to the desires of their enemies.

27:4 Ammon and his brethren

for they were treated as though they were angels sent from

God to save them from everlasting destruction

when Ammon and his brethren saw this great work of destruction, they were moved with compassion, and they said unto the king:

27:5 Let us gather together this people of the Lord, and let us go down to the land of Zarahemla to our brethren the Nephites, and flee out of the hands of our enemies, that we be not destroyed.

27:6 the king said unto them: Behold, the Nephites will destroy us, because of the many murders and sins we have committed against them.

27:7 Ammon said: I will go and inquire of the Lord,

27:9 It is against the law of our brethren, which was established by my father, that there should be any slaves among them; therefore let us go down and rely upon the mercies of our brethren.

27:10 the king said unto him: Inquire of the Lord, and if he saith unto us go, we will go; otherwise we will perish in the land.

27:11 Ammon went and inquired of the Lord, and the Lord said unto him:

27:12 Get this people out of this land, that they perish not; for Satan has great hold on the hearts of the Amalekites, who do stir up the Lamanites to anger against their brethren to slay them;

get thee out of this land; and blessed are this people in this generation, for I will preserve them.

Alma 27:14 they gathered together all their people, yea, all the people of the Lord, and did gather together all their flocks and herds, and departed out of the land,

27:16 as Ammon was going forth into the land, that he and his brethren met Alma,

27:17 the joy of Ammon was so great even that he was full; yea, he was swallowed up in the joy of his God,

27:22 the voice of the people came, saying: Behold, we will give up the land of Jershon, which is on the east by the sea,

27:23 we will set our armies between the land Jershon and the land Nephi, that we may protect our brethren in the land Jershon;

 this we do for our brethren, on account of their fear to take up arms against their brethren lest they should commit sin;

 this their great fear came because of their sore repentance which they had, on account of their many murders and their awful wickedness.

27:24 we will guard them from their enemies with our armies, on condition that they will give us a portion of their substance to assist us that we may maintain our armies.

180

Alma 27:25 he returned to the people of Anti-Nephi-Lehi, and also Alma with him, into the wilderness, where they had pitched their tents,

 Alma also related unto them his conversion, with Ammon and Aaron, and his brethren.

27:26 it did cause great joy among them.

they went down into the land of Jershon, and took possession of the land of Jershon;

they were called by the Nephites the people of Ammon; therefore they were distinguished by that name ever after.

27:27 they were among the people of Nephi, and also numbered among the people who were of the church of God.

they were also distinguished for their zeal towards God, and also towards men; for they were perfectly honest and upright in all things;

they were firm in the faith of Christ, even unto the end.

27:28 they did look upon shedding the blood of their brethren with the greatest abhorrence;

they never could be prevailed upon to take up arms against their brethren;

they never did look upon death with any degree of terror, for their hope and views of Christ and the resurrection;

death was swallowed up to them by the victory of Christ over it.

27:29 they would suffer death in the most aggravating and distressing manner which could be inflicted by their brethren, before they would take the sword or cimeter to smite them.

27:30 they were a zealous and beloved people, a highly favored people of the Lord.

181

Alma 28:1 the people of Ammon were established in the land of Jershon, a church also established in the land of Jershon, the armies of the Nephites were set round about the land of

Jershon,

the armies of the Lamanites had followed their brethren into the wilderness.

28:2 And thus there was a tremendous battle;

28:3 the Lamanites were driven and scattered, and the people of Nephi returned again to their land.

28:4 this was a time that there was a great mourning and lamentation heard throughout all the land,

182

Alma 28:6 surely this was a sorrowful day; yea, a time of solemnity, and a time of much fasting and prayer.

28:8 this is the account of Ammon and his brethren,
their journeyings in the land of Nephi,
their sufferings in the land, their sorrows, and their afflictions,
their incomprehensible joy,
the reception and safety of the brethren in the land of Jershon.
may the Lord, the Redeemer of all men, bless their souls
forever.

183

Alma 28:9 this is the account of the wars and contentions among the Nephites, and also the wars between the Nephites and the Lamanites;

28:10 from the first year to the fifteenth has brought to pass the destruction of many thousand lives;

28:11 they have reason to fear, according to the promises of the Lord, that they are consigned to a state of endless wo.

28:12 yet they rejoice and exult in the hope,
even know, according to the promises of the Lord, that they are raised to dwell at the right hand of God, in a state of never-ending happiness.

28:13 thus we see how great the inequality of man is because of sin and transgression, and the power of the devil, which comes by the cunning plans which he hath devised to ensnare the hearts of men.

28:14 thus we see the great call of diligence of men to labor in the vineyards of the Lord;

thus we see the great reason of sorrow, and also of rejoicing sorrow because of death and destruction among men, and joy because of the light of Christ unto life.

184

Alma 29:1 O that I were an angel, and could have the wish of mine heart, that I might go forth and speak with the trump of God, with a voice to shake the earth, and cry repentance unto every people!

29:2 I would declare unto every soul, as with the voice of thunder, repentance and the plan of redemption,

that they should repent and come unto our God, that there might not be more sorrow upon all the face of the earth.

29:3 But behold, I am a man, and do sin in my wish; for I ought to be content with the things which the Lord hath allotted unto me.

29:4 I ought not to harrow up in my desires, the firm decree of a just God,

I know that he granteth unto men according to their desire, whether it be unto death or unto life;

I know that he allotteth unto men, yea, decreeth unto them decrees which are unalterable, according to their wills, whether they be unto salvation or unto destruction.

29:5 I know that good and evil have come before all men; he that knoweth not good from evil is blameless; but he that knoweth good and evil, to him it is given according to his desires, whether he desireth good or evil, life or death, joy or remorse of conscience.

29:8 the Lord doth grant unto all nations, of their own nation and tongue, to teach his word,

the Lord doth counsel in wisdom, according to that which is just and true.

29:9 I know that which the Lord hath commanded me, and I glory in it.

I do not glory of myself, but I glory in that which the Lord hath commanded me;

this is my glory, that perhaps I may be an instrument in the hands of God to bring some soul to repentance;

this is my joy.

29:10 when I see many of my brethren truly penitent, and coming to the Lord their God, then is my soul filled with joy;

I remember what the Lord has done for me,

he hath heard my prayer;

then do I remember his merciful arm which he extended

towards me.

29:11 I also remember the captivity of my fathers;

I surely do know that the Lord did deliver them out of bondage,
by this did establish his church;

the Lord God, the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the
God of Jacob, did deliver them out of bondage.

29:12 I have always remembered the captivity of my fathers;

that same God who delivered them out of the hands of the
Egyptians did deliver them out of bondage.

29:13 that same God did establish his church among them;

that same God hath called me by a holy calling, to preach the
word unto this people, and hath given me much success, in the
which my joy is full.

29:14 I do not joy in my own success alone, but my joy is more full
because of the success of my brethren, who have been up to
the land of Nephi.

29:15 they have labored exceedingly, and have brought forth much
fruit; and how great shall be their reward!

29:16 when I think of the success of these my brethren my soul is
carried away, even to the separation of it from the body, as it
were, so great is my joy.

29:17 now may God grant unto these, my brethren, that they may sit
down in the kingdom of God;

185

Alma 30:1 after the people of Ammon were established in the land of
Jershon,

after the Lamanites were driven out of the land,
30:2 after they had buried their dead,
after the days of fasting, and mourning, and prayer,
there began to be continual peace throughout all the land.
30:3 the people did observe to keep the commandments of the Lord;
they were strict in observing the ordinances of God, according
to the law of Moses;
they were taught to keep the law of Moses until it should be
fulfilled.
30:4 the people did have no disturbance
30:5 there was continual peace.

186

Alma 30:6 there came a man into the land of Zarahemla,
he was Anti-Christ, for he began to preach unto the people
against the prophecies which had been spoken by the
prophets, concerning the coming of Christ.
30:7 there was no law against a man's belief; for it was strictly
contrary to the commands of God that there should be a law
which should bring men on to unequal grounds.
30:8 For thus saith the scripture: Choose ye this day, whom ye will
serve.
30:9 Now if a man desired to serve God, it was his privilege; or
rather, if he believed in God it was his privilege to serve him;
but if he did not believe in him there was no law to punish him.
30:10 if he murdered he was punished unto death;
if he robbed he was also punished;

if he stole he was also punished;
if he committed adultery he was also punished;
for all this wickedness they were punished.

30:11 For there was a law that men should be judged according to their crimes.

there was no law against a man's belief;
a man was punished only for the crimes which he had done;
therefore all men were on equal grounds.

30:12 this Anti-Christ, whose name was Korihor, (and the law could have no hold upon him)

began to preach unto the people that there should be no Christ.

after this manner did he preach,

187

Alma 30:13 O ye that are bound down under a foolish and a vain hope, why do ye yoke yourselves with such foolish things?

Why do ye look for a Christ?

no man can know of anything which is to come.

30:14 these things which ye call prophecies, which ye say are handed down by holy prophets, behold, they are foolish traditions of your fathers.

30:15 How do ye know of their surety?

ye cannot know of things which ye do not see; therefore ye cannot know that there shall be a Christ.

30:16 Ye look forward and say that ye see a remission of your sins.

it is the effect of a frenzied mind; and this derangement of your

minds comes because of the traditions of your fathers, which lead you away into a belief of things which are not so.

30:17 telling them that there could be no atonement made for the sins of men, but every man fared in this life according to the management of the creature;

every man prospered according to his genius,
every man conquered according to his strength;
whatsoever a man did was no crime.

30:18 thus he did preach unto them, leading away the hearts of many, causing them to lift up their heads in their wickedness,
leading away many women, and also men, to commit whoredoms telling them that when a man was dead, that was the end thereof.

188*

Alma 30:21 for he was taken and bound and carried before the high priest, and also the chief judge over the land.

30:22 the high priest said unto him: Why do ye go about perverting the ways of the Lord?

Why do ye teach this people that there shall be no Christ, to interrupt their rejoicings?

Why do ye speak against all the prophecies of the holy prophets?

30:23 Korihor said unto him: Because I do not teach the foolish traditions of your fathers,

because I do not teach this people to bind themselves down under the foolish ordinances and performances which are laid

down by ancient priests, to usurp power and authority over them, to keep them in ignorance, that they may not lift up their heads, but be brought down according to thy words.

30:24 Ye say that this people is a free people. Behold, I say they are in bondage. Ye say that those ancient prophecies are true.

Behold, I say that ye do not know that they are true.

30:25 Ye say that this people is a guilty and a fallen people, because of the transgression of a parent. Behold, I say that a child is not guilty because of its parents.

30:26 ye also say that Christ shall come. But behold, I say that ye do not know that there shall be a Christ.

ye say also that he shall be slain for the sins of the world

30:27 And thus ye lead away this people after the foolish traditions of your fathers, and according to your own desires; and ye keep them down, even as it were in bondage, that ye may glut yourselves with the labors of their hands, that they durst not look up with boldness, and that they durst not enjoy their rights and privileges.

30:28 they durst not make use of that which is their own lest they should offend their priests, who do yoke them according to their desires, and have brought them to believe, by their traditions and their dreams and their whims and their visions and their pretended mysteries, that they should, if they did not do according to their words, offend some unknown being, who they say is God a being who never has been seen or known, who never was nor ever will be.

Alma 30:30 when he was brought before Alma and the chief judge, he did go on in the same manner

he went on to blaspheme.

30:31 he did rise up in great swelling words before Alma, and did revile against the priests and teachers, accusing them of leading away the people after the silly traditions of their fathers, for the sake of glutting on the labors of the people.

30:32 Alma said unto him: Thou knowest that we do not glut ourselves upon the labors of this people;

I have labored even from the commencement of the reign of the judges until now, with mine own hands for my support, notwithstanding my many travels round about the land to declare the word of God unto my people.

30:33 notwithstanding the many labors which I have performed in the church, I have never received so much as even one senine for my labor;

neither has any of my brethren, save it were in the judgment-seat; and then we have received only according to law for our time.

30:34 if we do not receive anything for our labors in the church, what doth it profit us to labor in the church save it were to declare the truth, that we may have rejoicings in the joy of our brethren?

30:35 why sayest thou that we preach unto this people to get gain, when thou, of thyself, knowest that we receive no gain?

Alma 30:35 believest thou that we deceive this people, that causes such joy in their hearts?

30:36 And Korihor answered him, Yea.

30:37 then Alma said unto him: Believest thou that there is a God?

30:38 And he answered, Nay.

30:39 Alma said unto him: Will ye deny again that there is a God, and also deny the Christ? For behold, I say unto you, I know there is a God, and also that Christ shall come.

30:40 what evidence have ye that there is no God, or that Christ cometh not? I say unto you that ye have none, save it be your word only.

30:41 I have all things as a testimony that these things are true; and ye also have all things as a testimony unto you that they are true; and will ye deny them?

Believest thou that these things are true?

30:42 Behold, I know that thou believest, but thou art possessed with a lying spirit, and ye have put off the Spirit of God that it may have no place in you;

the devil has power over you, and he doth carry you about, working devices that he may destroy the children of God.

30:43 Korihor said unto Alma: If thou wilt show me a sign, that I may be convinced that there is a God, yea, show unto me that he hath power, and then will I be convinced of the truth of thy words.

191*

Alma 30:44 But Alma said unto him: Thou hast had signs enough; will ye

tempt your God? Will ye say, Show unto me a sign, when ye have the testimony of all these thy brethren, and also all the holy prophets?

The scriptures are laid before thee, yea, and all things denote there is a God;

even the earth, and all things that are upon the face of it, yea, and its motion, yea, and also all the planets which move in their regular form do witness that there is a Supreme Creator.

30:45 yet do ye go about, leading away the hearts of this people, testifying unto them there is no God?

yet will ye deny against all these witnesses? And he said: Yea, I will deny, except ye shall show me a sign.

30:46 Alma said unto him: Behold, I am grieved because of the hardness of your heart, yea, that ye will still resist the spirit of the truth, that thy soul may be destroyed.

30:47 But behold, it is better that thy soul should be lost than that thou shouldst be the means of bringing many souls down to destruction, by thy lying and by thy flattering words;

if thou shalt deny again, behold God shall smite thee, that thou shalt become dumb, that thou shalt never open thy mouth any more, that thou shalt not deceive this people any more.

30:48 Korihor said unto him: I do not deny the existence of a God, but I do not believe that there is a God; and I say also, that ye do not know that there is a God; and except ye show me a sign, I will not believe.

30:49 Alma said unto him: This will I give unto thee for a sign, that thou shalt be struck dumb, according to my words; and I say, that in the name of God, ye shall be struck dumb, that ye shall

no more have utterance.

30:50 when Alma had said these words, Korihor was struck dumb, that he could not have utterance, according to the words of Alma.

192

Alma 30:51 when the chief judge saw this, he put forth his hand and wrote unto Korihor, saying: Art thou convinced of the power of God?

In whom did ye desire that Alma should show forth his sign?

he has showed unto you a sign; and now will ye dispute more?

30:52 Korihor put forth his hand and wrote, saying: I know that I am dumb, for I cannot speak; and I know that nothing save it were the power of God could bring this upon me;

I always knew that there was a God.

30:53 the devil hath deceived me; for he appeared unto me in the form of an angel, and said unto me: Go and reclaim this people, for they have all gone astray after an unknown God.

he said unto me: There is no God; yea, and he taught me that which I should say.

I have taught his words; and I taught them because they were pleasing unto the carnal mind;

I taught them, even until I had much success, insomuch that I verily believed that they were true; and for this cause I withstood the truth, even until I have brought this great curse upon me.

30:54 when he had said this, he besought that Alma should pray unto God, that the curse might be taken from him.

30:55 Alma said unto him: If this curse should be taken from thee thou wouldst again lead away the hearts of this people; therefore, it shall be unto thee even as the Lord will.

30:56 the curse was not taken off of Korihor;

30:57 what had happened unto Korihor was immediately published throughout all the land; yea, the proclamation was sent forth by the chief judge to all the people in the land, declaring unto those who had believed in the words of Korihor that they must speedily repent,

30:58 they were all convinced of the wickedness of Korihor;

they were all converted again unto the Lord;

this put an end to the iniquity after the manner of Korihor.

Korihor did go about from house to house, begging food for his support.

30:59 as he went forth among the people, yea, among a people who had separated themselves from the Nephites and called themselves Zoramites, being led by a man whose name was Zoram and as he went forth amongst them, behold, he was run upon and trodden down, even until he was dead.

30:60 thus we see the end of him who perverteth the ways of the Lord;

thus we see that the devil will not support his children at the last day, but doth speedily drag them down to hell.

193

Alma 31:1 Alma having received tidings that the Zoramites were perverting the ways of the Lord,

Zoram, who was their leader, was leading the hearts of the people to bow down to dumb idols,

31:2 it was the cause of great sorrow to Alma to know of iniquity among his people;

31:5 as the preaching of the word had a great tendency to lead the people to do that which was just

it had had more powerful effect upon the minds of the people than the sword, or anything else, which had happened unto them

therefore Alma thought it was expedient that they should try the virtue of the word of God.

194

Alma 31:8 the Zoramites were dissenters from the Nephites; therefore they had had the word of God preached unto them.

31:9 But they had fallen into great errors, for they would not observe to keep the commandments of God, and his statutes, according to the law of Moses.

31:10 Neither would they observe the performances of the church, to continue in prayer and supplication to God daily, that they might not enter into temptation.

31:11 they did pervert the ways of the Lord in very many instances;

31:12 the Zoramites had built synagogues,

they did gather themselves together on one day of the week, which day they did call the day of the Lord;

they did worship after a manner which Alma and his brethren had never beheld;

31:13 they had a place built up in the center of their synagogue, a place for standing, which was high above the head, and the top thereof would only admit one person.

31:14 whosoever desired to worship must go forth and stand upon the top thereof, and stretch forth his hands towards heaven, and cry with a loud voice, saying:

31:15 Holy, holy God; we believe that thou art God, and we believe that thou art holy, and that thou wast a spirit, and that thou art a spirit, and that thou wilt be a spirit forever.

31:16 Holy God, we believe that thou hast separated us from our brethren; and we do not believe in the tradition of our brethren, which was handed down to them by the childishness of their fathers; but we believe that thou hast elected us to be thy holy children;

also thou hast made it known unto us that there shall be no Christ.

31:17 thou art the same yesterday, today, and forever; and thou hast elected us that we shall be saved, whilst all around us are elected to be cast by thy wrath down to hell; for the which holiness, O God, we thank thee;

we also thank thee that thou hast elected us, that we may not be led away after the foolish traditions of our brethren, which doth bind them down to a belief of Christ, which doth lead their hearts to wander far from thee, our God.

31:18 we thank thee, O God, that we are a chosen and a holy people.

31:20 every man did go forth and offer up these same prayers.

31:21 Now the place was called by them Rameumptom, which, being interpreted, is the holy stand.

31:22 Now, from this stand they did offer up, every man, the selfsame prayer unto God,

31:23 after the people had all offered up thanks after this manner, they returned to their homes, never speaking of their God again until they had assembled themselves together again to the holy stand, to offer up thanks after their manner.

31:24 when Alma saw this his heart was grieved; for he saw that they were a wicked and a perverse people;

their hearts were set upon gold, and upon silver, and upon all manner of fine goods.

31:25 their hearts were lifted up unto great boasting, in their pride.

195

Alma 31:26 he lifted up his voice to heaven, and cried, saying: O, how long, O Lord, wilt thou suffer that thy servants shall dwell here below in the flesh, to behold such gross wickedness among the children of men?

31:27 they cry unto thee, and yet their hearts are swallowed up in their pride.

they cry unto thee with their mouths, while they are puffed up, even to greatness, with the vain things of the world.

31:28 their costly apparel, and their ringlets, and their bracelets, and their ornaments of gold, and all their precious things which they are ornamented with; and behold, their hearts are set upon them, and yet they cry unto thee and say We thank thee, O God, for we are a chosen people unto thee, while others shall perish.

31:29 they say that thou hast made it known unto them that there shall be no Christ.

31:30 how long wilt thou suffer that such wickedness and infidelity shall be among this people?

wilt thou give me strength, that I may bear with mine infirmities. For I am infirm, and such wickedness among this people doth pain my soul.

31:31 my heart is exceedingly sorrowful; wilt thou comfort my soul in Christ.

wilt thou grant unto me that I may have strength, that I may suffer with patience these afflictions which shall come upon me, because of the iniquity of this people.

31:32 wilt thou comfort my soul, and give unto me success, and also my fellow laborers who are with me

Yea, wilt thou comfort their souls in Christ.

31:33 Wilt thou grant unto them that they may have strength, that they may bear their afflictions which shall come upon them because of the iniquities of this people.

31:34 wilt thou grant unto us that we may have success in bringing them again unto thee in Christ.

31:35 their souls are precious, and many of them are our brethren; therefore, give unto us, O Lord, power and wisdom that we may bring these, our brethren, again unto thee.

196

Alma 31:36 when Alma had said these words, that he clapped his hands upon all them who were with him.

as he clapped his hands upon them, they were filled with the Holy Spirit.

31:37 they did separate themselves one from another, taking no thought for themselves what they should eat, or what they should drink, or what they should put on.

31:38 the Lord provided for them that they should hunger not, neither should they thirst;

he also gave them strength, that they should suffer no manner of afflictions, save it were swallowed up in the joy of Christ.

this was according to the prayer of Alma; and this because he prayed in faith.

32:1 they did go forth, and began to preach the word of God unto the people,

entering into their synagogues, and into their houses;

32:2 after much labor among them, they began to have success among the poor class of people;

they were cast out of the synagogues because of the coarseness of their apparel

32:3 they were not permitted to enter into their synagogues to worship God, being esteemed as filthiness;

they were poor; yea, they were esteemed by their brethren as dross;

they were poor as to things of the world; and also they were poor in heart.

197

Alma 32:5 what shall these my brethren do, for they are despised of all

men because of their poverty,

and more especially by our priests;

they have cast us out of our synagogues which we have labored abundantly to build with our own hands;

they have cast us out because of our exceeding poverty;

we have no place to worship our God;

32:6 he beheld that their afflictions had truly humbled them and that they were in a preparation to hear the word.

32:7 he stretched forth his hand, and cried unto those whom he beheld, who were truly penitent, and said unto them:

32:8 I behold that ye are lowly in heart; and if so, blessed are ye.

32:10 do ye suppose that ye cannot worship God save it be in your synagogues only?

32:11 do ye suppose that ye must not worship God only once in a week?

32:12 it is well that ye are cast out of your synagogues, that ye may be humble, and that ye may learn wisdom;

it is because that ye are cast out, that ye are despised of your brethren

because of your exceeding poverty, that ye are brought to a lowliness of heart;

32:13 because ye are compelled to be humble blessed are ye; for a man sometimes, if he is compelled to be humble, seeketh repentance;

whosoever repenteth shall find mercy;

he that findeth mercy and endureth to the end the same shall be saved.

32:14 do ye not suppose that they are more blessed who truly

humble themselves because of the word?

32:15 he that truly humbleth himself, and repenteth of his sins, and endureth to the end, the same shall be blessed

198

Alma 32:16 blessed is he that believeth in the word of God, and is baptized without stubbornness of heart,

without being brought to know the word, or even compelled to know, before they will believe.

32:17 there are many who do say: If thou wilt show unto us a sign from heaven, then we shall know of a surety; then we shall believe.

32:18 is this faith? Behold, I say unto you, Nay; for if a man knoweth a thing he hath no cause to believe, for he knoweth it.

32:19 how much more cursed is he that knoweth the will of God and doeth it not, than he that only believeth, or only hath cause to believe, and falleth into transgression?

32:20 it shall be unto every man according to his work.

32:21 faith is not to have a perfect knowledge of things; therefore if ye have faith ye hope for things which are not seen, which are true.

32:22 ye should remember, that God is merciful unto all who believe on his name;

he desireth, in the first place, that ye should believe, yea, even on his word.

32:23 he imparteth his word by angels unto men, yea, not only men but women also.

little children do have words given unto them many times which confound the wise and the learned.

32:25 for I verily believe that there are some among you who would humble themselves, let them be in whatsoever circumstances they might.

32:26 so it is with my words. Ye cannot know of their surety at first, unto perfection, any more than faith is a perfect knowledge.

32:27 if ye will awake and arouse your faculties, even to an experiment upon my words, and exercise a particle of faith, yea, even if ye can no more than desire to believe, let this desire work in you, even until ye believe in a manner that ye can give place for a portion of my words.

199

Alma 32:28 we will compare the word unto a seed.

if ye give place, that a seed may be planted in your heart, behold, if it be a true seed, or a good seed, if ye do not cast it out by your unbelief, that ye will resist the Spirit of the Lord, behold, it will begin to swell within your breasts;

when you feel these swelling motions, ye will begin to say within yourselves It must needs be that this is a good seed, or that the word is good, for it beginneth to enlarge my soul;

it beginneth to enlighten my understanding,

it beginneth to be delicious to me.

32:29 it hath not grown up to a perfect knowledge.

32:30 as the seed swelleth, and sprouteth, and beginneth to grow, then you must needs say that the seed is good; for behold it

swelleth, and sprouteth, and beginneth to grow. And now behold, will not this strengthen your faith? Yea, it will strengthen your faith: for ye will say I know that this is a good seed; for behold it sprouteth and beginneth to grow.

32:31 are ye sure that this is a good seed? I say unto you, Yea; for every seed bringeth forth unto its own likeness.

32:32 if a seed groweth it is good, but if it groweth not, behold it is not good, therefore it is cast away.

32:33 because ye have tried the experiment, and planted the seed, and it swelleth and sprouteth, and beginneth to grow, ye must needs know that the seed is good.

32:34 is your knowledge perfect? Yea, your knowledge is perfect in that thing, and your faith is dormant; and this because ye know, ye know that the word hath swelled your souls, ye also know that it hath sprouted up, that your understanding doth begin to be enlightened, and your mind doth begin to expand.

32:35 is not this real? I say unto you, Yea, because it is light; and whatsoever is light, is good, because it is discernible, therefore ye must know that it is good;

after ye have tasted this light is your knowledge perfect?

32:36 Behold I say unto you, Nay; neither must ye lay aside your faith, for ye have only exercised your faith to plant the seed that ye might try the experiment to know if the seed was good.

32:37 as the tree beginneth to grow, ye will say: Let us nourish it with great care, that it may get root, that it may grow up, and bring forth fruit unto us.

if ye nourish it with much care it will get root, and grow up, and

bring forth fruit.

32:38 But if ye neglect the tree, and take no thought for its nourishment, behold it will not get any root; and when the heat of the sun cometh and scorcheth it, because it hath no root it withers away, and ye pluck it up and cast it out.

32:39 this is not because the seed was not good, neither is it because the fruit thereof would not be desirable;

it is because your ground is barren, and ye will not nourish the tree, therefore ye cannot have the fruit thereof.

32:40 if ye will not nourish the word, looking forward with an eye of faith to the fruit thereof, ye can never pluck of the fruit of the tree of life.

32:41 if ye will nourish the word, yea, nourish the tree as it beginneth to grow, by your faith with great diligence, and with patience, looking forward to the fruit thereof, it shall take root;

it shall be a tree springing up unto everlasting life.

32:42 And because of your diligence and your faith and your patience with the word in nourishing it, that it may take root in you, behold, by and by ye shall pluck the fruit thereof, which is most precious, which is sweet above all that is sweet, and which is white above all that is white, yea, and pure above all that is pure; and ye shall feast upon this fruit even until ye are filled, that ye hunger not, neither shall ye thirst.

32:43 Then, my brethren, ye shall reap the rewards of your faith, and your diligence, and patience, and long-suffering, waiting for the tree to bring forth fruit unto you.

Alma 33:1 they sent forth unto him desiring to know whether they should believe in one God, that they might obtain this fruit of which he had spoken, or how they should plant the seed, or the word of which he had spoken, which he said must be planted in their hearts; or in what manner they should begin to exercise their faith.

33:2 if ye suppose that ye cannot worship God, ye do greatly err, and ye ought to search the scriptures; if ye suppose that they have taught you this, ye do not understand them.

33:3 Do ye remember to have read what Zenos, the prophet of old, has said concerning prayer or worship?

201*

Alma 33:4 thou hast heard my prayer, even when I was in the wilderness;
thou wast merciful when I prayed concerning those who were mine enemies,
thou didst turn them to me.

33:5 thou wast merciful unto me when I did cry unto thee in my field; when I did cry unto thee in my prayer, and thou didst hear me.

33:6 when I did turn to my house thou didst hear me in my prayer.

33:7 when I did turn unto my closet, O Lord, and prayed unto thee, thou didst hear me.

33:8 thou art merciful unto thy children when they cry unto thee, to be heard of thee and not of men, and thou wilt hear them.

33:9 thou hast been merciful unto me, and heard my cries in the midst of thy congregations.

33:10 thou hast also heard me when I have been cast out and have
been despised by mine enemies;

thou didst hear my cries, and wast angry with mine enemies,
thou didst visit them in thine anger with speedy destruction.

33:11 thou didst hear me because of mine afflictions and my sincerity;
it is because of thy Son that thou hast been thus merciful unto
me,

therefore I will cry unto thee in all mine afflictions,
in thee is my joy;

thou hast turned thy judgments away from me, because of thy
Son.

202

Alma 33:14 I would ask if ye have read the scriptures?

If ye have, how can ye disbelieve on the Son of God?

33:16 Thou art angry, O Lord, with this people, because they will not
understand thy mercies which thou hast bestowed upon them
because of thy Son.

33:17 because the people would not understand his words they
stoned him to death.

203

Alma 33:18 these are not the only ones who have spoken concerning the
Son of God.

33:19 he was spoken of by Moses;

a type was raised up in the wilderness, that whosoever would

look upon it might live. And many did look and live.

33:20 But few understood the meaning of those things, and this because of the hardness of their hearts.

there were many who were so hardened that they would not look, therefore they perished.

the reason they would not look is because they did not believe that it would heal them.

33:21 if ye could be healed by merely casting about your eyes that ye might be healed, would ye not behold quickly, or would ye rather harden your hearts in unbelief, and be slothful, that ye would not cast about your eyes, that ye might perish?

33:22 if not so, then cast about your eyes and begin to believe in the Son of God,

that he will come to redeem his people,

that he shall suffer and die to atone for their sins;

that he shall rise again from the dead, which shall bring to pass the resurrection, that all men shall stand before him, to be judged at the last and judgment day, according to their works.

33:23 plant this word in your hearts,

as it beginneth to swell even so nourish it by your faith.

it will become a tree, springing up in you unto everlasting life.

then may God grant unto you that your burdens may be light, through the joy of his Son.

all this can ye do if ye will.

204*

Alma 34:1 Amulek arose and began to teach them,

34:2 My brethren, I think that it is impossible that ye should be ignorant of the things which have been spoken concerning the coming of Christ, who is taught by us to be the Son of God;

34:3 ye have desired of my beloved brother that he should make known unto you what ye should do, because of your afflictions;

he hath spoken somewhat unto you to prepare your minds;

he hath exhorted you unto faith and to patience

34:4 that ye would have so much faith as even to plant the word in your hearts, that ye may try the experiment of its goodness.

34:5 the great question which is in your minds is whether the word be in the Son of God, or whether there shall be no Christ.

34:6 my brother has proved unto you, in many instances, that the word is in Christ unto salvation.

34:7 My brother has called upon the words of Zenos, that redemption cometh through the Son of God,

also upon the words of Zenock;

also he has appealed unto Moses, to prove that these things are true.

34:8 I will testify unto you of myself that these things are true.

I do know that Christ shall come among the children of men, to take upon him the transgressions of his people,

he shall atone for the sins of the world; for the Lord God hath spoken it.

34:9 it is expedient that an atonement should be made;

according to the great plan of the Eternal God there must be an atonement made, or else all mankind must unavoidably perish;

all are hardened; yea, all are fallen and are lost, and must perish except it be through the atonement which it is expedient

should be made.

34:10 it is expedient that there should be a great and last sacrifice;
yea, not a sacrifice of man, neither of beast, neither of any
manner of fowl; for it shall not be a human sacrifice; but it must
be an infinite and eternal sacrifice.

34:11 there is not any man that can sacrifice his own blood which will
atone for the sins of another.

if a man murdereth, behold will our law, which is just, take the
life of his brother? I say unto you, Nay.

34:12 But the law requireth the life of him who hath murdered;
there can be nothing which is short of an infinite atonement
which will suffice for the sins of the world.

205

Alma 34:13 it is expedient that there should be a great and last sacrifice;
and then shall there be, or it is expedient there should be, a
stop to the shedding of blood;

then shall the law of Moses be fulfilled; yea, it shall be all
fulfilled, every jot and tittle, and none shall have passed away.

34:14 this is the whole meaning of the law, every whit pointing to that
great and last sacrifice;

that great and last sacrifice will be the Son of God, yea, infinite
and eternal.

34:15 thus he shall bring salvation to all those who shall believe on
his name;

this being the intent of this last sacrifice, to bring about the
bowels of mercy, which overpowereth justice, and bringeth

about means unto men that they may have faith unto
repentance.

34:16 thus mercy can satisfy the demands of justice, and encircles
them in the arms of safety,

he that exercises no faith unto repentance is exposed to the
whole law of the demands of justice; t

only unto him that has faith unto repentance is brought about
the great and eternal plan of redemption.

206

Alma 34:17 may God grant unto you, my brethren, that ye may begin to
exercise your faith unto repentance,

begin to call upon his holy name, that he would have mercy
upon you;

34:18 cry unto him for mercy; for he is mighty to save.

34:19 humble yourselves, and continue in prayer unto him.

34:20 Cry unto him when ye are in your fields, yea, over all your
flocks.

34:21 Cry unto him in your houses, yea, over all your household, both
morning, mid-day, and evening.

34:22 cry unto him against the power of your enemies.

34:23 cry unto him against the devil, who is an enemy to all
righteousness.

34:24 Cry unto him over the crops of your fields, that ye may prosper
in them.

34:25 Cry over the flocks of your fields, that they may increase.

34:26 ye must pour out your souls in your closets, and your secret

places, and in your wilderness.

34:27 when you do not cry unto the Lord, let your hearts be full,
drawn out in prayer unto him continually for your welfare,
also for the welfare of those who are around you.

34:28 after ye have done all these things, if ye turn away the needy,
and the naked, and visit not the sick and afflicted, and impart of
your substance, if ye have, to those who stand in need I say
unto you, if ye do not any of these things, behold, your prayer is
vain, and availeth you nothing, and ye are as hypocrites who
do deny the faith.

34:29 if ye do not remember to be charitable, ye are as dross, which
the refiners do cast out, (it being of no worth) and is trodden
under foot of men.

207

Alma 34:30 ye have received so many witnesses,
seeing that the holy scriptures testify of these things,
ye come forth and bring fruit unto repentance.

34:31 come forth and harden not your hearts any longer;
now is the time and the day of your salvation;
if ye will repent and harden not your hearts, immediately shall
the great plan of redemption be brought about unto you.

34:32 this life is the time for men to prepare to meet God;
the day of this life is the day for men to perform their labors.

208*

Alma 34:33 as ye have had so many witnesses, therefore, I beseech of you that ye do not procrastinate the day of your repentance until the end;

after this day of life, which is given us to prepare for eternity, behold, if we do not improve our time while in this life, then cometh the night of darkness wherein there can be no labor performed.

34:34 Ye cannot say, when ye are brought to that awful crisis, that I will repent, that I will return to my God.

that same spirit which doth possess your bodies at the time that ye go out of this life, that same spirit will have power to possess your body in that eternal world.

34:35 if ye have procrastinated the day of your repentance even until death, behold, ye have become subjected to the spirit of the devil, and he doth seal you his;

the Spirit of the Lord hath withdrawn from you, and hath no place in you, and the devil hath all power over you; and this is the final state of the wicked.

34:36 the Lord hath said he dwelleth not in unholy temples, but in the hearts of the righteous doth he dwell;

the righteous shall sit down in his kingdom, to go no more out; their garments should be made white through the blood of the Lamb.

209

Alma 34:37 ye should remember these things,

ye should work out your salvation with fear before God,

ye should no more deny the coming of Christ;
34:38 ye contend no more against the Holy Ghost,
ye receive it, and take upon you the name of Christ;
ye humble yourselves even to the dust, and worship God, in
whatsoever place ye may be in, in spirit and in truth;
ye live in thanksgiving daily, for the many mercies and
blessings which he doth bestow upon you.

210

Alma 34:39 I also exhort you, my brethren,
ye be watchful unto prayer continually,
ye may not be led away by the temptations of the devil, that he
may not overpower you,
ye may not become his subjects at the last day; for behold, he
rewardeth you no good thing.

34:40 I would exhort you to have patience,
ye bear with all manner of afflictions;
ye do not revile against those who do cast you out because of
your exceeding poverty,
ye become sinners like unto them;

34:41 ye have patience, and bear with those afflictions, with a firm
hope that ye shall one day rest from all your afflictions.

211

Alma 35:3 after the more popular part of the Zoramites had consulted
together concerning the words which had been preached unto

them, they were angry because of the word, for it did destroy their craft;

they would not hearken unto the words.

35:4 they sent and gathered together throughout all the land all the people, and consulted with them concerning the words which had been spoken.

35:5 their rulers and their priests and their teachers did not let the people know concerning their desires;

they found out privily the minds of all the people.

35:6 after they had found out the minds of all the people, those who were in favor of the words which had been spoken by Alma and his brethren were cast out of the land;

35:7 Alma and his brethren did minister unto them.

35:8 the chief ruler of the Zoramites, being a very wicked man, sent over unto the people of Ammon desiring them that they should cast out of their land all those who came over from them into their land.

35:9 they did receive all the poor of the Zoramites that came over unto them;

they did nourish them, and did clothe them, and did give unto them lands for their inheritance;

they did administer unto them according to their wants.

35:11 the Zoramites and the Lamanites began to make preparations for war against the people of Ammon, and also against the Nephites.

35:14 having been instruments in the hands of God of bringing many of the Zoramites to repentance;

as many as were brought to repentance were driven out of their

land; but they have lands for their inheritance in the land of
Jershon,

they have taken up arms to defend themselves, and their
wives, and children, and their lands.

35:15 Alma, being grieved for the iniquity of his people, yea for the
wars, and the bloodsheds, and the contentions which were
among them;

they began to be offended because of the strictness of the
word,

35:16 he caused that his sons should be gathered together,
he might give unto them every one his charge, separately,
concerning the things pertaining unto righteousness.

213

Alma 36:1 give ear to my words;

inasmuch as ye shall keep the commandments of God ye shall
prosper in the land.

36:2 do as I have done, in remembering the captivity of our fathers;
for they were in bondage, and none could deliver them except
it was the God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God
of Jacob; and he surely did deliver them in their afflictions.

36:3 whosoever shall put their trust in God shall be supported in
their trials, and their troubles, and their afflictions, and shall be
lifted up at the last day.

36:4 I would not that ye think that I know of myself not of the
temporal but of the spiritual, not of the carnal mind but of God.

36:5 if I had not been born of God I should not have known these

things;

God has, by the mouth of his holy angel, made these things known unto me, not of any worthiness of myself.

36:6 I went about with the sons of Mosiah, seeking to destroy the church of God;

God sent his holy angel to stop us by the way.

36:7 he spake unto us, as it were the voice of thunder, and the whole earth did tremble beneath our feet; and we all fell to the earth, for the fear of the Lord came upon us.

36:8 the voice said unto me: Arise. And I arose and stood up, and beheld the angel.

36:9 he said unto me: If thou wilt of thyself be destroyed, seek no more to destroy the church of God.

36:10 I fell to the earth; and it was for the space of three days and three nights that I could not open my mouth, neither had I the use of my limbs.

36:11 the angel spake more things unto me, which were heard by my brethren, but I did not hear them; for when I heard the words If thou wilt be destroyed of thyself, seek no more to destroy the church of God I was struck with such great fear and amazement lest perhaps I should be destroyed, that I fell to the earth and I did hear no more.

36:12 I was racked with eternal torment, for my soul was harrowed up to the greatest degree and racked with all my sins.

36:13 I did remember all my sins and iniquities,

I was tormented with the pains of hell;

I saw that I had rebelled against my God,

I had not kept his holy commandments.

36:14 I had murdered many of his children, or rather led them away unto destruction;

so great had been my iniquities, that the very thought of coming into the presence of my God did rack my soul with inexpressible horror.

36:15 Oh, thought I, that I could be banished and become extinct both soul and body, that I might not be brought to stand in the presence of my God, to be judged of my deeds.

36:16 for three days and for three nights was I racked, even with the pains of a damned soul.

36:17 A as I was thus racked with torment, while I was harrowed up by the memory of my many sins, behold, I remembered also to have heard my father prophesy unto the people concerning the coming of one Jesus Christ, a Son of God, to atone for the sins of the world.

36:18 as my mind caught hold upon this thought, I cried within my heart: O Jesus, thou Son of God, have mercy on me, who am in the gall of bitterness, and am encircled about by the everlasting chains of death.

36:19 when I thought this, I could remember my pains no more; I was harrowed up by the memory of my sins no more.

36:20 oh, what joy, and what marvelous light I did behold; my soul was filled with joy as exceeding as was my pain!

36:21 there could be nothing so exquisite and so bitter as were my pains.

there can be nothing so exquisite and sweet as was my joy.

36:22 methought I saw, even as our father Lehi saw, God sitting upon his throne, surrounded with numberless concourses of angels,

in the attitude of singing and praising their God;

my soul did long to be there.

36:23 my limbs did receive their strength again, and I stood upon my feet, and did manifest unto the people that I had been born of God.

36:24 from that time even until now, I have labored without ceasing, that I might bring souls unto repentance;

that I might bring them to taste of the exceeding joy of which I did taste; that they might also be born of God, and be filled with the Holy Ghost.

214

Alma 36:25 the Lord doth give me exceedingly great joy in the fruit of my labors;

36:26 because of the word which he has imparted unto me, behold, many have been born of God,

have tasted as I have tasted,

have seen eye to eye as I have seen;

they do know of these things of which I have spoken, as I do know;

the knowledge which I have is of God.

36:27 I have been supported under trials and troubles of every kind, yea, and in all manner of afflictions;

God has delivered me from prison, and from bonds, and from death;

I do put my trust in him, and he will still deliver me.

36:28 I know that he will raise me up at the last day, to dwell with him

in glory;

I will praise him forever,

he has brought our fathers out of Egypt, and he has swallowed up the Egyptians in the Red Sea;

he led them by his power into the promised land;

he has delivered them out of bondage and captivity from time to time.

36:29 he has also brought our fathers out of the land of Jerusalem;

he has also, by his everlasting power, delivered them out of bondage and captivity, from time to time even down to the present day;

I have always retained in remembrance their captivity;

ye also ought to retain in remembrance, as I have done, their captivity.

36:30 ye ought to know as I do know, that inasmuch as ye shall keep the commandments of God ye shall prosper in the land;

ye ought to know also, that inasmuch as ye will not keep the commandments of God ye shall be cut off from his presence.

this is according to his word.

215

Alma 37:1 ye take the records which have been entrusted with me;

37:2 ye keep a record of this people, according as I have done,

keep all these things sacred which I have kept, even as I have kept them; for it is for a wise purpose that they are kept.

37:3 these plates of brass, which contain these engravings, which have the records of the holy scriptures upon them, which have

the genealogy of our forefathers, even from the beginning

37:4 it has been prophesied by our fathers, that they should be kept and handed down from one generation to another, and be kept and preserved by the hand of the Lord until they should go forth unto every nation, kindred, tongue, and people, that they shall know of the mysteries contained thereon.

37:5 if they are kept they must retain their brightness; yea, and they will retain their brightness; yea, and also shall all the plates which do contain that which is holy writ.

37:6 by small and simple things are great things brought to pass; small means in many instances doth confound the wise.

37:7 the Lord God doth work by means to bring about his great and eternal purposes;

by very small means the Lord doth confound the wise and bringeth about the salvation of many souls.

37:8 it has hitherto been wisdom in God that these things should be preserved;

they have enlarged the memory of this people,
convinced many of the error of their ways,
brought them to the knowledge of their God unto the salvation of their souls.

37:9 these records and their words brought them unto repentance; they brought them to the knowledge of the Lord their God, and to rejoice in Jesus Christ their Redeemer.

37:10 who knoweth but what they will be the means of bringing many thousands of them, yea, and also many thousands of our stiffnecked brethren, the Nephites, who are now hardening their hearts in sin and iniquities, to the knowledge of their

Redeemer?

37:11 these mysteries are not yet fully made known unto me;
therefore I shall forbear.

37:12 they are preserved for a wise purpose, which purpose is known
unto God;

he doth counsel in wisdom over all his works, and his paths are
straight, and his course is one eternal round.

216

Alma 37:13 O remember, remember, my son Helaman, how strict are the
commandments of God.

he said: If ye will keep my commandments ye shall prosper in
the land but if ye keep not his commandments ye shall be cut
off from his presence.

37:14 now remember, my son, that God has entrusted you with these
things, which are sacred, which he has kept sacred, and also
which he will keep and preserve for a wise purpose in him,
that he may show forth his power unto future generations.

37:15 if ye transgress the commandments of God, behold, these
things which are sacred shall be taken away from you by the
power of God,

ye shall be delivered up unto Satan, that he may sift you as
chaff before the wind.

37:16 if ye keep the commandments of God, and do with these things
which are sacred according to that which the Lord doth
command you, (for you must appeal unto the Lord for all things
whatsoever ye must do with them) behold, no power of earth or

hell can take them from you, for God is powerful to the fulfilling of all his words.

37:17 he will fulfil all his promises which he shall make unto you, he has fulfilled his promises which he has made unto our fathers.

37:18 he promised unto them that he would preserve these things for a wise purpose in him, that he might show forth his power unto future generations.

37:19 one purpose hath he fulfilled, even to the restoration of many thousands of the Lamanites to the knowledge of the truth; he hath shown forth his power in them, he will also still show forth his power in them unto future generations; they shall be preserved.

217

Alma 37:20 ye be diligent in fulfilling all my words, ye be diligent in keeping the commandments of God as they are written.

37:21 concerning those twenty-four plates, that ye keep them, that the mysteries and the works of darkness, and their secret works, or the secret works of those people who have been destroyed, may be made manifest unto this people; yea, all their murders, and robbings, and their plunderings, and all their wickedness and abominations, may be made manifest unto this people; that ye preserve these interpreters.

37:22 the Lord saw that his people began to work in darkness, yea,
work secret murders and abominations;

the Lord said, if they did not repent they should be destroyed
from off the face of the earth.

37:23 the Lord said: I will prepare unto my servant Gazelem, a stone,
which shall shine forth in darkness unto light, that I may
discover unto my people who serve me, that I may discover
unto them the works of their brethren, yea, their secret works,
their works of darkness, and their wickedness and
abominations.

37:24 these interpreters were prepared that the word of God might be
fulfilled, which he spake,

37:25 I will bring forth out of darkness unto light all their secret works
and their abominations;

except they repent I will destroy them from off the face of the
earth;

I will bring to light all their secrets and abominations, unto
every nation that shall hereafter possess the land.

37:26 they did not repent;

they have been destroyed,

thus far the word of God has been fulfilled;

their secret abominations have been brought out of darkness
and made known unto us.

37:27 ye retain all their oaths, and their covenants, and their
agreements in their secret abominations;

all their signs and their wonders ye shall keep from this people,
that they know them not, lest peradventure they should fall into
darkness also and be destroyed.

37:28 there is a curse upon all this land, that destruction shall come upon all those workers of darkness, according to the power of God, when they are fully ripe;

I desire that this people might not be destroyed.

37:29 ye shall keep these secret plans of their oaths and their covenants from this people,

only their wickedness and their murders and their abominations shall ye make known unto them;

ye shall teach them to abhor such wickedness and abominations and murders;

ye shall also teach them that these people were destroyed on account of their wickedness and abominations and their murders.

37:30 they murdered all the prophets of the Lord who came among them to declare unto them concerning their iniquities; \

the blood of those whom they murdered did cry unto the Lord their God for vengeance upon those who were their murderers;

thus the judgments of God did come upon these workers of darkness and secret combinations.

37:31 cursed be the land forever and ever unto those workers of darkness and secret combinations, even unto destruction, except they repent before they are fully ripe.

218

Alma 37:32 remember the words which I have spoken unto you; trust not those secret plans unto this people, teach them an everlasting hatred against sin and iniquity.

37:33 Preach unto them repentance,
faith on the Lord Jesus Christ;
teach them to humble themselves and to be meek and lowly in
heart;
teach them to withstand every temptation of the devil, with their
faith on the Lord Jesus Christ.

37:34 Teach them to never be weary of good works, but to be meek
and lowly in heart;
for such shall find rest to their souls.

219

Alma 37:35 O, remember, my son, and learn wisdom in thy youth;
learn in thy youth to keep the commandments of God.

37:36 cry unto God for all thy support;
let all thy doings be unto the Lord,
whithersoever thou goest let it be in the Lord;
let all thy thoughts be directed unto the Lord;
let the affections of thy heart be placed upon the Lord forever.

37:37 Counsel with the Lord in all thy doings, and he will direct thee
for good;
when thou liest down at night lie down unto the Lord, that he
may watch over you in your sleep;
when thou risest in the morning let thy heart be full of thanks
unto God;
if ye do these things, ye shall be lifted up at the last day.

220

Alma 37:38 I have somewhat to say concerning the thing which our fathers call a ball, or director

our fathers called it Liahona, which is, being interpreted, a compass;

the Lord prepared it.

37:39 there cannot any man work after the manner of so curious a workmanship.

it was prepared to show unto our fathers the course which they should travel in the wilderness.

37:40 it did work for them according to their faith in God;

if they had faith to believe that God could cause that those spindles should point the way they should go, behold, it was done;

they had this miracle, and also many other miracles wrought by the power of God, day by day.

37:41 because those miracles were worked by small means it did show unto them marvelous works.

They were slothful, and forgot to exercise their faith and diligence

then those marvelous works ceased,

they did not progress in their journey;

37:42 they tarried in the wilderness, or did not travel a direct course, and were afflicted with hunger and thirst, because of their transgressions.

37:43 these things are not without a shadow;

as our fathers were slothful to give heed to this compass (now these things were temporal) they did not prosper;

even so it is with things which are spiritual.

37:44 it is as easy to give heed to the word of Christ, which will point to you a straight course to eternal bliss, as it was for our fathers to give heed to this compass, which would point unto them a straight course to the promised land.

37:45 is there not a type in this thing?

For just as surely as this director did bring our fathers, by following its course, to the promised land, shall the words of Christ, if we follow their course, carry us beyond this vale of sorrow into a far better land of promise.

37:46 do not let us be slothful because of the easiness of the way; so was it with our fathers; so was it prepared for them, that if they would look they might live; so it is with us.

The way is prepared, and if we will look we may live forever.

37:47 see that ye take care of these sacred things, see that ye look to God and live. Go unto this people and declare the word, and be sober.

221*

Alma 38:1 inasmuch as ye shall keep the commandments of God ye shall prosper in the land;

inasmuch as ye will not keep the commandments of God ye shall be cut off from his presence.

38:2 I trust that I shall have great joy in you, because of your steadiness and your faithfulness unto God;

as you have commenced in your youth to look to the Lord your God, even so I hope that you will continue in keeping his commandments;

blessed is he that endureth to the end.

38:3 I have had great joy in thee already, because of thy faithfulness and thy diligence, and thy patience and thy long-suffering among the people

38:4 I know that thou wast in bonds;

I also know that thou wast stoned for the word s sake;

thou didst bear all these things with patience

the Lord was with thee; and

thou knowest that the Lord did deliver thee.

38:5 I would that ye should remember, that as much as ye shall put your trust in God even so much ye shall be delivered out of your trials, and your troubles, and your afflictions, and ye shall be lifted up at the last day.

38:6 it is the Spirit of God which is in me which maketh these things known unto me;

if I had not been born of God I should not have known these things.

38:7 the Lord in his great mercy sent his angel to declare unto me that I must stop the work of destruction among his people;

I have seen an angel face to face, and he spake with me, and his voice was as thunder, and it shook the whole earth.

38:8 I was three days and three nights in the most bitter pain and anguish of soul;

never, until I did cry out unto the Lord Jesus Christ for mercy, did I receive a remission of my sins.

I did cry unto him and I did find peace to my soul.

38:9 I have told you this that ye may learn wisdom,
that ye may learn of me that there is no other way or means
whereby man can be saved, only in and through Christ.

he is the life and the light of the world.

he is the word of truth and righteousness.

38:10 as ye have begun to teach the word even so I would that ye
should continue to teach;

I would that ye would be diligent and temperate in all things.

38:11 See that ye are not lifted up unto pride;
see that ye do not boast in your own wisdom, nor of your much
strength.

38:12 Use boldness, but not overbearance;
see that ye bridle all your passions, that ye may be filled with
love;

see that ye refrain from idleness.

38:13 Do not pray as the Zoramites do, for ye have seen that they
pray to be heard of men, and to be praised for their wisdom.

38:14 Do not say: O God, I thank thee that we are better than our
brethren; but rather say: O Lord, forgive my unworthiness, and
remember my brethren in mercy

acknowledge your unworthiness before God at all times.

38:15 may the Lord bless your soul, and receive you at the last day
into his kingdom, to sit down in peace. Now go, my son, and
teach the word unto this people. Be sober.

Alma 39:1 have ye not observed the steadiness of thy brother, his faithfulness, and his diligence in keeping the commandments of God?

has he not set a good example for thee?

39:2 thou didst not give so much heed unto my words as did thy brother,

thou didst go on unto boasting in thy strength and thy wisdom.

39:3 thou didst forsake the ministry, and did go over into the land of Siron, among the borders of the Lamanites, after the harlot Isabel.

39:5 Know ye not, my son, that these things are an abomination in the sight of the Lord; yea, most abominable above all sins save it be the shedding of innocent blood or denying the Holy Ghost?

39:6 if ye deny the Holy Ghost when it once has had place in you, and ye know that ye deny it, behold, this is a sin which is unpardonable;

whosoever murdereth against the light and knowledge of God, it is not easy for him to obtain forgiveness;

39:7 I would to God that ye had not been guilty of so great a crime.

39:8 ye cannot hide your crimes from God; and except ye repent they will stand as a testimony against you at the last day.

39:9 ye should repent and forsake your sins, and go no more after the lusts of your eyes, but cross yourself in all these things; for except ye do this ye can in nowise inherit the kingdom of God.

Oh, remember, and take it upon you, and cross yourself in these things.

39:10 I command you to take it upon you to counsel with your elder

brothers in your undertakings; for behold, thou art in thy youth,
and ye stand in need to be nourished by your brothers.

give heed to their counsel.

39:11 Suffer not yourself to be led away by any vain or foolish thing;
suffer not the devil to lead away your heart again after those
wicked harlots.

O my son, how great iniquity ye brought upon the Zoramites; for
when they saw your conduct they would not believe in my
words.

39:12 the Spirit of the Lord doth say unto me: Command thy children
to do good, lest they lead away the hearts of many people to
destruction;

I command you, my son, in the fear of God, that ye refrain from
your iniquities;

39:13 That ye turn to the Lord with all your mind, might, and strength;
that ye lead away the hearts of no more to do wickedly;
return unto them, and acknowledge your faults
that wrong which ye have done.

39:14 Seek not after riches nor the vain things of this world;
you cannot carry them with you.

39:15 I would say somewhat unto you concerning the coming of
Christ.

it is he that surely shall come to take away the sins of the world;
he cometh to declare glad tidings of salvation unto his people.

39:16 this was the ministry unto which ye were called, to declare
these glad tidings unto this people, to prepare their minds;
that salvation might come unto them,
that they may prepare the minds of their children to hear the

word at the time of his coming.

223

Alma 39:17 you marvel why these things should be known so long beforehand.

is not a soul at this time as precious unto God as a soul will be at the time of his coming?

39:18 Is it not as necessary that the plan of redemption should be made known unto this people as well as unto their children?

39:19 Is it not as easy at this time for the Lord to send his angel to declare these glad tidings unto us as unto our children, or as after the time of his coming?

40:1 I perceive that thy mind is worried concerning the resurrection of the dead.

40:2 I say unto you, that there is no resurrection or, I would say, in other words, that this mortal does not put on immortality, this corruption does not put on incorruption until after the coming of Christ.

40:3 Behold, he bringeth to pass the resurrection of the dead. But behold, my son, the resurrection is not yet.

I unfold unto you a mystery; nevertheless, there are many mysteries which are kept, that no one knoweth them save God himself.

I show unto you one thing which I have inquired diligently of God that I might know that is concerning the resurrection.

40:4 there is a time appointed that all shall come forth from the dead. Now when this time cometh no one knows; but God

knoweth the time which is appointed.

40:5 Now, whether there shall be one time, or a second time, or a third time, that men shall come forth from the dead, it mattereth not; for God knoweth all these things; and it sufficeth me to know that this is the case that there is a time appointed that all shall rise from the dead.

40:6 there must needs be a space betwixt the time of death and the time of the resurrection.

40:7 what becometh of the souls of men from this time of death to the time appointed for the resurrection?

40:8 whether there is more than one time appointed for men to rise it mattereth not; for all do not die at once, and this mattereth not; all is as one day with God, and time only is measured unto men.

40:9 there is a time appointed unto men that they shall rise from the dead;

there is a space between the time of death and the resurrection.

concerning this space of time,

40:10 when the time cometh when all shall rise, then shall they know that God knoweth all the times which are appointed unto man.

40:11 concerning the state of the soul between death and the resurrection Behold, it has been made known unto me by an angel,

the spirits of all men, as soon as they are departed from this mortal body, yea, the spirits of all men, whether they be good or evil, are taken home to that God who gave them life.

40:12 then shall it come to pass, that the spirits of those who are

righteous are received into a state of happiness, which is called paradise, a state of rest, a state of peace, where they shall rest from all their troubles and from all care, and sorrow.

40:13 then shall it come to pass, that the spirits of the wicked, yea, who are evil for behold, they have no part nor portion of the Spirit of the Lord; for behold, they chose evil works rather than good; therefore the spirit of the devil did enter into them, and take possession of their house and these shall be cast out into outer darkness; there shall be weeping, and wailing, and gnashing of teeth, and this because of their own iniquity, being led captive by the will of the devil.

40:14 this is the state of the souls of the wicked, yea, in darkness, and a state of awful, fearful looking for the fiery indignation of the wrath of God upon them;

they remain in this state, as well as the righteous in paradise, until the time of their resurrection.

40:15 there are some that have understood that this state of happiness and this state of misery of the soul, before the resurrection, was a first resurrection.

it may be termed a resurrection, the raising of the spirit or the soul and their consignment to happiness or misery, according to the words which have been spoken.

225

Alma 40:17 we do not suppose that this first resurrection, which is spoken of in this manner, can be the resurrection of the souls and their consignment to happiness or misery.

40:18 Nay; but it meaneth the reuniting of the soul with the body, of those from the days of Adam down to the resurrection of Christ.

40:19 whether the souls and the bodies of those of whom has been spoken shall all be reunited at once, the wicked as well as the righteous, I do not say;

let it suffice, that I say that they all come forth;

their resurrection cometh to pass before the resurrection of those who die after the resurrection of Christ.

40:20 I do not say that their resurrection cometh at the resurrection of Christ; but behold, I give it as my opinion, that the souls and the bodies are reunited, of the righteous, at the resurrection of Christ, and his ascension into heaven.

226

Alma 40:21 there is a space between death and the resurrection of the body, and a state of the soul in happiness or in misery until the time which is appointed of God that the dead shall come forth, and be reunited, both soul and body,

be brought to stand before God, and be judged according

40:22 which has been spoken by the mouths of the prophets.

40:23 The soul shall be restored to the body, and the body to the soul; yea, and every limb and joint shall be restored to its body; yea, even a hair of the head shall not be lost; but all things shall be restored to their proper and perfect frame.

40:24 this is the restoration of which has been spoken by the mouths of the prophets

40:25 then shall the righteous shine forth in the kingdom of God.

40:26 an awful death cometh upon the wicked;

they die as to things pertaining to things of righteousness; for they are unclean, and no unclean thing can inherit the kingdom of God;

they are cast out, and consigned to partake of the fruits of their labors or their works, which have been evil; and they drink the dregs of a bitter cup.

227

Alma 41:1 I have somewhat to say concerning the restoration of which has been spoken;

some have wrested the scriptures, and have gone far astray

I perceive that thy mind has been worried also concerning this thing.

41:2 the plan of restoration is requisite with the justice of God;

it is requisite that all things should be restored to their proper order.

it is requisite and just, according to the power and resurrection of Christ,

the soul of man should be restored to its body, and that every part of the body should be restored to itself.

41:3 it is requisite with the justice of God that men should be judged according to their works;

if their works were good in this life, and the desires of their hearts were good, that they should also, at the last day, be restored unto that which is good.

41:4 if their works are evil they shall be restored unto them for evil.

Alma 41:4 all things shall be restored to their proper order, every thing to its natural frame mortality raised to immortality, corruption to incorruption raised to endless happiness to inherit the kingdom of God, or to endless misery to inherit the kingdom of the devil,

41:5 The one raised to happiness according to his desires of happiness, or good according to his desires of good;

the other to evil according to his desires of evil; for as he has desired to do evil all the day long even so shall he have his reward of evil when the night cometh.

41:6 If he hath repented of his sins, and desired righteousness until the end of his days, even so he shall be rewarded unto righteousness.

41:7 These are they that are redeemed of the Lord;

these are they that are taken out, that are delivered from that endless night of darkness;

thus they stand or fall;

they are their own judges, whether to do good or do evil.

Alma 41:8 the decrees of God are unalterable;

the way is prepared that whosoever will may walk therein and be saved.

41:9 do not risk one more offense against your God upon those

points of doctrine, which ye have hitherto risked to commit sin.

41:10 Do not suppose, because it has been spoken concerning restoration, that ye shall be restored from sin to happiness.

wickedness never was happiness.

41:11 all men that are in a state of nature, or I would say, in a carnal state, are in the gall of bitterness and in the bonds of iniquity;

they are without God in the world, and they have gone contrary to the nature of God;

they are in a state contrary to the nature of happiness.

41:12 is the meaning of the word restoration to take a thing of a natural state and place it in an unnatural state, or to place it in a state opposite to its nature?

41:13 O, my son, this is not the case;

the meaning of the word restoration is to bring back again evil for evil, carnal for carnal, or devilish for devilish good for that which is good; righteous for that which is righteous; just for that which is just; merciful for that which is merciful.

41:14 see that you are merciful unto your brethren; deal justly, judge righteously, and do good continually;

if ye do all these things then shall ye receive your reward;

ye shall have mercy restored unto you again;

ye shall have justice restored unto you again;

ye shall have a righteous judgment restored unto you again;

ye shall have good rewarded unto you again.

41:15 that which ye do send out shall return unto you again, and be restored;

the word restoration more fully condemneth the sinner, and justifieth him not at all.

230*

Alma 42:1 I perceive there is somewhat more which doth worry your mind,
which ye cannot understand

concerning the justice of God in the punishment of the sinner;
ye do try to suppose that it is injustice that the sinner should be
consigned to a state of misery.

42:2 after the Lord God sent our first parents forth from the garden of
Eden, to till the ground, from whence they were taken

he drew out the man, and he placed at the east end of the
garden of Eden, cherubim, and a flaming sword which turned
every way, to keep the tree of life

42:3 Now, we see that the man had become as God, knowing good
and evil;

lest he should put forth his hand, and take also of the tree of
life, and eat and live forever, the Lord God placed cherubim
and the flaming sword, that he should not partake of the fruit

42:4 there was a time granted unto man to repent,
a probationary time, a time to repent and serve God.

42:5 if Adam had put forth his hand immediately, and partaken of the
tree of life, he would have lived forever, according to the word
of God, having no space for repentance;

the word of God would have been void, and the great plan of
salvation would have been frustrated.

42:6 it was appointed unto man to die

as they were cut off from the tree of life they should be cut off
from the face of the earth and man became lost forever, yea,

they became fallen man.

42:7 ye see by this that our first parents were cut off both temporally and spiritually from the presence of the Lord;

they became subjects to follow after their own will.

42:8 it was not expedient that man should be reclaimed from this temporal death, for that would destroy the great plan of happiness.

42:9 as the soul could never die, and the fall had brought upon all mankind a spiritual death as well as a temporal,

they were cut off from the presence of the Lord,

it was expedient that mankind should be reclaimed from this spiritual death.

42:10 as they had become carnal, sensual, and devilish, by nature, this probationary state became a state for them to prepare; it became a preparatory state.

231

Alma 42:11 remember, my son, if it were not for the plan of redemption, (laying it aside) as soon as they were dead their souls were miserable, being cut off from the presence of the Lord.

42:12 there was no means to reclaim men from this fallen state, which man had brought upon himself because of his own disobedience;

42:13 according to justice, the plan of redemption could not be brought about, only on conditions of repentance of men in this probationary state, yea, this preparatory state;

except it were for these conditions, mercy could not take effect

except it should destroy the work of justice.

the work of justice could not be destroyed; if so, God would cease to be God.

42:14 all mankind were fallen, and they were in the grasp of justice; yea, the justice of God, which consigned them forever to be cut off from his presence.

42:15 the plan of mercy could not be brought about except an atonement should be made;

therefore God himself atoneth for the sins of the world, to bring about the plan of mercy, to appease the demands of justice, that God might be a perfect, just God, and a merciful God also.

42:16 repentance could not come unto men except there were a punishment, which also was eternal as the life of the soul should be,

affixed opposite to the plan of happiness, which was as eternal also as the life of the soul.

232

Alma 42:17 how could a man repent except he should sin?

How could he sin if there was no law?

How could there be a law save there was a punishment?

42:18 there was a punishment affixed, and a just law given, which brought remorse of conscience unto man.

42:19 if there was no law given if a man murdered he should die would he be afraid he would die if he should murder?

42:20 if there was no law given against sin men would not be afraid

to sin.

42:21 if there was no law given, if men sinned what could justice do, or mercy either, for they would have no claim upon the creature?

42:22 But there is a law given, and a punishment affixed, and a repentance granted; which repentance mercy claimeth;

otherwise, justice claimeth the creature and executeth the law, and the law inflicteth the punishment;

if not so, the works of justice would be destroyed, and God would cease to be God.

42:23 God ceaseth not to be God, and mercy claimeth the penitent, and mercy cometh because of the atonement;

the atonement bringeth to pass the resurrection of the dead;

the resurrection of the dead bringeth back men into the presence of God;

thus they are restored into his presence, to be judged according to their works,

according to the law and justice.

42:24 justice exerciseth all his demands,

mercy claimeth all which is her own;

none but the truly penitent are saved.

233

Alma 42:25 do ye suppose that mercy can rob justice? I say unto you, Nay; not one whit. If so, God would cease to be God.

42:26 thus God bringeth about his great and eternal purposes, which were prepared from the foundation of the world.

thus cometh about the salvation and the redemption of men,
and also their destruction and misery.

42:27 whosoever will come may come and partake of the waters of
life freely;

whosoever will not come the same is not compelled to come;
but in the last day it shall be restored unto him according to his
deeds.

42:28 If he has desired to do evil, and has not repented in his days,
behold, evil shall be done unto him, according to the
restoration of God.

234

Alma 42:29 let these things trouble you no more,
only let your sins trouble you, with that trouble which shall bring
you down unto repentance.

42:30 ye should deny the justice of God no more.

Do not endeavor to excuse yourself in the least point because
of your sins, by denying the justice of God;

do you let the justice of God, and his mercy, and his long-
suffering have full sway in your heart;

let it bring you down to the dust in humility.

42:31 now, O my son, ye are called of God to preach the word unto
this people.

now, my son, go thy way, declare the word with truth and
soberness, that thou mayest bring souls unto repentance, that
the great plan of mercy may have claim upon them.

may God grant unto you even according to my words.

235

Alma 43:1 the sons of Alma did go forth among the people, to declare the word unto them.

43:2 they preached the word, and the truth,
according to the spirit of prophecy and revelation;
they preached after the holy order of God by which they were called.

236

Alma 43:6 Zerahemnah appointed chief captains over the Lamanites, and they were all Amalekites and Zoramites.

43:7 Now this he did that he might preserve their hatred towards the Nephites,

43:8 his designs were to stir up the Lamanites to anger against the Nephites;

that he might usurp great power over them,
that he might gain power over the Nephites by bringing them into bondage.

43:9 the design of the Nephites was to support their lands, and their houses, and their wives, and their children,

that they might preserve them from the hands of their enemies;
that they might preserve their rights and their privileges,
that they might worship God according to their desires.

43:10 they knew that if they should fall into the hands of the Lamanites, that whosoever should worship God in spirit and in

truth, the true and the living God, the Lamanites would destroy.

43:11 the people of Ammon

they would not take up arms,

they had entered into a covenant

they would not break it

if they should fall into the hands of the Lamanites they would
be destroyed.

43:13 thus the Nephites were compelled, alone, to withstand against
the Lamanites,

237

Alma 43:19 Moroni, had prepared his people with breastplates and with
arm-shields, yea, and also shields to defend their heads, and
also they were dressed with thick clothing

43:21 they were exceedingly afraid of the armies of the Nephites
because of their armor,

43:23 Moroni sent spies into the wilderness to watch their camp;

Moroni, also, knowing of the prophecies of Alma, sent certain
men unto him, desiring him that he should inquire of the Lord
whither the armies of the Nephites should go to defend
themselves against the Lamanites.

43:24 the word of the Lord came unto Alma, and Alma informed the
messengers of Moroni, that the armies of the Lamanites were
marching round about in the wilderness, that they might come
over into the land of Manti,

43:25 took the remaining part of his army and marched over into the
land of Manti.

43:26 he caused that all the people in that quarter of the land should gather themselves together to battle against the Lamanites,

to defend their lands and their country, their rights and their liberties;

they were prepared against the time of the coming of the Lamanites.

43:29 Moroni knew the intention of the Lamanites, that it was their intention to destroy their brethren, or to subject them and bring them into bondage that they might establish a kingdom unto themselves over all the land;

43:30 it was the only desire of the Nephites to preserve their lands, and their liberty, and their church,

he thought it no sin that he should defend them by stratagem;

238

Alma 43:45 the Nephites were inspired by a better cause, for they were not fighting for monarchy nor power

they were fighting for their homes and their liberties, their wives and their children, and their all,

for their rites of worship

their church.

43:46 they were doing that which they felt was the duty which they owed to their God;

for the Lord had said unto them, and also unto their fathers, that: Inasmuch as ye are not guilty of the first offense, neither the second, ye shall not suffer yourselves to be slain by the hands of your enemies.

43:47 the Lord has said that: Ye shall defend your families even unto bloodshed.

for this cause were the Nephites contending with the Lamanites, to defend themselves, and their families, and their lands, their country, and their rights, and their religion.

43:48 Moroni, perceiving their intent, sent forth and inspired their hearts with these thoughts yea, the thoughts of their lands, their liberty, yea, their freedom from bondage.

43:49 they cried with one voice unto the Lord their God, for their liberty and their freedom from bondage.

43:52 the armies of Moroni encircled them about, yea, even on both sides of the river,

44:1 they did stop and withdrew a pace from them. And Moroni said unto Zerahemnah: Behold, Zerahemnah, that we do not desire to be men of blood. Ye know that ye are in our hands, yet we do not desire to slay you.

44:2 Behold, we have not come out to battle against you that we might shed your blood for power; neither do we desire to bring any one to the yoke of bondage.

44:3 the Lord is with us; and ye behold that he has delivered you into our hands.

this is done unto us because of our religion and our faith in Christ.

And now ye see that ye cannot destroy this our faith.

44:4 Now ye see that this is the true faith of God; yea, ye see that God will support, and keep, and preserve us, so long as we are faithful unto him, and unto our faith, and our religion; and never will the Lord suffer that we shall be destroyed except we should

fall into transgression and deny our faith.

44:5 we have gained power over you, by our faith, by our religion, and by our rites of worship, and by our church, and by the sacred support which we owe to our wives and our children, by that liberty which binds us to our lands and our country; yea, and also by the maintenance of the sacred word of God, to which we owe all our happiness;

44:6 I command you by all the desires which ye have for life, that ye deliver up your weapons of war unto us, and we will seek not your blood, but we will spare your lives, if ye will go your way and come not again to war against us.

44:8 when Zerahemnah had heard these sayings he came forth and delivered up his sword and his cimeter, and his bow into the hands of Moroni, and said unto him: Behold, here are our weapons of war; we will deliver them up unto you, but we will not suffer ourselves to take an oath unto you, which we know that we shall break, and also our children; but take our weapons of war, and suffer that we may depart into the wilderness; otherwise we will retain our swords, and we will perish or conquer.

44:9 we are not of your faith;

we do not believe that it is God that has delivered us into your hands;

we believe that it is your cunning that has preserved you from our swords.

Alma 44:11 as the Lord liveth, ye shall not depart except ye depart with an oath that ye will not return again against us to war.

44:12 now when Moroni had said these words, Zerahemnah retained his sword, and he was angry with Moroni, and he rushed forward that he might slay Moroni; but as he raised his sword, behold, one of Moroni's soldiers smote it even to the earth, and it broke by the hilt; and he also smote Zerahemnah that he took off his scalp and it fell to the earth.

44:13 the soldier who stood by, who smote off the scalp of Zerahemnah, took up the scalp from off the ground by the hair, and laid it upon the point of his sword, and stretched it forth unto them, saying unto them with a loud voice:

44:14 Even as this scalp has fallen to the earth, which is the scalp of your chief, so shall ye fall to the earth except ye will deliver up your weapons of war and depart with a covenant of peace.

44:15 many came forth and threw down their weapons of war at the feet of Moroni, and entered into a covenant of peace.

44:18 and they began to be swept down, even as the soldier of Moroni had prophesied.

44:19 Now Zerahemnah, when he saw that they were all about to be destroyed, cried mightily unto Moroni, promising that he would covenant and also his people with them,

44:20 he took the weapons of war from the Lamanites; and after they had entered into a covenant with him of peace they were suffered to depart into the wilderness.

44:22 they did cast their dead into the waters of Sidon, and they have gone forth and are buried in the depths of the sea.

Alma 45:1 the people of Nephi were exceedingly rejoiced, because the Lord had again delivered them out of the hands of their enemies;

they gave thanks unto the Lord their God; yea, and they did fast much and pray much, and they did worship God with exceedingly great joy.

45:2 Alma came unto his son Helaman and said unto him: Believest thou the words which I spake unto thee concerning those records which have been kept?

45:3 And Helaman said unto him: Yea, I believe.

45:4 And Alma said again: Believest thou in Jesus Christ, who shall come?

45:5 And he said: Yea, I believe all the words which thou hast spoken.

45:6 And Alma said unto him again: Will ye keep my commandments?

45:7 And he said: Yea, I will keep thy commandments with all my heart.

45:8 Then Alma said unto him: Blessed art thou; and the Lord shall prosper thee in this land.

Alma 45:9 I have somewhat to prophesy unto thee; but what I prophesy unto thee ye shall not make known; yea, what I prophesy unto thee shall not be made known, even until the prophecy is

fulfilled; therefore write the words which I shall say.

45:10 this very people, the Nephites, according to the spirit of revelation which is in me, in four hundred years from the time that Jesus Christ shall manifest himself unto them, shall dwindle in unbelief.

45:12 because they shall sin against so great light and knowledge, yea, I say unto you, that from that day, even the fourth generation shall not all pass away before this great iniquity shall come.

45:14 whosoever remaineth, and is not destroyed in that great and dreadful day, shall be numbered among the Lamanites, save it be a few who shall be called the disciples of the Lord; and them shall the Lamanites pursue even until they shall become extinct.

242

Alma 45:15 after Alma had said these things to Helaman, he blessed him, and also his other sons; and he also blessed the earth for the righteous sake.

45:16 he said: Thus saith the Lord God Cursed shall be the land, yea, this land, unto every nation, kindred, tongue, and people, unto destruction, which do wickedly, when they are fully ripe;

this is the cursing and the blessing of God upon the land, for the Lord cannot look upon sin with the least degree of allowance.

45:17 he blessed the church, yea, all those who should stand fast in the faith from that time henceforth.

45:18 when Alma had done this he departed out of the land of Zarahemla, as if to into the land of Melek.

he was never heard of more;

45:19 saying went abroad in the church that he was taken up by the Spirit, or buried by the hand of the Lord, even as Moses.

243

Alma 45:20 Helaman went forth among the people to declare the word unto them.

45:21 because of their wars with the Lamanites and the many little dissensions and disturbances which had been among the people, it became expedient that the word of God should be declared among them,

that a regulation should be made throughout the church.

45:22 Helaman and his brethren went forth to establish the church again in all the land,

they did appoint priests and teachers throughout all the land, over all the churches.

45:23 after Helaman and his brethren had appointed priests and teachers over the churches that there arose a dissension among them, and they would not give heed to the words of Helaman and his brethren;

45:24 they grew proud, being lifted up in their hearts, because of their exceedingly great riches;

they grew rich in their own eyes, and would not give heed to their words, to walk uprightly before God.

46:1 as many as would not hearken to the words of Helaman and

his brethren were gathered together against their brethren.

46:3 the leader of those who were wroth against their brethren was a large and a strong man; and his name was Amalickiah.

46:4 Amalickiah was desirous to be a king; and those people who were wroth were also desirous that he should be their king; and they were the greater part of them the lower judges of the land, and they were seeking for power.

244

Alma 46:6 they were led away by Amalickiah to dissensions, notwithstanding the preaching of Helaman and his brethren, yea, notwithstanding their exceedingly great care over the church, for they were high priests over the church.

46:7 there were many in the church who believed in the flattering words of Amalickiah,

they dissented even from the church;

thus were the affairs of the people of Nephi exceedingly precarious and dangerous, notwithstanding their great victory which they had had over the Lamanites, and their great rejoicings which they had had because of their deliverance by the hand of the Lord.

46:8 Thus we see how quick the children of men do forget the Lord their God,

how quick to do iniquity, and to be led away by the evil one.

46:9 we also see the great wickedness one very wicked man can cause to take place among the children of men.

46:10 we see that Amalickiah, because he was a man of cunning

device and a man of many flattering words, that he led away the hearts of many people to do wickedly;

to seek to destroy the church of God, and to destroy the foundation of liberty which God had granted unto them, or which blessing God had sent upon the face of the land for the righteous sake.

245

Alma 46:11 when Moroni, who was the chief commander of the armies of the Nephites, had heard of these dissensions, he was angry with Amalickiah.

46:12 he rent his coat; and he took a piece thereof, and wrote upon it In memory of our God, our religion, and freedom, and our peace, our wives, and our children and he fastened it upon the end of a pole.

46:13 he called it the title of liberty)

he bowed himself to the earth, and he prayed mightily unto his God for the blessings of liberty to rest upon his brethren, so long as there should a band of Christians remain to possess the land

46:14 thus were all the true believers of Christ, who belonged to the church of God, called by those who did not belong to the church.

46:15 those who were true believers in Christ took upon them, gladly, the name of Christ, or Christians as they were called, because of their belief in Christ who should come.

46:16 Moroni prayed that the cause of the Christians, and the

freedom of the land might be favored.

46:18 he said: Surely God shall not suffer that we, who are despised because we take upon us the name of Christ, shall be trodden down and destroyed, until we bring it upon us by our own transgressions.

246

Alma 46:19 he went forth among the people, waving the rent part of his garment in the air, that all might see the writing which he had written upon the rent part,

 crying with a loud voice, saying:

46:20 Behold, whosoever will maintain this title upon the land, let them come forth in the strength of the Lord, and enter into a covenant that they will maintain their rights, and their religion, that the Lord God may bless them.

46:21 when Moroni had proclaimed these words, behold, the people came running together with their armor girded about their loins, rending their garments in token, or as a covenant, that they would not forsake the Lord their God;

 if they should transgress the commandments of God, or fall into transgression, and be ashamed to take upon them the name of Christ, the Lord should rend them even as they had rent their garments.

46:22 this was the covenant which they made,

 they cast their garments at the feet of Moroni, saying: We covenant with our God, that we shall be destroyed, even as our brethren in the land northward, if we shall fall into

transgression;

he may cast us at the feet of our enemies, even as we have cast our garments at thy feet to be trodden under foot, if we shall fall into transgression.

247

Alma 46:23 we are a remnant of the seed of Jacob;

we are a remnant of the seed of Joseph, whose coat was rent by his brethren into many pieces;

let us remember to keep the commandments of God, or our garments shall be rent by our brethren, and we be cast into prison, or be sold, or be slain.

46:24 Yea, let us preserve our liberty as a remnant of Joseph;

let us remember the words of Jacob, before his death, he saw that a part of the remnant of the coat of Joseph was preserved and had not decayed.

Even as this remnant of garment of my son hath been preserved, so shall a remnant of the seed of my son be preserved by the hand of God, and be taken unto himself, while the remainder of the seed of Joseph shall perish, even as the remnant of his garment.

46:25 Now behold, this giveth my soul sorrow; nevertheless, my soul hath joy in my son, because of that part of his seed which shall be taken unto God.

46:27 the seed of Joseph, which shall perish as his garment, are those who have dissented from us?

it shall be ourselves if we do not stand fast in the faith of Christ.

46:28 when Moroni had said these words he went forth, and also sent forth in all the parts of the land where there were dissensions, and gathered together all the people who were desirous to maintain their liberty, to stand against Amalickiah

248

Alma 46:29 Amalickiah saw that the people of Moroni were more numerous than the Amalickiahites

he took those of his people who would and departed into the land of Nephi.

46:30 Moroni thought it was not expedient that the Lamanites should have any more strength; therefore he thought to cut off the people of Amalickiah,

46:31 Moroni thought it was expedient that he should take his armies, who had gathered themselves together, and armed themselves, and entered into a covenant to keep the peace

to cut off the course of Amalickiah in the wilderness.

46:32 he did according to his desires,

46:33 Amalickiah fled with a small number of his men, and the remainder were delivered up into the hands of Moroni

46:35 whomsoever of the Amalickiahites that would not enter into a covenant to support the cause of freedom, that they might maintain a free government, he caused to be put to death;

there were but few who denied the covenant of freedom.

249

Alma 46:36 he caused the title of liberty to be hoisted upon every tower which was in all the land,

46:38 Helaman and the high priests did also maintain order in the church;

46:39 there were many who died, firmly believing that their souls were redeemed by the Lord Jesus Christ; thus they went out of the world rejoicing.

46:40 there were some who died with fevers, which at some seasons of the year were very frequent in the land

46:41 there were many who died with old age; and those who died in the faith of Christ are happy in him,

250

Alma 47:1 Amalickiah and those who had fled with him into the wilderness;

went up in the land of Nephi among the Lamanites, and did stir up the Lamanites to anger against the people of Nephi,

the king of the Lamanites sent a proclamation throughout all his land, among all his people, that they should gather themselves together again to go to battle against the Nephites.

47:2 the more part of them would not, obey the commandments of the king.

47:3 he gave Amalickiah the command of that part of his army which was obedient unto his commands, and commanded him that he should go forth and compel them to arms.

47:7 they had gathered themselves together upon the top of the mount which was called Antipas, in preparation to battle.

47:8 it was not Amalickiah's intention to give them battle according to the commandments of the king;

it was his intention to gain favor with the armies of the Lamanites, that he might place himself at their head and dethrone the king and take possession of the kingdom.

47:10 he sent a secret embassy into the mount Antipas, desiring that the leader of those who were upon the mount, whose name was Lehonti, that he should come down to the foot of the mount, for he desired to speak with him.

47:13 Amalickiah desired him to come down with his army in the night-time, and surround those men in their camps over whom the king had given him command, and that he would deliver them up into Lehonti's hands, if he would make him (Amalickiah) a second leader over the whole army.

47:14 before they awoke at the dawn of day they were surrounded by the armies of Lehonti.

47:15 they plead with Amalickiah that he would suffer them to fall in with their brethren, that they might not be destroyed.

47:17 it was the custom among the Lamanites, if their chief leader was killed, to appoint the second leader to be their chief leader.

47:18 Amalickiah caused that one of his servants should administer poison by degrees to Lehonti, that he died.

47:19 when Lehonti was dead, the Lamanites appointed Amalickiah to be their leader and their chief commander.

47:22 as the king came out to meet him Amalickiah caused that his servants should go forth to meet the king.

47:23 as was the custom with the Lamanites, as a token of peace, which custom they had taken from the Nephites.

47:24 And it came to pass that when he had raised the first from the ground, behold he stabbed the king to the heart; and he fell to the earth.

47:25 Now the servants of the king fled; and the servants of Amalickiah raised a cry, saying:

47:26 Behold, the servants of the king have stabbed him to the heart, and he has fallen

47:29 when the servants of the king saw an army pursuing after them, they were frightened again, and fled into the wilderness, and came over into the land of Zarahemla and joined the people of Ammon.

47:35 Amalickiah sought the favor of the queen, and took her unto him to wife;

thus by his fraud, and by the assistance of his cunning servants, he obtained the kingdom;

he was acknowledged king throughout all the land, among all the people of the Lamanites, who were composed of the Lamanites and the Lemuelites and the Ishmaelites, and all the dissenters of the Nephites, from the reign of Nephi down to the present time.

47:36 Now these dissenters, having the same instruction and the same information of the Nephites,

having been instructed in the same knowledge of the Lord, not long after their dissensions they became more hardened and impenitent, and more wild, wicked and ferocious than the Lamanites drinking in with the traditions of the Lamanites; giving way to indolence, and all manner of lasciviousness; entirely forgetting the Lord their God.

Alma 48:1 as soon as Amalickiah had obtained the kingdom he began to inspire the hearts of the Lamanites against the people of Nephi;

48:2 having been made king over the Lamanites, he sought also to reign over all the land, yea, and all the people who were in the land, the Nephites as well as the Lamanites.

48:3 he had hardened the hearts of the Lamanites and blinded their minds, and stirred them up to anger,

48:4 he was determined, because of the greatness of the number of his people, to overpower the Nephites and to bring them into bondage.

48:5 thus he did appoint chief captains of the Zoramites, they being the most acquainted with the strength of the Nephites,

48:7 Moroni, on the other hand, had been preparing the minds of the people to be faithful unto the Lord their God.

48:8 he had been strengthening the armies of the Nephites, and erecting small forts, or places of resort; throwing up banks of earth round about to enclose his armies, and also building walls of stone to encircle them about, round about their cities and the borders of their lands;

48:9 in their weakest fortifications he did place the greater number of men;

48:10 he was preparing to support their liberty, their lands, their wives, and their children, and their peace, and that they might

live unto the Lord their God, and that they might maintain that which was called by their enemies the cause of Christians.

48:11 Moroni was a strong and a mighty man; he was a man of a perfect understanding;

a man that did not delight in bloodshed;

a man whose soul did joy in the liberty and the freedom of his country, and his brethren from bondage and slavery;

48:12 a man whose heart did swell with thanksgiving to his God, for the many privileges and blessings which he bestowed upon his people;

a man who did labor exceedingly for the welfare and safety of his people.

48:13 he was a man who was firm in the faith of Christ,

he had sworn with an oath to defend his people, his rights, and his country, and his religion, even to the loss of his blood.

252

Alma 48:14 the Nephites were taught to defend themselves against their enemies, even to the shedding of blood if it were necessary;

they were also taught never to give an offense, yea, and never to raise the sword except it were against an enemy, except it were to preserve their lives.

48:15 this was their faith, that by so doing God would prosper them in the land,

if they were faithful in keeping the commandments of God that he would prosper them in the land;

warn them to flee, or to prepare for war, according to their

danger;

48:16 God would make it known unto them whither they should go to defend themselves against their enemies,

the Lord would deliver them;

this was the faith of Moroni, and his heart did glory in it;

not in the shedding of blood

in doing good,

in preserving his people,

in keeping the commandments of God,

resisting iniquity.

48:17 if all men had been, and were, and ever would be, like unto Moroni, behold, the very powers of hell would have been shaken forever; yea, the devil would never have power over the hearts of the children of men.

253

Alma 48:19 Helaman and his brethren were no less serviceable unto the people

they did preach the word of God,

they did baptize unto repentance all men whosoever would

hearken unto their words.

48:20 they went forth, and the people did humble themselves

because of their words,

they were highly favored of the Lord,

thus they were free from wars and contentions among

themselves,

48:21 notwithstanding their peace amongst themselves, they were

compelled reluctantly to contend with their brethren, the Lamanites.

48:23 they were sorry to take up arms against the Lamanites, because they did not delight in the shedding of blood;

they were sorry to be the means of sending so many of their brethren out of this world into an eternal world, unprepared to meet their God.

48:24 they could not suffer to lay down their lives, that their wives and their children should be massacred by the barbarous cruelty of those who were once their brethren,

had dissented from their church,

had left them and had gone to destroy them by joining the Lamanites.

48:25 they could not bear that their brethren should rejoice over the blood of the Nephites, so long as there were any who should keep the commandments of God,

the promise of the Lord was, if they should keep his commandments they should prosper in the land.

254

Alma 49:1 the armies of the Lamanites were seen approaching towards the land of Ammonihah.

49:2 they fought with stones and with arrows.

49:3 the city of Ammonihah had been rebuilt.

49:4 the Nephites had dug up a ridge of earth round about them, which was so high that the Lamanites could not cast their stones and their arrows at them

49:5 the chief captains of the Lamanites were astonished exceedingly, because of the wisdom of the Nephites in preparing their places of security.

49:6 they had also prepared themselves with shields, and with breastplates;

they had also prepared themselves with garments of skins, yea, very thick garments to cover their nakedness.

49:7 being thus prepared they supposed that they should easily overpower and subject their brethren to the yoke of bondage, or slay and massacre them according to their pleasure.

49:8 to their uttermost astonishment, they were prepared for them, in a manner which never had been known among the children of Lehi.

255

Alma 49:12 they retreated into the wilderness, and took their camp and marched towards the land of Noah,

49:13 they knew not that Moroni had fortified, or had built forts of security, for every city in all the land round about;

their chief captains came forward and took an oath that they would destroy the people of that city.

49:14 to their astonishment, the city of Noah, which had hitherto been a weak place, had now, by the means of Moroni, become strong,

49:16 Moroni had appointed Lehi to be chief captain over the men of that city; and it was that same Lehi who fought with the Lamanites in the valley on the east of the river Sidon.

49:18 the Lamanites could not get into their forts of security by any other way save by the entrance, because of the highness of the bank which had been thrown up, and the depth of the ditch which had been dug round about, save it were by the entrance.

49:19 thus were the Nephites prepared to destroy all such as should attempt to climb up to enter the fort by any other way, by casting over stones and arrows at them.

49:20 they were prepared,

49:21 the captains of the Lamanites brought up their armies before the place of entrance, and began to contend with the Nephites, to get into their place of security;

they were driven back from time to time, insomuch that they were slain with an immense slaughter.

49:22 they began to dig down their banks of earth that they might obtain a pass to their armies, that they might have an equal chance to fight;

in these attempts they were swept off by the stones and arrows which were thrown at them; and instead of filling up their ditches by pulling down the banks of earth, they were filled up in a measure with their dead and wounded bodies.

49:23 Thus the Nephites had all power over their enemies;

the Lamanites did attempt to destroy the Nephites until their chief captains were all slain;

49:25 when the Lamanites saw that their chief captains were all slain they fled into the wilderness.

they returned to the land of Nephi, to inform their king, Amalickiah,

49:27 he did curse God, and also Moroni,

swearing with an oath that he would drink his blood;
this because Moroni had kept the commandments of God in
preparing for the safety of his people.

49:28 the people of Nephi did thank the Lord their God, because of
his matchless power in delivering them from the hands of their
enemies.

49:30 there was continual peace among them, and exceedingly great
prosperity in the church because of their heed and diligence
which they gave unto the word of God,

which was declared unto them by Helaman, and Shiblon, and
Corianton, and Ammon and his brethren, yea, and by all those
who had been ordained by the holy order of God,

being baptized unto repentance, and sent forth to preach
among the people.

255

Alma 50:1 Moroni did not stop making preparations for war, or to defend
his people against the Lamanites;

he caused that his armies should commence
in digging up heaps of earth round about all the cities,
throughout all the land which was possessed by the Nephites.

50:2 upon the top of these ridges of earth he caused that there
should be timbers,

50:5 they were prepared that they could cast stones from the top
thereof, according to their pleasure and their strength, and slay
him who should attempt to approach near the walls of the city.

50:18 they did prosper exceedingly, and they became exceedingly

rich;

50:19 thus we see how merciful and just are all the dealings of the Lord, to the fulfilling of all his words unto the children of men;

we can behold that his words are verified, even at this time, which he spake unto Lehi, saying:

50:20 Blessed art thou and thy children; and they shall be blessed, inasmuch as they shall keep my commandments they shall prosper in the land.

remember, inasmuch as they will not keep my commandments they shall be cut off from the presence of the Lord.

50:21 we see that these promises have been verified to the people of Nephi; for it has been their quarrelings and their contentions, yea, their murderings, and their plunderings, their idolatry, their whoredoms, and their abominations, which were among themselves, which brought upon them their wars and their destructions.

50:22 those who were faithful in keeping the commandments of the Lord were delivered at all times,

thousands of their wicked brethren have been consigned to bondage, or to perish by the sword, or to dwindle in unbelief, and mingle with the Lamanites.

256

Alma 50:26 the people who possessed the land of Morianton did claim a part of the land of Lehi; therefore there began to be a warm contention between them, insomuch that the people of Morianton took up arms against their brethren, and they were

determined by the sword to slay them.

50:29 Morianton put it into their hearts that they should flee to the land which was northward,

50:33 Moroni sent an army, with their camp, to head the people of Morianton, to stop their flight into the land northward.

50:35 Teancum did slay Morianton and defeat his army, and took them prisoners, and returned to the camp of Moroni.

50:36 thus were the people of Morianton brought back.

upon their covenanting to keep the peace they were restored to the land of Morianton, and a union took place between them and the people of Lehi;

they were also restored to their lands.

257

Alma 50:39 the son of Nephihah was appointed to fill the judgment-seat, in the stead of his father;

he was appointed chief judge and governor over the people, with an oath and sacred ordinance to judge righteously,

to keep the peace and the freedom of the people, and to grant unto them their sacred privileges to worship the Lord their God,

to support and maintain the cause of God all his days,

to bring the wicked to justice according to their crime.

50:40 his name was Pahoran.

258

Alma 51:1 they having established peace

51:2 they did not long maintain an entire peace in the land,
there began to be a contention among the people concerning
the chief judge Pahoran;

there were a part of the people who desired that a few
particular points of the law should be altered.

51:3 Pahoran would not alter nor suffer the law to be altered;

51:5 those who were desirous that Pahoran should be dethroned
from the judgment-seat were called king-men, for they were
desirous that the law should be altered in a manner to
overthrow the free government and to establish a king over the
land.

51:6 those who were desirous that Pahoran should remain chief
judge over the land took upon them the name of freemen;

the freemen had sworn or covenanted to maintain their rights
and the privileges of their religion by a free government.

51:7 the voice of the people came in favor of the freemen,

Pahoran retained the judgment-seat, which caused much
rejoicing among the brethren of Pahoran and also many of the
people of liberty,

51:8 those who were in favor of kings were those of high birth, and
they sought to be kings;

and they were supported by those who sought power and
authority over the people.

51:9 Amalickiah had again stirred up the hearts of the people of the
Lamanites against the people of the Nephites,

he had sworn to drink the blood of Moroni.

51:13 when the men who were called king-men had heard that the
Lamanites were coming down to battle against them, they were

glad in their hearts; and they refused to take up arms,

51:14 Moroni saw this, and also saw that the Lamanites were coming into the borders of the land, he was exceedingly wroth because of the stubbornness of those people

51:15 he sent a petition, with the voice of the people, unto the governor of the land, desiring that he should read it, and give him (Moroni) power to compel those dissenters to defend their country or to put them to death.

51:17 Moroni commanded that his army should go against those king-men, to pull down their pride and their nobility and level them with the earth, or they should take up arms and support the cause of liberty.

51:21 thus Moroni put an end to those king-men, that there were not any known by the appellation of king-men; and thus he put an end to the stubbornness and the pride of those people who professed the blood of nobility; but they were brought down to humble themselves like unto their brethren, and to fight valiantly for their freedom from bondage.

259

Alma 53:10 the people of Ammon, who in the beginning, were Lamanites; but by Ammon and his brethren, or rather by the power and word of God, they had been converted unto the Lord;

they had been brought down into the land of Zarahemla,

had ever since been protected by the Nephites.

53:11 because of their oath they had been kept from taking up arms against their brethren;

they had taken an oath that they never would shed blood more;
according to their oath they would have perished; yea, they
would have suffered themselves to have fallen into the hands
of their brethren, had it not been for the pity and the exceeding
love which Ammon and his brethren had had for them.

53:13 when they saw the danger, and the many afflictions and
tribulations which the Nephites bore for them, they were moved
with compassion and were desirous to take up arms in the
defence of their country.

53:14 they were about to break the oath which they had made.

53:15 Helaman feared lest by so doing they should lose their souls;
therefore all those who had entered into this covenant were
compelled to behold their brethren wade through their
afflictions, in their dangerous circumstances

53:16 they had many sons, who had not entered into a covenant that
they would not take their weapons of war to defend themselves
against their enemies;

they did assemble themselves together at this time, as many as
were able to take up arms,

they called themselves Nephites.

53:17 they entered into a covenant to fight for the liberty of the
Nephites,

to protect the land unto the laying down of their lives;

they covenanted that they never would give up their liberty, but
they would fight in all cases to protect the Nephites and
themselves from bondage.

53:18 there were two thousand of those young men, who entered into
this covenant and took their weapons of war to defend their

country.

53:20 they were all young men, and they were exceedingly valiant for courage, and also for strength and activity; but behold, this was not all they were men who were true at all times in whatsoever thing they were entrusted.

53:21 they were men of truth and soberness, for they had been taught to keep the commandments of God and to walk uprightly before him.

260

Alma 54:5 Ammoron, I have written unto you somewhat concerning this war which ye have waged against my people,

which thy brother hath waged against them,

which ye are still determined to carry on after his death.

54:6 I would tell you somewhat concerning the justice of God, the sword of his almighty wrath, which doth hang over you except ye repent and withdraw your armies into your own lands, or the land of your possessions, which is the land of Nephi.

54:7 I would tell you concerning that awful hell that awaits to receive such murderers as thou and thy brother have been,

except ye repent and withdraw your murderous purposes, and return with your armies to your own lands.

54:8 as ye have once rejected these things, and have fought against the people of the Lord, even so I may expect you will do it again.

54:9 we are prepared to receive you;

except you withdraw your purposes, behold, ye will pull down the wrath of that God whom you have rejected upon you, even to your utter destruction.

54:10 as the Lord liveth, our armies shall come upon you except ye withdraw,

ye shall soon be visited with death, for we will retain our cities and our lands;

we will maintain our religion and the cause of our God.

54:11 it supposeth me that I talk to you concerning these things in vain;

it supposeth me that thou art a child of hell;

I will not exchange prisoners, save it be on conditions that ye will deliver up a man and his wife and his children, for one prisoner; if this be the case that ye will do it, I will exchange.

54:12 if you do not this, I will come against you with my armies;

I will arm my women and my children,

I will come against you,

I will follow you even into your own land, which is the land of our first inheritance;

I will give you battle even until you are destroyed from off the face of the earth.

54:13 I am in my anger, and also my people;

ye have sought to murder us, and we have only sought to defend ourselves.

if ye seek to destroy us more we will seek to destroy you;

we will seek our land, the land of our first inheritance.

Alma 54:15 Ammoron, when he had received this epistle, was angry;

he wrote another epistle unto Moroni,

these are the words which he wrote,

54:16 I am the brother of Amalickiah whom ye have murdered.

I will come upon you with my armies for I fear not your threatenings.

54:17 your fathers did wrong their brethren, insomuch that they did rob them of their right to the government when it rightly belonged unto them.

54:18 if ye will lay down your arms, and subject yourselves to be governed by those to whom the government doth rightly belong, then will I cause that my people shall lay down their weapons and shall be at war no more.

54:20 I will grant to exchange prisoners according to your request, gladly, that I may preserve my food for my men of war;

we will wage a war which shall be eternal, either to the subjecting the Nephites to our authority or to their eternal extinction.

54:21 concerning that God whom ye say we have rejected, behold, we know not such a being;

neither do ye;

if it so be that there is such a thing, we know not but that he hath made us as well as you.

54:22 if it so be that there is a devil and a hell, behold will he not send you there to dwell with my brother whom ye have murdered, whom ye have hinted that he hath gone to such a place?

Alma 55:1 when Moroni had received this epistle he was more angry,
he knew that Ammoron had a perfect knowledge of his fraud;
he knew that Ammoron knew that it was not a just cause that
had caused him to wage a war against the people of Nephi.

55:2 I will not exchange prisoners with Ammoron save he will
withdraw his purpose, as I have stated in my epistle;

I will not grant unto him that he shall have any more power than
what he hath got.

55:3 I know the place where the Lamanites do guard my people
whom they have taken prisoners;

as Ammoron would not grant unto me mine epistle, behold, I
will give unto him according to my words;

I will seek death among them until they shall sue for peace.

55:4 he caused that a search should be made among his men, that
perhaps he might find a man who was a descendant of Laman
among them.

55:5 they found one, whose name was Laman;

55:6 Moroni caused that Laman and a small number of his men
should go forth unto the guards who were over the Nephites.

55:8 behold, I am a Lamanite. Behold, we have escaped from the
Nephites, and they sleep; and behold we have taken of their
wine and brought with us.

55:9 Give us of your wine, that we may drink;

55:12 Laman said unto them: You may do according to your desires.

55:13 they did take of the wine freely; and it was pleasant to their
taste, therefore they took of it more freely; and it was strong,

having been prepared in its strength.

55:15 when Laman and his men saw that they were all drunken, and were in a deep sleep, they returned to Moroni and told him all the things that had happened.

55:16 he went to the city Gid, while the Lamanites were in a deep sleep and drunken, and cast in weapons of war unto the prisoners, insomuch that they were all armed;

55:22 when the Lamanites awoke in the morning they beheld that they were surrounded by the Nephites without, and that their prisoners were armed within.

55:23 thus they saw that the Nephites had power over them;

55:24 He took them prisoners of war,

55:25 he did cause the Lamanites, whom he had taken prisoners, that they should commence a labor in strengthening the fortifications round about the city Gid.

55:28 the Nephites began again to be victorious, and to reclaim their rights and their privileges.

55:30 many times did they attempt to administer of their wine to the Nephites, that they might destroy them with poison or with drunkenness.

55:31 the Nephites were not slow to remember the Lord their God in this their time of affliction.

they would not partake of their wine, save they had first given to some of the Lamanite prisoners.

55:32 they were thus cautious that no poison should be administered among them;

Alma 56:1 Moroni received an epistle from Helaman,
56:2 My dearly beloved brother, Moroni, as well in the Lord as in the
tribulations of our warfare;
56:3 of those men whom Ammon brought down out of the land of
Nephi
56:5 two thousand of these young men have taken their weapons of
war, and would that I should be their leader;
have come forth to defend our country.
56:6 ye also know concerning the covenant which their fathers
made, that they would not take up their weapons of war against
their brethren to shed blood.
56:7 they were about to break the covenant which they had made
and take up their weapons of war in our defence.
56:8 I would not suffer them that they should break this covenant
supposing that God would strengthen us, insomuch that we
should not suffer more because of the fulfilling the oath which
they had taken.
56:10 I did join my two thousand sons, (for they are worthy to be
called sons) to the army of Antipus, in which strength Antipus
his army had been reduced by the Lamanites because their
forces
56:11 they have died in the cause of their country and of their God,
yea, and they are happy.
56:15 I found Antipus and his men toiling with their might to fortify the
city.
56:16 Yea, and they were depressed in body as well as in spirit,
56:18 they were compelled by the orders of Ammoron to not come

against the city of Judea, or against us, to battle.

56:19 thus were we favored of the Lord; for had they come upon us in this our weakness they might have perhaps destroyed our little army;

56:20 we had prepared our city and ourselves for defence.

56:22 we kept spies out round about, to watch the movements of the Lamanites, that they might not pass us by night nor by day to make an attack upon our other cities

56:30 we were desirous to bring a stratagem into effect upon them;

56:41 we saw the Lamanites upon us, and we did flee before them.

56:42 But it came to pass that they did not pursue us far before they halted; and it was in the morning of the third day

56:45 never had I seen so great courage, nay, not amongst all the Nephites.

56:46 For as I had ever called them my sons (for they were all of them very young) even so they said unto me: Father, behold our God is with us, and he will not suffer that we should fall; then let us go forth; we would not slay our brethren if they would let us alone; therefore let us go, lest they should overpower the army of Antipus.

56:47 they never had fought, yet they did not fear death;

they did think more upon the liberty of their fathers than they did upon their lives;

they had been taught by their mothers, that if they did not doubt, God would deliver them.

56:48 they rehearsed unto me the words of their mothers, saying: We do not doubt our mothers knew it.

56:51 Antipus had fallen by the sword, and many of his leaders,

because of their weariness, which was occasioned by the speed of their march

56:52 thus were the Lamanites pursuing them with great vigor when Helaman came upon their rear with his two thousand, and began to slay them exceedingly, insomuch that the whole army of the Lamanites halted and turned upon Helaman.

56:53 when the people of Antipus saw that the Lamanites had turned them about, they gathered together their men and came again upon the rear of the Lamanites.

56:54 we, the people of Nephi, the people of Antipus, and I with my two thousand, did surround the Lamanites, and did slay them; yea, insomuch that they were compelled to deliver up their weapons of war and also themselves as prisoners of war.

56:56 to my great joy, there had not one soul of them fallen to the earth;

and they had fought as if with the strength of God; yea, never were men known to have fought with such miraculous strength; and with such mighty power did they fall upon the Lamanites, that they did frighten them; and for this cause did the Lamanites deliver themselves up as prisoners of war.

264

Alma 57:6 we received a supply of provisions, and also an addition to our army, from the land of Zarahemla, and from the land round about, to the number of six thousand men, besides sixty of the sons of the Ammonites who had come to join their brethren, my little band of two thousand.

57:8 with a part of our strong force, we did surround, by night, the city Cumeni, a little before they were to receive a supply of provisions.

57:9 we did camp round about the city for many nights; but we did sleep upon our swords, and keep guards,

57:10 At length their provisions did arrive, and they were about to enter the city by night. And we, instead of being Lamanites, were Nephites; therefore, we did take them and their provisions.

57:12 not many days had passed away before the Lamanites began to lose all hopes of succor; therefore they yielded up the city unto our hands;

57:13 our prisoners were so numerous that, notwithstanding the enormity of our numbers, we were obliged to employ all our force to keep them, or to put them to death.

57:16 we did resolve to send them down to the land of Zarahemla;

57:17 on the morrow they did return.

we did not inquire of them concerning the prisoners; for behold, the Lamanites were upon us, and they returned in season to save us from falling into their hands.

57:18 those men whom we sent with the prisoners did arrive in season to check them, as they were about to overpower us.

57:19 my little band of two thousand and sixty fought most desperately;

they were firm before the Lamanites, and did administer death unto all those who opposed them.

57:20 as the remainder of our army were about to give way before the Lamanites, behold, those two thousand and sixty were firm and

undaunted.

57:21 they did obey and observe to perform every word of command with exactness;

even according to their faith it was done unto them;

I did remember the words which they said unto me that their mothers had taught them.

57:22 it was these my sons, and those men who had been selected to convey the prisoners, to whom we owe this great victory; for it was they who did beat the Lamanites;

57:23 we retained our city Cumeni, nevertheless, we had suffered great loss.

57:25 there were two hundred, out of my two thousand and sixty, who had fainted because of the loss of blood;

according to the goodness of God, and to our great astonishment, and also the joy of our whole army, there was not one soul of them who did perish;

neither was there one soul among them who had not received many wounds.

57:26 their preservation was astonishing to our whole army, that they should be spared while there was a thousand of our brethren who were slain.

we do justly ascribe it to the miraculous power of God, because of their exceeding faith in that which they had been taught to believe

there was a just God, whosoever did not doubt, that they should be preserved by his marvelous power.

57:27 they are young, and their minds are firm,

they do put their trust in God continually.

265

Alma 57:28 we did inquire of Gid concerning the prisoners whom they had started to go down to the land of Zarahemla with.

57:30 these are the words which Gid said unto me:

we did start to go down to the land of Zarahemla with our prisoners.

we did meet the spies of our armies, who had been sent out to watch the camp of the Lamanites.

57:31 they cried unto us, saying Behold, the armies of the Lamanites are marching towards the city of Cumeni; and behold, they will fall upon them, yea, and will destroy our people.

57:32 our prisoners did hear their cries, which caused them to take courage; and they did rise up in rebellion against us.

57:33 they did in a body run upon our swords, in the which, the greater number of them were slain; and the remainder of them broke through and fled from us.

57:34 we took our march with speed towards the city Cumeni;

57:35 blessed is the name of our God;

it is he that has delivered us; yea, that has done this great thing for us.

57:36 I was filled with exceeding joy because of the goodness of God in preserving us, that we might not all perish;

I trust that the souls of them who have been slain have entered into the rest of their God.

Alma 58:1 our next object was to obtain the city of Manti;

they remembered that which we had hitherto done;

58:2 they were so much more numerous than was our army that we durst not go forth and attack them in their strongholds.

58:3 it became expedient that we should employ our men to the maintaining those parts of the land which we had regained of our possessions;

we should wait, that we might receive more strength from the land of Zarahemla and also a new supply of provisions.

58:6 the Lamanites were sallying forth against us from time to time, resolving by stratagem to destroy us;

58:7 we did wait in these difficult circumstances for the space of many months, even until we were about to perish for the want of food.

58:8 we did receive food, which was guarded to us by an army of two thousand men to our assistance;

this is all the assistance which we did receive, to defend ourselves and our country from falling into the hands of our enemies,

58:9 we were grieved and also filled with fear, lest by any means the judgments of God should come upon our land, to our overthrow and utter destruction.

58:10 we did pour out our souls in prayer to God, that he would strengthen us and deliver us out of the hands of our enemies,

also give us strength that we might retain our cities, and our

lands, and our possessions, for the support of our people.

58:11 the Lord our God did visit us with assurances that he would deliver us;

he did speak peace to our souls, and did grant unto us great faith, and did cause us that we should hope for our deliverance in him.

58:12 we did take courage with our small force which we had received, and were fixed with a determination to conquer our enemies, and to maintain our lands, and our possessions, and our wives, and our children, and the cause of our liberty.

58:13 we did go forth with all our might against the Lamanites, who were in the city of Manti; and we did pitch our tents by the wilderness side,

58:15 when they saw that we were not strong, according to our numbers, and fearing that we should cut them off from their support except they should come out to battle against us and kill us, and also supposing that they could easily destroy us with their numerous hosts, therefore they began to make preparations to come out against us to battle.

58:16 I caused that Gid, with a small number of men, should secrete himself in the wilderness, and also that Teomner and a small number of men should secrete themselves also in the wilderness.

58:18 the Lamanites did come out with their numerous army against us.

when they had come and were about to fall upon us with the sword, I caused that my men, those who were with me, should retreat into the wilderness.

58:19 we did pass by in the midst of Gid and Teomner, insomuch that they were not discovered by the Lamanites.

58:20 Gid and Teomner did rise up from their secret places, and did cut off the spies of the Lamanites that they should not return to the city.

58:21 when they had cut them off, they ran to the city and fell upon the guards who were left to guard the city, insomuch that they did destroy them and did take possession of the city.

58:23 we took our course, after having traveled much in the wilderness towards the land of Zarahemla.

58:25 it was night and they did pitch their tents,

58:26 when it was night, I caused that my men should not sleep, but that they should march forward by another way towards the land of Manti.

58:27 we did arrive before them at the city of Manti.

58:29 when the armies of the Lamanites did arrive near the city, and saw that we were prepared to meet them, they were astonished exceedingly and struck with great fear, insomuch that they did flee into the wilderness.

267

Alma 58:32 our armies are small to maintain so great a number of cities and so great possessions.

58:33 we trust in our God who has given us victory over those lands, insomuch that we have obtained those cities and those lands, which were our own.

58:36 we fear that there is some faction in the government, that they

do not send more men to our assistance; for we know that they are more numerous than that which they have sent.

58:37 we trust God will deliver us, notwithstanding the weakness of our armies, yea, and deliver us out of the hands of our enemies.

58:39 those sons of the people of Ammon, of whom I have so highly spoken, are with me in the city of Manti;

the Lord has supported them, yea, and kept them from falling by the sword, insomuch that even one soul has not been slain.

58:40 they have received many wounds;

they stand fast in that liberty wherewith God has made them free;

they are strict to remember the Lord their God from day to day;

they do observe to keep his statutes, and his judgments, and his commandments continually;

their faith is strong in the prophecies concerning that which is to come.

58:41 may the Lord our God, who has redeemed us and made us free, keep you continually in his presence;

that may he favor this people, even that ye may have success in obtaining the possession of all that which the Lamanites have taken from us, which was for our support.

268

Alma 59:1 Moroni had received and had read Helaman's epistle, he was exceedingly rejoiced because of the welfare,

59:3 he immediately sent an epistle to Pahoran,

59:9 knowing that it was easier to keep the city from falling into the hands of the Lamanites than to retake it from them, he supposed that they would easily maintain that city.

59:11 he was exceedingly sorrowful, and began to doubt, because of the wickedness of the people, whether they should not fall into the hands of their brethren.

59:13 Moroni was angry with the government, because of their indifference concerning the freedom of their country.

269

Alma 60:1 he wrote again to the governor of the land, who was Pahoran,

I direct mine epistle to Pahoran, in the city of Zarahemla, who is the chief judge and the governor over the land, and also to all those who have been chosen by this people to govern and manage the affairs of this war.

60:2 I have somewhat to say unto them by the way of condemnation;

60:3 I say unto you that myself, and also my men, and also Helaman and his men, have suffered exceedingly great sufferings; yea, even hunger, thirst, and fatigue, and all manner of afflictions of every kind.

60:5 great has been your neglect towards us.

60:7 Can you think to sit upon your thrones in a state of thoughtless stupor, while your enemies are spreading the work of death around you?

60:8 ye might have succored them,

ye might have sent armies unto them, to have strengthened them,

60:9 ye have withheld your provisions from them,

60:10 my beloved brethren for ye ought to be beloved; yea, and ye ought to have stirred yourselves more diligently for the welfare and the freedom of this people;

ye have neglected them insomuch that the blood of thousands shall come upon your heads for vengeance; yea, for known unto God were all their cries, and all their suffering

60:11 could ye suppose that ye could sit upon your thrones, and because of the exceeding goodness of God ye could do nothing and he would deliver you?

60:12 there are many who have fallen by the sword; and behold it is to your condemnation;

60:13 For the Lord suffereth the righteous to be slain that his justice and judgment may come upon the wicked;

ye need not suppose that the righteous are lost because they are slain;

they do enter into the rest of the Lord their God.

60:14 I fear exceedingly that the judgments of God will come upon this people, because of their exceeding slothfulness,

60:16 at the time we were contending among ourselves, if we had united our strength as we hitherto have done;

had they been true to the cause of our freedom, and united with us,

if we had gone forth against them in the strength of the Lord, we should have dispersed our enemies,

it would have been done, according to the fulfilling of his word.

60:17 they are murdering our people with the sword, yea, our women and our children, and also carrying them away captive, causing

them that they should suffer all manner of afflictions, and this because of the great wickedness of those who are seeking for power and authority,

60:18 We know not but what ye are also traitors to your country.

60:19 is it that ye have neglected us because ye are in the heart of our country and ye are surrounded by security, that ye do not cause food to be sent unto us, and also men to strengthen our armies?

270

Alma 60:20 Have ye forgotten the commandments of the Lord your God?

Yea, have ye forgotten the captivity of our fathers?

Have ye forgotten the many times we have been delivered out of the hands of our enemies?

60:21 do ye suppose that the Lord will still deliver us, while we sit upon our thrones and do not make use of the means which the Lord has provided for us?

60:22 will ye sit in idleness

60:23 Do ye suppose that God will look upon you as guiltless while ye sit still and behold these things?

I would that ye should remember that God has said that the inward vessel shall be cleansed first, and then shall the outer vessel be cleansed also.

60:24 except ye do repent of that which ye have done, and begin to be up and doing, and send forth food and men unto us, and also unto Helaman, that he may support those parts of our country which he has regained, and that we may also recover

the remainder of our possessions in these parts, behold it will be expedient that we contend no more with the Lamanites until we have first cleansed our inward vessel,

271

Alma 60:25 except ye grant mine epistle, and come out and show unto me a true spirit of freedom, and strive to strengthen and fortify our armies, and grant unto them food for their support, behold I will leave a part of my freemen to maintain this part of our land, and I will leave the strength and the blessings of God upon them, that none other power can operate against them

60:26 this because of their exceeding faith, and their patience in their tribulations

60:27 I will come unto you, and if there be any among you that has a desire for freedom, yea, if there be even a spark of freedom remaining, behold I will stir up insurrections among you, even until those who have desires to usurp power and authority shall become extinct.

60:28 I do not fear your power nor your authority,
it is my God whom I fear;
it is according to his commandments that I do take my sword to defend the cause of my country,

it is because of your iniquity that we have suffered so much loss.

60:29 it is time, yea, the time is now at hand, that except ye do bestir yourselves in the defence of your country and your little ones, the sword of justice doth hang over you;

it shall fall upon you and visit you even to your utter destruction.

60:30 I wait for assistance from you;

except ye do administer unto our relief, behold, I come unto you, even in the land of Zarahemla, and smite you with the sword,

that ye can have no more power to impede the progress of this people in the cause of our freedom.

60:31 the Lord will not suffer that ye shall live and wax strong in your iniquities to destroy his righteous people.

60:33 ye do transgress the laws of God,
ye do trample them under your feet.

the Lord saith unto me: If those whom ye have appointed your governors do not repent of their sins and iniquities,
ye shall go up to battle against them.

60:34 I, Moroni, am constrained, according to the covenant which I have made to keep the commandments of my God;

I would that ye should adhere to the word of God,
send speedily unto me of your provisions and of your men, and also to Helaman.

60:35 ye will not do this I come unto you speedily;

God will not suffer that we should perish with hunger;
he will give unto us of your food, even if it must be by the sword.

272

Alma 60:35 Now see that ye fulfil the word of God.

60:36 I seek not for power, but to pull it down.

I seek not for honor of the world, but for the glory of my God,
the freedom and welfare of my country.

273

Alma 61:1 he received an epistle from Pahoran,
61:2 I, Pahoran, who am the chief governor of this land, do send
these words unto Moroni,
I do not joy in your great afflictions,
61:3 there are those who do joy in your afflictions,
they have risen up in rebellion against me, and also those of
my people who are freemen,
61:4 it is those who have sought to take away the judgment-seat
from me that have been the cause of this great iniquity; for they
have used great flattery,
they have led away the hearts of many people, which will be
the cause of sore affliction among us;
they have withheld our provisions, and have daunted our
freemen
61:5 they have driven me out before them,
I have fled to the land of Gideon, with as many men as it were
possible that I could get.

274

Alma 61:6 I have sent a proclamation throughout this part of the land;
they are flocking to us daily, to their arms, in the defence of
their country and their freedom, and to avenge our wrongs.

61:7 they have come unto us, insomuch that those who have risen up in rebellion against us are set at defiance,

they do fear us and durst not come out against us to battle.

61:8 they have appointed a king over them,

he hath written unto the king of the Lamanites,

he hath agreed to maintain the city of Zarahemla, which maintenance he supposeth will enable the Lamanites to conquer the remainder of the land,

275

Alma 61:9 you have censured me, but it mattereth not; I am not angry, but do rejoice in the greatness of your heart.

I, Pahoran, do not seek for power, save only to retain my judgment-seat

that I may preserve the rights and the liberty of my people.

My soul standeth fast in that liberty

God hath made us free.

61:10 we will resist wickedness even unto bloodshed.

We would not shed the blood of the Lamanites if they would stay in their own land.

61:11 We would not shed the blood of our brethren if they would not rise up in rebellion and take the sword against us.

61:12 We would subject ourselves to the yoke of bondage if it were requisite with the justice of God, or if he should command us so to do.

61:13 we should put our trust in him, and he will deliver us.

61:14 let us resist evil,

whatsoever evil we cannot resist with our words, yea, such as rebellions and dissensions, let us resist them with our swords,
that we may retain our freedom,
that we may rejoice in the great privilege of our church, and in the cause of our Redeemer and our God.

61:15 give unto them power to conduct the war in that part of the land, according to the Spirit of God,
the Spirit of freedom which is in them.

61:17 Gather together whatsoever force ye can
we will go speedily against those dissenters, in the strength of our God according to the faith which is in us.

61:18 we will take possession of the city of Zarahemla,
that we may obtain more food to send forth unto Lehi and Teancum;
we will go forth against them in the strength of the Lord,
we will put an end to this great iniquity.

61:20 ye have said, except they repent the Lord hath commanded you that ye should go against them.

276

Alma 62:1 when Moroni had received this epistle his heart did take courage, and was filled with exceedingly great joy
he was not also a traitor to the freedom and cause of his country.

62:2 he did also mourn exceedingly because of the iniquity of those who had driven Pahoran from the judgment-seat,
because of those who had rebelled against their country and

also their God.

62:4 he did raise the standard of liberty in whatsoever place he did enter, and gained whatsoever force he could

62:6 uniting his forces with those of Pahoran they became exceedingly strong,

62:8 Pahoran was restored to his judgment-seat.

277

Alma 62:9 the men of Pachus received their trial, according to the law, and also those king-men who had been taken and cast into prison; and they were executed according to the law;

62:10 it became expedient that this law should be strictly observed for the safety of their country;

whosoever was found denying their freedom was speedily executed according to the law.

62:12 Moroni immediately caused that provisions should be sent, and also an army of six thousand men should be sent unto Helaman, to assist him in preserving that part of the land.

62:13 he also caused that an army of six thousand men, with a sufficient quantity of food, should be sent to the armies of Lehi and Teancum.

278

Alma 62:15 as they were marching towards the land, they took a large body of men of the Lamanites, and slew many of them, and took their provisions and their weapons of war.

62:16 after they had taken them, they caused them to enter into a covenant that they would no more take up their weapons of war against the Nephites.

62:17 when they had entered into this covenant they sent them to dwell with the people of Ammon,

62:33 the armies of the Lamanites were all gathered together, insomuch that they were all in one body

62:35 the Nephites and the Lamanites also were weary because of the greatness of the march;

62:36 Teancum in his anger did go forth into the camp of the Lamanites, and did let himself down over the walls of the city.

he did find the king;

he did cast a javelin at him, which did pierce him near the heart.

the king did awaken his servants before he died, insomuch that they did pursue Teancum, and slew him.

62:37 when Lehi and Moroni knew that Teancum was dead they were exceedingly sorrowful;

he had been a man who had fought valiantly for his country, yea, a true friend to liberty;

he had suffered very many exceedingly sore afflictions.

he was dead, and had gone the way of all the earth.

62:38 Moroni marched forth on the morrow, and came upon the Lamanites,

they did slay them with a great slaughter;

they did drive them out of the land;

they did flee,

they did not return at that time against the Nephites.

62:42 Helaman returned to the place of his inheritance;

62:44 Helaman did take upon him again to preach unto the people the word of God;

because of so many wars and contentions it had become expedient that a regulation should be made again in the church.

62:45 Helaman and his brethren went forth, and did declare the word of God with much power

unto the convincing of many people of their wickedness, which did cause them to repent of their sins and to be baptized unto the Lord their God.

62:46 they did establish again the church of God, throughout all the land.

62:47 regulations were made concerning the law.

62:48 the people of Nephi began to prosper again in the land, and began to multiply and to wax exceedingly strong again in the land.

they began to grow exceedingly rich.

62:49 notwithstanding their riches, or their strength, or their prosperity, they were not lifted up in the pride of their eyes;

neither were they slow to remember the Lord their God;

they did humble themselves exceedingly before him.

62:50 they did remember how great things the Lord had done for them,

he had delivered them from death, and from bonds, and from

prisons, and from all manner of afflictions and he had delivered them out of the hands of their enemies.

62:51 they did pray unto the Lord their God continually,
the Lord did bless them, according to his word,
they did wax strong and prosper in the land.

280

Helaman 1:5 Pahoran was appointed by the voice of the people to be chief judge and a governor over the people of Nephi.

1:7 Paanchi, and that part of the people that were desirous that he should be their governor, was exceedingly wroth;
he was about to flatter away those people to rise up in rebellion against their brethren.

1:8 he was taken, and was tried according to the voice of the people, and condemned unto death;
he had raised up in rebellion and sought to destroy the liberty of the people.

1:9 they sent forth one Kishkumen, even to the judgment-seat of Pahoran, and murdered Pahoran as he sat upon the judgment-seat.

1:11 they all entered into a covenant, yea, swearing by their everlasting Maker, that they would tell no man that Kishkumen had murdered Pahoran.

1:12 Kishkumen was not known among the people of Nephi, for he was in disguise at the time that he murdered Pahoran.

Kishkumen and his band, who had covenanted with him, did mingle themselves among the people,

they all could not be found;
as many as were found were condemned unto death.

1:13 Pacumeni was appointed, according to the voice of the people,
to be a chief judge and a governor over the people,
it was according to his right.

281

Helaman 1:14 the Lamanites had gathered together an innumerable army of
men,

1:15 they were led by a man whose name was Coriantumr;
he was a descendant of Zarahemla;
he was a dissenter from among the Nephites;
he was a large and a mighty man.

1:16 being a mighty man, could stand against the Nephites, with his
strength and also with his great wisdom, insomuch that by
sending him forth he should gain power over the Nephites

1:18 because of so much contention and so much difficulty in the
government, that they had not kept sufficient guards in the land
of Zarahemla;

they had supposed that the Lamanites durst not come into the
heart of their lands to attack that great city Zarahemla.

1:19 Coriantumr did march forth at the head of his numerous host,
and came upon the inhabitants of the city,

1:20 Coriantumr did cut down the watch by the entrance of the city,
and did march forth with his whole army into the city,
they did slay every one who did oppose them,
they did take possession of the whole city.

1:21 Pacumeni, who was the chief judge, did flee before
Coriantumr,

Coriantumr did smite him against the wall,

1:22 he had obtained the possession of the strongest hold in all the
land, his heart took courage insomuch that he was about to go
forth against all the land.

1:23 he did not tarry in the land of Zarahemla,

he did march forth with a large army, even towards the city of
Bountiful;

that he might obtain the north parts of the land.

1:24 he did march forth, giving them no time to assemble
themselves together save it were in small bodies;

1:25 this march of Coriantumr through the center of the land gave
Moronihah great advantage over them,

1:26 Moronihah had caused that their strong armies should
maintain those parts round about by the borders.

1:27 they had come into the center of the land, and had taken the
capital city which was the city of Zarahemla,

marching through the most capital parts of the land, slaying the
people with a great slaughter, both men, women, and children,

1:28 when Moronihah had discovered this, he immediately sent
forth Lehi with an army round about to head them before they
should come to the land Bountiful.

1:29 he did head them before they came to the land Bountiful, and
gave unto them battle,

they began to retreat back towards the land of Zarahemla.

1:30 Moronihah did head them in their retreat, and did give unto
them battle, insomuch that it became an exceedingly bloody

battle;

1:31 the Lamanites could not retreat either way,

1:32 thus had Coriantumr plunged the Lamanites into the midst of the Nephites, insomuch that they were in the power of the Nephites,

1:33 Moronihah took possession of the city of Zarahemla again, and caused that the Lamanites who had been taken prisoners should depart out of the land in peace.

282

Helaman 2:2 Helaman, who was the son of Helaman, was appointed to fill the judgment-seat, by the voice of the people.

2:3 Kishkumen, who had murdered Pahoran, did lay wait to destroy Helaman also;

he was upheld by his band, who had entered into a covenant that no one should know his wickedness.

2:4 there was one Gadianton, who was exceedingly expert in many words, and also in his craft, to carry on the secret work of murder and of robbery;

he became the leader of the band of Kishkumen.

2:5 he did flatter them, and also Kishkumen, that if they would place him in the judgment-seat he would grant unto those who belonged to his band that they should be placed in power and authority among the people;

2:6 one of the servants of Helaman, having been out by night, and having obtained, through disguise, a knowledge of those plans which had been laid by this band to destroy Helaman

2:7 he met Kishkumen, and he gave unto him a sign;
Kishkumen made known unto him the object of his desire,
desiring that he would conduct him to the judgment-seat that
he might murder Helaman.

2:8 when the servant of Helaman had known all the heart of
Kishkumen, and how that it was his object to murder,
it was the object of all those who belonged to his band to
murder, and to rob, and to gain power,
the servant of Helaman said unto Kishkumen: Let us go forth
unto the judgment-seat.

2:9 this did please Kishkumen exceedingly, for he did suppose that
he should accomplish his design;

the servant of Helaman, as they were going forth unto the
judgment-seat, did stab Kishkumen even to the heart,
he fell dead without a groan.

he ran and told Helaman all the things which he had seen, and
heard, and done.

283

Alma 2:10 Helaman did send forth to take this band of robbers and secret
murderers, that they might be executed according to the law.

2:11 when Gadianton had found that Kishkumen did not return he
feared lest that he should be destroyed;

he caused that his band should follow him.

they took their flight out of the land, by a secret way, into the
wilderness;

2:13 this Gadianton did prove the overthrow, yea, almost the entire

destruction of the people of Nephi.

284

Alma 3:1 there was no contention among the people of Nephi save it were a little pride which was in the church, which did cause some little dissensions among the people, which affairs were settled

285

Alma 3:3 there was much contention and many dissensions;
 there were an exceedingly great many who departed out of the land of Zarahemla,

3:4 they did travel to an exceedingly great distance, insomuch that they came to large bodies of water

3:6 no part of the land was desolate, save it were for timber;

3:7 the people who went forth became exceedingly expert in the working of cement;

3:8 they did multiply and spread, and did go forth from the land southward to the land northward,

3:9 the people who were in the land northward did dwell in tents, and in houses of cement, and they did suffer whatsoever tree should spring up upon the face of the land that it should grow up,

 that in time they might have timber to build their houses, yea, their cities, and their temples, and their synagogues, and their sanctuaries, and all manner of their buildings.

3:10 as timber was exceedingly scarce in the land northward, they did send forth much by the way of shipping.

3:11 they did enable the people in the land northward that they might build many cities, both of wood and of cement.

3:12 there were many of the people of Ammon, who were Lamanites by birth, did also go forth into this land.

3:14 a hundredth part of the proceedings of this people,
the account of the Lamanites and of the Nephites,
their wars, and contentions, and dissensions,
their preaching, and their prophecies, and their shipping and
their building of ships,
their building of temples, and of synagogues
their sanctuaries, and their righteousness,
their wickedness, and their murders,
their robbings,
their plundering, and all manner of abominations and
whoredoms,
cannot be contained in this work.

286

Helaman 3:15 there are many books and many records of every kind, and they have been kept chiefly by the Nephites.

3:16 they have been handed down from one generation to another by the Nephites,

until they have fallen into transgression
have been murdered, plundered, and hunted, and driven forth,
and slain, and scattered upon the face of the earth,

mixed with the Lamanites until they are no more called the Nephites,
becoming wicked, and wild, and ferocious, yea, even becoming Lamanites.

287

Helaman 3:17 there had been great contentions, and disturbances, and wars, and dissensions, among the people of Nephi.

3:20 Helaman did fill the judgment-seat with justice and equity;
he did observe to keep the statutes, and the judgments, and the commandments of God;

he did do that which was right in the sight of God continually;
he did walk after the ways of his father,
he did prosper in the land.

3:21 he had two sons. He gave unto the eldest the name of Nephi, and unto the youngest, the name of Lehi.

they began to grow up unto the Lord.

3:22 the wars and contentions began to cease, in a small degree, among the people of the Nephites,

3:23 in the forty and ninth year of the reign of the judges, there was continual peace established in the land, all save it were the secret combinations which Gadianton the robber had established in the more settled parts of the land, which at that time were not known unto those who were at the head of government; therefore they were not destroyed out of the land.

288

Helaman 3:24 there was exceedingly great prosperity in the church,
there were thousands who did join themselves unto the church
and were baptized unto repentance.

3:25 so great was the prosperity of the church, and so many the
blessings which were poured out upon the people, that even
the high priests and the teachers were themselves astonished
beyond measure.

3:26 the work of the Lord did prosper unto the baptizing and uniting
to the church of God, many souls,

3:27 the Lord is merciful unto all who will, in the sincerity of their
hearts, call upon his holy name.

3:28 the gate of heaven is open unto all, even to those who will
believe on the name of Jesus Christ, who is the Son of God.

3:29 lay hold upon the word of God, which is quick and powerful,
which shall divide asunder all the cunning and the snares and
the wiles of the devil,

lead the man of Christ in a strait and narrow course across that
everlasting gulf of misery which is prepared to engulf the
wicked

3:30 And land their souls,
their immortal souls, at the right hand of God in the kingdom of
heaven,

to sit down with Abraham, and Isaac, and with Jacob, and with
all our holy fathers,

to go no more out.

3:32 there was peace and exceedingly great joy
there was continual peace and great joy

Helaman 3:33 there was peace also, save it were the pride which began to enter into the church

not into the church of God, but into the hearts of the people who professed to belong to the church of God

3:34 they were lifted up in pride, even to the persecution of many of their brethren.

this was a great evil, which did cause the more humble part of the people to suffer great persecutions, and to wade through much affliction.

3:35 they did fast and pray oft,
 did wax stronger and stronger in their humility,
 firmer and firmer in the faith of Christ,
 filling their souls with joy and consolation,
 to the purifying and the sanctification of their hearts,
 which sanctification cometh because of their yielding their hearts unto God.

Helaman 3:36 the fifty and second year ended in peace also,
 save it were the exceedingly great pride which had gotten into the hearts of the people;

it was because of their exceedingly great riches
 their prosperity in the land;
 it did grow upon them from day to day.

3:37 Helaman died, and his eldest son Nephi began to reign in his stead.

he did fill the judgment-seat with justice and equity;

he did keep the commandments of God, and did walk in the ways of his father.

4:1 there were many dissensions in the church,
there was also a contention among the people, insomuch that there was much bloodshed.

4:2 the rebellious part were slain and driven out of the land,
they did go unto the king of the Lamanites.

4:3 they did endeavor to stir up the Lamanites to war against the Nephites;

the Lamanites were exceedingly afraid,

they would not hearken to the words of those dissenters.

4:4 in the fifty and sixth year of the reign of the judges, there were dissenters who went up from the Nephites unto the Lamanites;
and they succeeded with those others in stirring them up to anger against the Nephites;

they were all that year preparing for war.

4:5 they did come down against the Nephites to battle,

they did commence the work of death;

they succeeded in obtaining possession of the land of Zarahemla;

4:7 they did fortify against the Lamanites, from the west sea, even unto the east; it being a day s journey for a Nephite,

4:8 thus those dissenters of the Nephites, with the help of a numerous army of the Lamanites, had obtained all the possession of the Nephites which was in the land southward.

4:9 in the sixtieth year of the reign of the judges, Moronihah did succeed with his armies in obtaining many parts of the land;

4:10 in the sixty and first year of the reign of the judges they succeeded in regaining even the half of all their possessions.

291

Helaman 4:11 this great loss of the Nephites, and the great slaughter which was among them, would not have happened had it not been for their wickedness and their abomination which was among them;

it was among those also who professed to belong to the church of God.

4:12 it was because of the pride of their hearts,
because of their exceeding riches,

it was because of their oppression to the poor, withholding their food from the hungry, withholding their clothing from the naked,
and smiting their humble brethren upon the cheek,

making a mock of that which was sacred, denying the spirit of prophecy and of revelation,

murdering,

plundering, lying, stealing, committing adultery,

rising up in great contentions, and deserting away into the land of Nephi, among the Lamanites

4:13 because of this their great wickedness, and their boastings in their own strength,

they were left in their own strength;

they did not prosper,

but were afflicted and smitten, and driven before the Lamanites, until they had lost possession of almost all their lands.

292

Helaman 4:14 Moronihah did preach many things unto the people because of their iniquity,

also Nephi and Lehi,

and did prophesy many things unto them concerning their iniquities,

and what should come unto them if they did not repent of their sins.

4:15 they did repent,

inasmuch as they did repent they did begin to prosper.

4:16 when Moronihah saw that they did repent he did venture to lead them forth from place to place,

from city to city, even until they had regained the one-half of their property

293

Helaman 4:18 Moronihah could obtain no more possessions over the Lamanites.

4:19 they did abandon their design to obtain the remainder of their lands,

Moronihah did employ all his armies in maintaining those parts which he had taken.

4:20 the Nephites were in great fear, lest they should be overpowered, and trodden down, and slain, and destroyed.

4:21 they began to remember the prophecies of Alma, also the words of Mosiah; they saw that they had been a stiffnecked people, they had set at naught the commandments of God.

4:22 they had altered and trampled under their feet the laws of Mosiah, or that which the Lord commanded him to give to the people;

their laws had become corrupted, they had become a wicked people, they were wicked even like unto the Lamanites.

4:23 because of their iniquity the church had begun to dwindle; they began to disbelieve in the spirit of prophecy and in the spirit of revelation;

the judgments of God did stare them in the face.

4:24 they saw that they had become weak, like unto their brethren, the Lamanites,

the Spirit of the Lord did no more preserve them; it had withdrawn from them because the Spirit of the Lord doth not dwell in unholy temples

4:25 the Lord did cease to preserve them by his miraculous and matchless power, for they had fallen into a state of unbelief and awful wickedness;

they saw that the Lamanites were exceedingly more numerous than they, and except they should cleave unto the Lord their God, they must unavoidably perish.

4:26 they saw that the strength of the Lamanites was as great as

their strength, even man for man.

they fallen into this great transgression;

they become weak, because of their transgression, in the
space of not many years.

294

Helaman 5:1 Nephi delivered up the judgment-seat to a man whose name
was Cezoram.

5:2 their laws and their governments were established by the voice
of the people,

they who chose evil were more numerous than they who chose
good,

they were ripening for destruction, for the laws had become
corrupted.

5:3 they were a stiffnecked people,

they could not be governed by the law nor justice, save it were
to their destruction.

5:4 Nephi had become weary because of their iniquity;

he yielded up the judgment-seat, and took it upon him to
preach the word of God all the remainder of his days,

his brother Lehi also, all the remainder of his days;

5:5 they remembered the words which their father Helaman spake
unto them.

295*

Helaman 5:6 I desire that ye should remember to keep the commandments

of God;

I would that ye should declare unto the people these words.

I have given unto you the names of our first parents who came out of the land of Jerusalem;

when you remember your names ye may remember them;

when ye remember them ye may remember their works;

when ye remember their works ye may know how that it is said, and also written, that they were good.

5:7 ye should do that which is good,

5:8 that ye may not do these things that ye may boast,

that ye may do these things to lay up for yourselves a treasure in heaven,

which is eternal, and which fadeth not away;

that ye may have that precious gift of eternal life,

which we have reason to suppose hath been given to our fathers.

5:9 remember, remember, my sons, the words which king

Benjamin spake unto his people;

remember that there is no other way nor means whereby man can be saved,

only through the atoning blood of Jesus Christ,

remember that he cometh to redeem the world.

5:10 remember also the words which Amulek spake unto Zeezrom,

the Lord surely should come to redeem his people,

he should not come to redeem them in their sins, but to redeem them from their sins.

5:11 he hath power given unto him from the Father to redeem them from their sins because of repentance;

he hath sent his angels to declare the tidings of the conditions of repentance, which bringeth unto the power of the Redeemer, unto the salvation of their souls.

5:12 remember, remember that it is upon the rock of our Redeemer, who is Christ, the Son of God, that ye must build your foundation;

when the devil shall send forth his mighty winds,

his shafts in the whirlwind,

when all his hail and his mighty storm shall beat upon you, it shall have no power over you to drag you down to the gulf of misery and endless wo, because of the rock upon which ye are built, which is a sure foundation, a foundation whereon if men build they cannot fall.

296

Helaman 5:13 these were the words which Helaman taught to his sons;

he did teach them many things which are not written, and also many things which are written.

5:14 they did remember his words;

they went forth, keeping the commandments of God,

to teach the word of God among all the people of Nephi,

5:17 they did preach with great power, insomuch that they did confound many of those dissenters who had gone over from the Nephites,

they came forth and did confess their sins and were baptized unto repentance, and immediately returned to the Nephites to endeavor to repair unto them the wrongs which they had done.

Helaman 5:18 Nephi and Lehi did preach unto the Lamanites with such great power and authority,

they had power and authority, given unto them that they might speak,

they also had what they should speak given unto them

5:19 they did speak unto the great astonishment of the Lamanites, to the convincing them,

there were eight thousand of the Lamanites who were in the land of Zarahemla and round about baptized unto repentance, and were convinced of the wickedness of the traditions of their fathers.

5:21 they were taken by an army of the Lamanites and cast into prison;

5:22 And after they had been cast into prison many days without food, behold, they went forth into the prison to take them that they might slay them.

5:23 Nephi and Lehi were encircled about as if by fire, even insomuch that they durst not lay their hands upon them for fear lest they should be burned.

Nephi and Lehi were not burned;

they were as standing in the midst of fire and were not burned.

5:24 their hearts did take courage.

5:25 the Lamanites durst not lay their hands upon them; neither durst they come near unto them, but stood as if they were struck dumb with amazement.

298*

Helaman 5:26 Nephi and Lehi did stand forth and began to speak unto them,
it is God that has shown unto you this marvelous thing,
ye cannot lay your hands on us to slay us.

5:27 when they had said these words, the earth shook exceedingly,
the walls of the prison did shake as if they were about to tumble
to the earth;

they that were in the prison were Lamanites and Nephites who
were dissenters.

5:28 they were overshadowed with a cloud of darkness,
an awful solemn fear came upon them.

5:29 there came a voice as if it were above the cloud of darkness,
saying: Repent ye, repent ye, and seek no more to destroy my
servants whom I have sent unto you to declare good tidings.

5:30 when they heard this voice, and beheld that it was not a voice
of thunder,
neither was it a voice of a great tumultuous noise,
it was a still voice of perfect mildness, as if it had been a
whisper, and it did pierce even to the very soul

5:31 notwithstanding the mildness of the voice, behold the earth
shook exceedingly,

the walls of the prison trembled again, as if it were about to
tumble to the earth;

the cloud of darkness, which had overshadowed them, did not
disperse

5:32 the voice came again, saying: Repent ye, repent ye, for the

kingdom of heaven is at hand;

seek no more to destroy my servants.

the earth shook again,

the walls trembled.

5:33 the third time the voice came, and did speak unto them
marvelous words which cannot be uttered by man;

the walls did tremble again,

the earth shook as if it were about to divide asunder.

5:34 the Lamanites could not flee because of the cloud of darkness
which did overshadow them;

they were immovable because of the fear which did come upon
them.

5:35 there was one among them who was a Nephite by birth, who
had once belonged to the church of God but had dissented
from them.

5:36 he turned him about,

he saw through the cloud of darkness the faces of Nephi and
Lehi;

they did shine exceedingly, even as the faces of angels.

he beheld that they did lift their eyes to heaven;

they were in the attitude as if talking or lifting their voices to
some being whom they beheld.

5:37 this man did cry unto the multitude, that they might turn and
look.

there was power given unto them that they did turn and look;

they did behold the faces of Nephi and Lehi.

5:38 they said unto the man: Behold, what do all these things mean,
who is it with whom these men do converse?

5:39 Aminadab said unto them: They do converse with the angels of God.

5:40 What shall we do, that this cloud of darkness may be removed from overshadowing us?

5:41 Aminadab said unto them: You must repent,
cry unto the voice, even until ye shall have faith in Christ, who was taught unto you by Alma, and Amulek, and Zeezrom;
when ye shall do this, the cloud of darkness shall be removed from overshadowing you.

5:42 they all did begin to cry unto the voice of him who had shaken the earth;
they did cry even until the cloud of darkness was dispersed.

5:43 they cast their eyes about, and saw that the cloud of darkness was dispersed from overshadowing them,
they saw that they were encircled about, yea every soul, by a pillar of fire.

5:44 Nephi and Lehi were in the midst of them;
they were encircled about; yea, they were as if in the midst of a flaming fire, yet it did harm them not, neither did it take hold upon the walls of the prison;
they were filled with that joy which is unspeakable and full of glory.

5:45 the Holy Spirit of God did come down from heaven, and did enter into their hearts,
they were filled as if with fire,
they could speak forth marvelous words.

5:46 there came a voice unto them,
a pleasant voice, as if it were a whisper,

5:47 Peace, peace be unto you, because of your faith in my Well Beloved, who was from the foundation of the world.

5:48 they cast up their eyes as if to behold from whence the voice came;

they saw the heavens open;

angels came down out of heaven and ministered unto them.

5:49 there were about three hundred souls who saw and heard these things;

they were bidden to go forth and marvel not, neither should they doubt.

5:50 they did go forth, and did minister unto the people, declaring throughout all the regions round about all the things which they had heard and seen,

the more part of the Lamanites were convinced of them, because of the greatness of the evidences which they had received.

5:51 as many as were convinced did lay down their weapons of war, and also their hatred and the tradition of their fathers.

5:52 they did yield up unto the Nephites the lands of their possession.

299

Helaman 6:1 Lamanites had become, the more part of them, a righteous people,

their righteousness did exceed that of the Nephites because of their firmness and their steadiness in the faith.

6:2 there were many of the Nephites who had become hardened

and impenitent and grossly wicked,

they did reject the word of God and all the preaching and prophesying which did come among them.

6:3 the people of the church did have great joy because of the conversion of the Lamanites,

because of the church of God, which had been established among them.

they did fellowship one with another and did rejoice one with another, and did have great joy.

6:4 many of the Lamanites did come down into the land of Zarahemla, and did declare unto the people of the Nephites the manner of their conversion,

did exhort them to faith and repentance.

6:5 many did preach with exceedingly great power and authority, unto the bringing down many of them into the depths of humility,

to be the humble followers of God and the Lamb.

6:6 many of the Lamanites did go into the land northward;

Nephi and Lehi went into the land northward, to preach unto the people.

6:7 there was peace in all the land,

the Nephites did go into whatsoever part of the land they would, whether among the Nephites or the Lamanites.

6:8 the Lamanites did also go whithersoever they would, whether it were among the Lamanites or among the Nephites;

they did have free intercourse one with another, to buy and to sell, and to get gain, according to their desire.

6:9 they became exceedingly rich, both the Lamanites and the

Nephites;

they did have an exceeding plenty of gold, and of silver, and of all manner of precious metals,

6:10 the land south was called Lehi and the land north was called Mulek, which was after the son of Zedekiah; for the Lord did bring Mulek into the land north, and Lehi into the land south.

6:11 there was all manner of gold in both these lands, and of silver, and of precious ore of every kind;

there were also curious workmen, who did work all kinds of ore and did refine it;

thus they did become rich.

6:12 They did raise grain in abundance, both in the north and in the south;

they did flourish exceedingly, both in the north and in the south.

they did multiply and wax exceedingly strong in the land.

they did raise many flocks and herds, yea, many fatlings.

6:13 their women did toil and spin, and did make all manner of cloth, of fine-twined linen and cloth of every kind, to clothe their nakedness.

6:14 in the sixty and fifth year they did also have great joy and peace,

much preaching and many prophecies concerning that which was to come.

300

Helaman 6:15 in the sixty and sixth year of the reign of the judges, behold, Cezoram was murdered by an unknown hand as he sat upon

the judgment-seat.

his son, who had been appointed by the people in his stead,
was also murdered.

6:16 the people began to grow exceedingly wicked again.

6:17 the Lord had blessed them so long with the riches of the world
that they had not been stirred up to anger, to wars, nor to
bloodshed;

they began to set their hearts upon their riches;

they began to seek to get gain that they might be lifted up one
above another;

they began to commit secret murders, and to rob and to
plunder, that they might get gain.

6:18 those murderers and plunderers were a band who had been
formed by Kishkumen and Gadianon.

6:20 when the Lamanites found that there were robbers among
them they were exceedingly sorrowful;

they did use every means in their power to destroy them off the
face of the earth.

6:21 Satan did stir up the hearts of the more part of the Nephites,

they did unite with those bands of robbers,

did enter into their covenants and their oaths, that they would
protect and preserve one another in whatsoever difficult
circumstances they should be placed,

that they should not suffer for their murders, and their
plunderings, and their stealings.

6:22 they did have their signs, yea, their secret signs, and their
secret words;

that they might distinguish a brother who had entered into the

covenant, that whatsoever wickedness his brother should do he should not be injured by his brother, nor by those who did belong to his band, who had taken this covenant.

6:23 thus they might murder, and plunder, and steal, and commit whoredoms and all manner of wickedness, contrary to the laws of their country and also the laws of their God.

6:24 whosoever of those who belonged to their band should reveal unto the world of their wickedness and their abominations, should be tried, not according to the laws of their country, but according to the laws of their wickedness, which had been given by Gadianton and Kishkumen.

301*

Helaman 6:25 it is these secret oaths and covenants which Alma commanded his son should not go forth unto the world, lest they should be a means of bringing down the people unto destruction.

6:26 those secret oaths and covenants did not come forth unto Gadianton from the records which were delivered unto Helaman;

they were put into the heart of Gadianton by that same being who did entice our first parents to partake of the forbidden fruit

6:27 that same being who did plot with Cain, that if he would murder his brother Abel it should not be known unto the world.

he did plot with Cain and his followers from that time forth.

6:28 that same being who put it into the hearts of the people to build

a tower sufficiently high that they might get to heaven.

that same being who led on the people who came from that tower into this land; who spread the works of darkness and abominations over all the face of the land, until he dragged the people down to an entire destruction, and to an everlasting hell.

6:29 that same being who put it into the heart of Gadianton to still carry on the work of darkness, and of secret murder;

he has brought it forth from the beginning of man even down to this time.

6:30 it is he who is the author of all sin.

he doth carry on his works of darkness and secret murder, doth hand down their plots, and their oaths, and their covenants,

their plans of awful wickedness, from generation to generation according as he can get hold upon the hearts of the children of men.

6:31 he had got great hold upon the hearts of the Nephites; they had become exceedingly wicked; the more part of them had turned out of the way of righteousness,

did trample under their feet the commandments of God, did turn unto their own ways, and did build up unto themselves idols of their gold and their silver.

6:32 all these iniquities did come unto them in the space of not many years,

6:33 they did grow in their iniquities to the great sorrow and lamentation of the righteous.

6:34 the Nephites did begin to dwindle in unbelief, and grow in wickedness and abominations,

the Lamanites began to grow exceedingly in the knowledge of their God;

they did begin to keep his statutes and commandments, and to walk in truth and uprightness before him.

6:35 the Spirit of the Lord began to withdraw from the Nephites, because of the wickedness and the hardness of their hearts.

6:36 the Lord began to pour out his Spirit upon the Lamanites, because of their easiness and willingness to believe in his words.

6:37 the Lamanites did hunt the band of robbers of Gadianton; they did preach the word of God among the more wicked part of them,

this band of robbers was utterly destroyed from among the Lamanites.

6:38 the Nephites did build them up and support them, beginning at the more wicked part of them, until they had overspread all the land of the Nephites,

had seduced the more part of the righteous until they had come down to believe in their works and partake of their spoils, and to join with them in their secret murders and combinations.

6:39 they did obtain the sole management of the government, they did trample under their feet and smite and rend and turn their backs upon the poor and the meek, and the humble followers of God.

6:40 they were in an awful state, and ripening for an everlasting destruction.

Helaman 7:1 Nephi, the son of Helaman, returned to the land of Zarahemla from the land northward.

7:2 he had been forth among the people who were in the land northward,

did preach the word of God unto them,

did prophesy many things unto them;

7:3 they did reject all his words,

he could not stay among them, but returned again unto the land of his nativity.

7:4 seeing the people in a state of such awful wickedness,

those Gadianon robbers filling the judgment-seats

having usurped the power and authority of the land; laying aside the commandments of God,

not in the least aright before him;

doing no justice unto the children of men;

7:5 Condemning the righteous because of their righteousness;

letting the guilty and the wicked go unpunished because of their money;

held in office at the head of government, to rule and do according to their wills, that they might get gain and glory of the world,

that they might the more easily commit adultery, and steal, and kill, and do according to their own wills

7:6 this great iniquity had come upon the Nephites, in the space of not many years;

when Nephi saw it, his heart was swollen with sorrow within his breast;

303

Helaman 7:6: he did exclaim in the agony of his soul:

7:7 Oh, that I could have had my days in the days when my father Nephi first came out of the land of Jerusalem,

that I could have joyed with him in the promised land;

then were his people easy to be entreated,

firm to keep the commandments of God, and slow to be led to do iniquity;

they were quick to hearken unto the words of the Lord

7:8 then would my soul have had joy in the righteousness of my brethren.

7:9 I am consigned that these are my days, and that my soul shall be filled with sorrow because of this the wickedness of my brethren.

7:10 it was upon a tower, which was in the garden of Nephi, which was by the highway which led to the chief market, which was in the city of Zarahemla;

Nephi had bowed himself upon the tower which was in his garden, which tower was also near unto the garden gate by which led the highway.

7:11 there were certain men passing by and saw Nephi as he was pouring out his soul unto God upon the tower;

they ran and told the people what they had seen,

the people came together in multitudes that they might know

the cause of so great mourning for the wickedness of the people.

7:12 when Nephi arose he beheld the multitudes of people who had gathered together.

7:13 he opened his mouth and said unto them:
why have ye gathered yourselves together?
That I may tell you of your iniquities?

7:14 I have got upon my tower that I might pour out my soul unto my God, because of the exceeding sorrow of my heart, which is because of your iniquities!

7:15 because of my mourning and lamentation ye have gathered yourselves together, and do marvel;
ye have great need to marvel;
ye ought to marvel because ye are given away that the devil has got so great hold upon your hearts.

7:16 how could you have given away to the enticing of him who is seeking to hurl away your souls down to everlasting misery and endless wo?

7:17 repent ye, repent ye! Why will ye die?
Turn ye, turn ye unto the Lord your God.
Why has he forsaken you?

7:18 It is because you have hardened your hearts;
ye will not hearken unto the voice of the good shepherd;
ye have provoked him to anger against you.

7:19 instead of gathering you, except ye will repent, behold, he shall scatter you forth that ye shall become meat for dogs and wild beasts.

7:20 how could you have forgotten your God in the very day that he

has delivered you?

7:21 it is to get gain, to be praised of men,
that ye might get gold and silver.

ye have set your hearts upon the riches and the vain things of
this world, for the which ye do murder, and plunder, and steal,
and bear false witness against your neighbor, and do all
manner of iniquity.

7:22 wo shall come unto you except ye shall repent.

if ye will not repent, behold, this great city, and also all those
great cities which are round about, which are in the land of our
possession, shall be taken away that ye shall have no place in
them;

the Lord will not grant unto you strength, as he has hitherto
done, to withstand against your enemies.

7:23 thus saith the Lord:

I will not show unto the wicked of my strength, to one more than
the other, save it be unto those who repent of their sins, and
hearken unto my words.

I would that ye should behold, my brethren,
it shall be better for the Lamanites than for you except ye shall
repent.

7:24 they are more righteous than you,

they have not sinned against that great knowledge which ye
have received;

the Lord will be merciful unto them;

he will lengthen out their days and increase their seed, even
when thou shalt be utterly destroyed except thou shalt repent.

7:25 wo be unto you because of that great abomination which has

come among you;

ye have united yourselves unto it, yea, to that secret band
which was established by Gadianton!

7:26 wo shall come unto you because of that pride which ye have
suffered to enter your hearts, which has lifted you up beyond
that which is good because of your exceedingly great riches!

7:27 wo be unto you because of your wickedness and
abominations!

7:28 except ye repent ye shall perish;
even your lands shall be taken from you,
ye shall be destroyed from off the face of the earth.

7:29 I do not say that these things shall be, of myself, because it is
not of myself that I know these things;

I know that these things are true because the Lord God has
made them known unto me,

304

Helaman 8:1 there were men who were judges, who also belonged to the
secret band of Gadianton, and they were angry,

they cried out against him, saying unto the people: Why do ye
not seize upon this man and bring him forth, that he may be
condemned according to the crime which he has done?

8:2 Why seest thou this man, and hearest him revile against this
people and against our law?

8:3 Nephi had spoken unto them concerning the corruptness of
their law;

many things did Nephi speak which cannot be written;

nothing did he speak which was contrary to the commandments of God.

8:4 those judges were angry with him because he spake plainly unto them concerning their secret works of darkness;

nevertheless, they durst not lay their own hands upon him, they feared the people lest they should cry out against them.

8:5 Therefore they did cry unto the people, saying: Why do you suffer this man to revile against us?

he doth condemn all this people, even unto destruction;

also that these our great cities shall be taken from us, that we shall have no place in them.

8:6 A we know that this is impossible, for behold, we are powerful, and our cities great,

therefore our enemies can have no power over us.

8:7 they did stir up the people to anger against Nephi, and raised contentions among them;

there were some who did cry out: Let this man alone, for he is a good man,

those things which he saith will surely come to pass except we repent;

8:8 all the judgments will come upon us which he has testified unto us;

we know that he has testified aright unto us concerning our iniquities.

they are many, and he knoweth as well all things which shall befall us as he knoweth of our iniquities;

8:9 behold, if he had not been a prophet he could not have testified concerning those things.

8:10 those people who sought to destroy Nephi were compelled because of their fear, that they did not lay their hands on him;

305*

Helaman 8:10 he began again to speak unto them, seeing that he had gained favor in the eyes of some, insomuch that the remainder of them did fear.

8:11 have ye not read that God gave power unto one man, even Moses, to smite upon the waters of the Red Sea, and they parted hither and thither, insomuch that the Israelites, who were our fathers, came through upon dry ground, and the waters closed upon the armies of the Egyptians and swallowed them up?

8:12 if God gave unto this man such power, then why should ye dispute among yourselves, and say that he hath given unto me no power whereby I may know concerning the judgments that shall come upon you except ye repent?

8:13 ye not only deny my words, but ye also deny all the words which have been spoken by our fathers,

also the words which were spoken by this man, Moses, who had such great power given unto him,

the words which he hath spoken concerning the coming of the Messiah.

8:14 did he not bear record that the Son of God should come?

as he lifted up the brazen serpent in the wilderness, even so shall he be lifted up who should come.

8:15 as many as should look upon that serpent should live, even so

as many as should look upon the Son of God with faith, having a contrite spirit, might live, even unto that life which is eternal.

8:16 Moses did not only testify of these things, but also all the holy prophets, from his days even to the days of Abraham.

8:17 Abraham saw of his coming, and was filled with gladness and did rejoice.

8:18 Abraham not only knew of these things, but there were many before the days of Abraham who were called by the order of God;

after the order of his Son; and this that it should be shown unto the people, a great many thousand years before his coming, that even redemption should come unto them.

8:19 since the days of Abraham there have been many prophets that have testified these things;

the prophet Zenos did testify boldly; for the which he was slain.

8:20 Zenock, and also Ezias, and also Isaiah, and Jeremiah, (Jeremiah being that same prophet who testified of the destruction of Jerusalem)

we know that Jerusalem was destroyed according to the words of Jeremiah.

O then why not the Son of God come, according to his prophecy?

8:21 will you dispute that Jerusalem was destroyed?

Will ye say that the sons of Zedekiah were not slain, all except it were Mulek?

do ye not behold that the seed of Zedekiah are with us, and they were driven out of the land of Jerusalem?

8:22 Our father Lehi was driven out of Jerusalem because he

testified of these things.

Nephi also testified of these things, and also almost all of our fathers, even down to this time;

they have testified of the coming of Christ, and have looked forward, and have rejoiced in his day which is to come.

8:23 he is God, and he is with them, and he did manifest himself unto them, that they were redeemed by him;

they gave unto him glory, because of that which is to come.

8:24 now, seeing ye know these things and cannot deny them except ye shall lie, therefore in this ye have sinned,

ye have rejected all these things, notwithstanding so many evidences which ye have received;

ye have received all things, both things in heaven, and all things which are in the earth, as a witness that they are true.

8:25 ye have rejected the truth, and rebelled against your holy God;

instead of laying up for yourselves treasures in heaven, where nothing doth corrupt, and where nothing can come which is unclean, ye are heaping up for yourselves wrath against the day of judgment.

8:26 even at this time ye are ripening, because of your murders and your fornication and wickedness, for everlasting destruction;

except ye repent it will come unto you soon.

8:27 it is now even at your doors;

go ye in unto the judgment-seat, and search; and behold, your judge is murdered, and he lieth in his blood;

he hath been murdered by his brother, who seeketh to sit in the judgment-seat.

8:28 they both belong to your secret band, whose author is

Gadianton and the evil one who seeketh to destroy the souls of men.

9:1 when Nephi had spoken these words, certain men who were among them ran to the judgment-seat;

306

Helaman 9:2 now we will know of a surety whether this man be a prophet and God hath commanded him to prophesy such marvelous things unto us.

we do not believe that he is a prophet;

if this thing which he has said concerning the chief judge be true, that he be dead, then will we believe that the other words which he has spoken are true.

9:3 they ran in their might, and came in unto the judgment-seat; the chief judge had fallen to the earth, and did lie in his blood.

9:4 they were astonished exceedingly, insomuch that they fell to the earth;

they had not believed the words which Nephi had spoken concerning the chief judge.

9:6 immediately when the judge had been murdered he being stabbed by his brother by a garb of secrecy, and he fled, and the servants ran and told the people, raising the cry of murder among them;

9:7 the people did gather themselves together unto the place of the judgment-seat

to their astonishment they saw those five men who had fallen to the earth.

9:8 the people knew nothing concerning the multitude who had gathered together at the garden of Nephi;

These men are they who have murdered the judge, and God has smitten them that they could not flee from us.

9:9 they laid hold on them, and bound them and cast them into prison.

there was a proclamation sent abroad that the judge was slain, and that the murderers had been taken and were cast into prison.

9:10 on the morrow the people did assemble themselves together to mourn and to fast, at the burial of the great chief judge who had been slain.

9:11 those judges who were at the garden of Nephi, and heard his words, were also gathered together at the burial.

307

Helaman 9:12 they inquired among the people, saying: Where are the five who were sent to inquire concerning the chief judge whether he was dead?

Concerning this five whom ye say ye have sent, we know not; but there are five who are the murderers, whom we have cast into prison.

9:13 the judges desired that they should be brought; and they were brought, and behold they were the five who were sent;

the judges inquired of them to know, concerning the matter, they told them all that they had done, saying:

9:14 We ran and came to the place of the judgment-seat, and when

we saw all things even as Nephi had testified,
we were astonished insomuch that we fell to the earth;
when we were recovered from our astonishment, behold they
cast us into prison.

9:15 as for the murder of this man, we know not who has done it;
and only this much we know, we ran and came according as ye
desired, and behold he was dead, according to the words of
Nephi.

9:16 the judges did expound the matter unto the people, and did cry
out against Nephi,

Behold, we know that this Nephi must have agreed with some
one to slay the judge,

then he might declare it unto us, that he might convert us unto
his faith,

that he might raise himself to be a great man, chosen of God,
and a prophet.

9:17 we will detect this man, and he shall confess his fault and make
known unto us the true murderer of this judge.

9:18 the five were liberated on the day of the burial.

they did rebuke the judges in the words which they had spoken
against Nephi, and did contend with them one by one,
insomuch that they did confound them.

9:19 they caused that Nephi should be taken and bound and
brought before the multitude,

they began to question him in divers ways that they might cross
him,

that they might accuse him to death

9:20 Saying unto him: Thou art confederate; who is this man that

hath done this murder?

here is money; and also we will grant unto thee thy life if thou wilt tell us, and acknowledge the agreement which thou hast made with him.

308

Helaman 9:21 Nephi said unto them: O ye fools, ye uncircumcised of heart, ye blind, and ye stiffnecked people, do ye know how long the Lord your God will suffer you that ye shall go on in this your way of sin?

9:22 ye ought to begin to howl and mourn, because of the great destruction which at this time doth await you, except ye shall repent.

9:23 ye say that I have agreed with a man that he should murder Seezoram, our chief judge.

9:25 I will show unto you another sign, and see if ye will in this thing seek to destroy me.

9:26 Go to the house of Seantum, who is the brother of Seezoram, and say unto him

9:27 Has Nephi, the pretended prophet, who doth prophesy so much evil concerning this people, agreed with thee, in the which ye have murdered Seezoram, who is your brother?

9:28 he shall say unto you, Nay.

9:29 ye shall say unto him: Have ye murdered your brother?

9:30 he shall stand with fear, and wist not what to say.

he shall deny unto you; and he shall make as if he were astonished;

he shall declare unto you that he is innocent.

9:31 ye shall examine him, and ye shall find blood upon the skirts of his cloak.

9:32 when ye have seen this, ye shall say: From whence cometh this blood? Do we not know that it is the blood of your brother?

9:33 then shall he tremble, and shall look pale, even as if death had come upon him.

9:34 then shall ye say: Because of this fear and this paleness which has come upon your face, behold, we know that thou art guilty.

9:35 then shall greater fear come upon him;

then shall he confess unto you, and deny no more that he has done this murder.

9:36 then shall he say unto you, that I, Nephi, know nothing concerning the matter save it were given unto me by the power of God.

then shall ye know that I am an honest man, and that I am sent unto you from God.

309

Helaman 9:37 they went and did, even according as Nephi had said unto them.

the words which he had said were true;

he did deny;

he did confess.

9:38 he was brought to prove that he himself was the very murderer, insomuch that the five were set at liberty, and also was Nephi.

9:39 there were some of the Nephites who believed on the words of

Nephi;

there were some also, who believed because of the testimony of the five, for they had been converted while they were in prison.

9:40 there were some among the people, who said that Nephi was a prophet.

9:41 there were others who said: Behold, he is a god, for except he was a god he could not know of all things.

he has told us the thoughts of our hearts, and also has told us things; and even he has brought unto our knowledge the true murderer of our chief judge.

10:1 there arose a division among the people, insomuch that they divided hither and thither and went their ways, leaving Nephi alone, as he was standing in the midst of them.

10:2 Nephi went his way towards his own house, pondering upon the things which the Lord had shown unto him.

10:3 much cast down because of the wickedness of the people of the Nephites, their secret works of darkness, and their murderings, and their plunderings, and all manner of iniquities

310

Helaman 10:3 as he was thus pondering in his heart, behold, a voice came unto him saying:

10:4 Blessed art thou, Nephi, for those things which thou hast done; for I have beheld how thou hast with unwearyingness declared the word, which I have given unto thee, unto this people.

thou hast not feared them, and hast not sought thine own life,
but hast sought my will, and to keep my commandments.

10:5 because thou hast done this with such unweariness,
behold, I will bless thee forever;

I will make thee mighty in word and in deed, in faith and in
works;

even that all things shall be done unto thee according to thy
word,

thou shalt not ask that which is contrary to my will.

10:6 thou art Nephi, and I am God.

I declare it unto thee in the presence of mine angels, that ye
shall have power over this people, and shall smite the earth
with famine, and with pestilence, and destruction, according to
the wickedness of this people.

10:7 I give unto you power, that whatsoever ye shall seal on earth
shall be sealed in heaven; and whatsoever ye shall loose on
earth shall be loosed in heaven;

thus shall ye have power among this people.

10:8 thus, if ye shall say unto this temple it shall be rent in twain, it
shall be done.

10:9 if ye shall say unto this mountain, Be thou cast down and
become smooth, it shall be done.

10:10 if ye shall say that God shall smite this people, it shall come to
pass.

10:11 I command you, that ye shall go and declare unto this people,
that thus saith the Lord God, who is the Almighty:

Except ye repent ye shall be smitten, even unto destruction.

Helaman 10:12 when the Lord had spoken these words unto Nephi, he did stop and did not go unto his own house, but did return unto the multitudes who were scattered about upon the face of the land, and began to declare unto them the word of the Lord which had been spoken unto him, concerning their destruction if they did not repent.

10:13 notwithstanding that great miracle which Nephi had done in telling them concerning the death of the chief judge, they did harden their hearts and did not hearken unto the words of the Lord.

10:14 Nephi did declare unto them the word of the Lord, saying: Except ye repent, thus saith the Lord, ye shall be smitten even unto destruction.

10:15 when Nephi had declared unto them the word, behold, they did still harden their hearts and would not hearken unto his words; they did revile against him, and did seek to lay their hands upon him that they might cast him into prison.

10:16 the power of God was with him, and they could not take him to cast him into prison, he was taken by the Spirit and conveyed away out of the midst of them.

10:17 he did go forth in the Spirit, from multitude to multitude, declaring the word of God, even until he had declared it unto them all, or sent it forth among all the people.

10:18 they would not hearken unto his words; there began to be contentions, insomuch that they were

divided against themselves and began to slay one another with the sword.

312

Helaman 11:1 the contentions did increase, insomuch that there were wars throughout all the land among all the people of Nephi.

11:2 it was this secret band of robbers who did carry on this work of destruction and wickedness.

11:3 Nephi did cry unto the Lord, saying:

11:4 O Lord, do not suffer that this people shall be destroyed by the sword;

O Lord, rather let there be a famine in the land, to stir them up in remembrance of the Lord their God,

perhaps they will repent and turn unto thee.

11:5 so it was done, according to the words of Nephi.

there was a great famine upon the land, among all the people of Nephi.

the work of destruction did cease by the sword but became sore by famine.

11:6 For the earth was smitten that it was dry, and did not yield forth grain in the season of grain;

the whole earth was smitten, even among the Lamanites as well as among the Nephites,

they were smitten that they did perish by thousands in the more wicked parts of the land.

11:7 the people saw that they were about to perish by famine, and they began to remember the Lord their God;

they began to remember the words of Nephi.

11:8 the people began to plead with their chief judges and their leaders, that they would say unto Nephi: Behold, we know that thou art a man of God, and therefore cry unto the Lord our God that he turn away from us this famine, lest all the words which thou hast spoken concerning our destruction be fulfilled.

11:9 the judges did say unto Nephi, according to the words which had been desired.

Nephi saw that the people had repented and did humble themselves in sackcloth,

313

Helaman 11:9 he cried again unto the Lord, saying:

11:10 O Lord, behold this people repenteth;

they have swept away the band of Gadianton from amongst them insomuch that they have become extinct, and they have concealed their secret plans in the earth.

11:11 O Lord, because of this their humility wilt thou turn away thine anger,

let thine anger be appeased in the destruction of those wicked men whom thou hast already destroyed.

11:12 O Lord, wilt thou turn away thine anger, yea, thy fierce anger, and cause that this famine may cease in this land.

11:13 O Lord, wilt thou hearken unto me, and cause that it may be done according to my words, and send forth rain upon the face of the earth, that she may bring forth her fruit, and her grain in the season of grain.

11:14 O Lord, thou didst hearken unto my words when I said, Let there be a famine, that the pestilence of the sword might cease;

I know that thou wilt, even at this time, hearken unto my words, thou saidst that: If this people repent I will spare them.

11:15 O Lord, and thou seest that they have repented, because of the famine and the pestilence and destruction which has come unto them.

11:16 O Lord, wilt thou turn away thine anger, and try again if they will serve thee?

O Lord, thou canst bless them according to thy words which thou hast said.

314

Helaman 11:17 the Lord did turn away his anger from the people, and caused that rain should fall upon the earth,

it did bring forth her fruit in the season of her fruit.

it did bring forth her grain in the season of her grain.

11:18 the people did rejoice and glorify God, the whole face of the land was filled with rejoicing; they did no more seek to destroy Nephi, but they did esteem him as a great prophet, and a man of God, having great power and authority given unto him from God.

11:19 Lehi, his brother, was not a whit behind him as to things pertaining to righteousness.

11:20 the people of Nephi began to prosper again in the land, began to build up their waste places, began to multiply and spread, even until they did cover the

whole face of the land,

11:21 the church did spread throughout the face of all the land;

the more part of the people, both the Nephites and the

Lamanites, did belong to the church;

they did have exceedingly great peace in the land;

11:22 they had peace in the seventy and eighth year, save it were a

few contentions concerning the points of doctrine which had

been laid down by the prophets.

11:23 in the seventy and ninth year there began to be much strife.

Nephi and Lehi, and many of their brethren who knew concerning the true points of doctrine, having many revelations daily, therefore they did preach unto the people, insomuch that they did put an end to their strife in that same year.

315

Helaman 11:24 there were a certain number of the dissenters from the people

of Nephi, who had some years before gone over unto the

Lamanites, and taken upon themselves the name of

Lamanites,

also a certain number who were real descendants of the

Lamanites, being stirred up to anger by them, or by those

dissenters, therefore they commenced a war with their

brethren.

11:25 they did commit murder and plunder;

then they would retreat back into the mountains, and into the

wilderness and secret places, hiding themselves that they

could not be discovered, receiving daily an addition to their

numbers,

there were dissenters that went forth unto them.

11:26 in the space of not many years, they became an exceedingly great band of robbers;

they did search out all the secret plans of Gadianton;

they became robbers of Gadianton.

11:27 these robbers did make great havoc, yea, even great destruction among the people of Nephi, and also among the people of the Lamanites.

11:28 it was expedient that there should be a stop put to this work of destruction;

they sent an army of strong men into the wilderness and upon the mountains to search out this band of robbers, and destroy them.

11:29 they were driven back even into their own lands.

316

Helaman 11:30 they did go forth again against this band of robbers, and did destroy many;

they were also visited with much destruction.

11:31 they were again obliged to return out of the wilderness and out of the mountains unto their own lands, because of the exceeding greatness of the numbers of those robbers who infested the mountains and the wilderness.

11:32 the robbers did still increase and wax strong, insomuch that they did defy the whole armies of the Nephites, and also of the Lamanites;

they did cause great fear to come unto the people upon all the face of the land.

11:33 they did visit many parts of the land, and did do great destruction unto them; yea, did kill many, and did carry away others captive into the wilderness,

more especially their women and their children.

11:34 this great evil, which came unto the people because of their iniquity, did stir them up again in remembrance of the Lord their God.

11:36 they began again to forget the Lord their God.

they began to wax strong in iniquity.

they did not mend their ways.

11:37 they did wax stronger and stronger in their pride, and in their wickedness;

thus they were ripening again for destruction.

317

Helaman 12:1 we can behold how false, and also the unsteadiness of the hearts of the children of men;

we can see that the Lord in his great infinite goodness doth bless and prosper those who put their trust in him.

12:2 we may see at the very time when he doth prosper his people, yea, in the increase of their fields, their flocks and their herds, and in gold, and in silver, and in all manner of precious things of every kind and art; sparing their lives, and delivering them out of the hands of their enemies; softening the hearts of their enemies that they should not declare wars against them;

doing all things for the welfare and happiness of his people;
then is the time that they do harden their hearts, and do forget
the Lord their God, and do trample under their feet the Holy
One

this because of their ease, and their exceedingly great
prosperity.

318

Helaman 12:3 except the Lord doth chasten his people with many afflictions,
except he doth visit them with death and with terror, and with
famine and with all manner of pestilence, they will not
remember him.

12:4 how foolish, and how vain, and how evil, and devilish, and how
quick to do iniquity, and how slow to do good, are the children
of men;

how quick to hearken unto the words of the evil one, and to set
their hearts upon the vain things of the world!

12:5 how quick to be lifted up in pride;
how quick to boast, and do all manner of that which is iniquity;
how slow are they to remember the Lord their God, and to give
ear unto his counsels,

how slow to walk in wisdom's paths!

12:6 they do not desire that the Lord their God, who hath created
them, should rule and reign over them; notwithstanding his
great goodness and his mercy towards them,

they do set at naught his counsels, and they will not that he
should be their guide.

Helaman 12:7 O how great is the nothingness of the children of men;
even they are less than the dust of the earth.

12:8 the dust of the earth moveth hither and thither, to the dividing
asunder, at the command of our great and everlasting God.

12:9 at his voice do the hills and the mountains tremble and quake.

12:10 by the power of his voice they are broken up, and become
smooth, yea, even like unto a valley.

12:11 by the power of his voice doth the whole earth shake;

12:12 by the power of his voice, do the foundations rock, even to the
very center.

12:13 if he say unto the earth Move it is moved.

12:14 if he say unto the earth Thou shalt go back, that it lengthen
out the day for many hours it is done;

12:15 according to his word the earth goeth back, and it appeareth
unto man that the sun standeth still;

for surely it is the earth that moveth and not the sun.

12:16 if he say unto the waters of the great deep Be thou dried up
it is done.

12:17 if he say unto this mountain Be thou raised up, and come
over and fall upon that city, that it be buried up behold it is
done.

12:18 if a man hide up a treasure in the earth, and the Lord shall
say Let it be accursed, because of the iniquity of him who
hath hid it up behold, it shall be accursed.

12:19 if the Lord shall say Be thou accursed, that no man shall find

thee from this time henceforth and forever behold, no man
getteth it henceforth and forever.

12:20 if the Lord shall say unto a man Because of thine iniquities,
thou shalt be accursed forever it shall be done.

12:21 if the Lord shall say Because of thine iniquities thou shalt be
cut off from my presence he will cause that it shall be so.

12:22 wo unto him to whom he shall say this, for it shall be unto him
that will do iniquity, and he cannot be saved;

for this cause, that men might be saved, hath repentance been
declared.

12:23 blessed are they who will repent and hearken unto the voice of
the Lord their God;

these are they that shall be saved.

12:24 may God grant, in his great fulness, that men might be brought
unto repentance and good works, that they might be restored
unto grace for grace, according to their works.

12:25 I would that all men might be saved.

But we read that in the great and last day there are some who
shall be cast out,

who shall be cast off from the presence of the Lord;

12:26 who shall be consigned to a state of endless misery,
fulfilling the words which say:

They that have done good shall have everlasting life;

they that have done evil shall have everlasting damnation.

320

Helaman 13:1 the Nephites did still remain in wickedness, yea, in great

wickedness,

the Lamanites did observe strictly to keep the commandments of God, according to the law of Moses.

13:2 there was one Samuel, a Lamanite, came into the land of Zarahemla, and began to preach unto the people.

he did preach, many days, repentance unto the people,
they did cast him out, and he was about to return to his own land.

13:3 the voice of the Lord came unto him,
he should return again, and prophesy unto the people whatsoever things should come into his heart.

13:4 they would not suffer that he should enter into the city;
he went and got upon the wall thereof, and stretched forth his hand and cried with a loud voice, and prophesied unto the people whatsoever things the Lord put into his heart.

321

Helaman 13:5 he said unto them:

I, Samuel, a Lamanite, do speak the words of the Lord which he doth put into my heart;

he hath put it into my heart to say unto this people that the sword of justice hangeth over this people;

four hundred years pass not away save the sword of justice falleth upon this people.

13:6 heavy destruction awaiteth this people,
it surely cometh unto this people,
nothing can save this people save it be repentance and faith

on the Lord Jesus Christ, who surely shall come into the world,
and shall suffer many things and shall be slain for his people.

13:7 an angel of the Lord hath declared it unto me,
he did bring glad tidings to my soul.

I was sent unto you to declare it unto you also,
that ye might have glad tidings;
ye would not receive me.

13:8 Therefore, thus saith the Lord:

Because of the hardness of the hearts of the people of the
Nephites, except they repent I will take away my word from
them,

I will withdraw my Spirit from them,
I will suffer them no longer,
I will turn the hearts of their brethren against them.

13:9 four hundred years shall not pass away before I will cause that
they shall be smitten;

I will visit them with the sword and with famine and with
pestilence.

13:10 I will visit them in my fierce anger, and there shall be those of
the fourth generation who shall live, of your enemies, to behold
your utter destruction;

this shall surely come except ye repent, saith the Lord;
those of the fourth generation shall visit your destruction.

322

Helaman 13:11 if ye will repent and return unto the Lord your God I will turn
away mine anger, saith the Lord;

thus saith the Lord, blessed are they who will repent and turn unto me,

wo unto him that repenteth not.

13:12 wo unto this great city of Zarahemla; for behold, it is because of those who are righteous that it is saved;

wo unto this great city, for I perceive, saith the Lord, that there are many, yea, even the more part of this great city, that will harden their hearts against me, saith the Lord.

13:13 blessed are they who will repent, for them will I spare.

if it were not for the righteous who are in this great city, behold, I would cause that fire should come down out of heaven and destroy it.

13:14 it is for the righteous sake that it is spared.

the time cometh, saith the Lord, that when ye shall cast out the righteous from among you, then shall ye be ripe for destruction;

wo be unto this great city, because of the wickedness and abominations which are in her.

13:15 wo be unto the city of Gideon, for the wickedness and abominations which are in her.

13:16 wo be unto all the cities which are in the land round about, which are possessed by the Nephites, because of the wickedness and abominations which are in them.

13:17 a curse shall come upon the land, saith the Lord of Hosts, because of the people's sake who are upon the land, because of their wickedness and their abominations.

Helaman:13:18 it shall come to pass, saith the Lord of Hosts, yea, our great and true God,

 whoso shall hide up treasures in the earth shall find them again no more, because of the great curse of the land,

 save he be a righteous man and shall hide it up unto the Lord.

13:19 I will, saith the Lord, that they shall hide up their treasures unto me;

 cursed be they who hide not up their treasures unto me;

 none hideth up their treasures unto me save it be the righteous;

 he that hideth not up his treasures unto me, cursed is he, and also the treasure, and none shall redeem it because of the curse of the land.

13:20 the day shall come that they shall hide up their treasures,

 because they have set their hearts upon riches;

 because they have set their hearts upon their riches, and will hide up their treasures when they shall flee before their enemies;

 because they will not hide them up unto me, cursed be they and also their treasures;

 in that day shall they be smitten, saith the Lord.

13:21 Behold ye, the people of this great city, and hearken unto my words;

 hearken unto the words which the Lord saith;

 he saith that ye are cursed because of your riches,

 also are your riches cursed because ye have set your hearts upon them, and have not hearkened unto the words of him who gave them unto you.

13:22 Ye do not remember the Lord your God in the things with which

he hath blessed you,

ye do always remember your riches, not to thank the Lord your God for them;

your hearts are not drawn out unto the Lord, but they do swell with great pride, unto boasting, and unto great swelling, envyings, strifes, malice, persecutions and murders, and all manner of iniquities.

13:23 For this cause hath the Lord God caused that a curse should come upon the land,

also upon your riches,
this because of your iniquities.

13:24 wo unto this people, because of this time which has arrived, ye do cast out the prophets, and do mock them, and cast stones at them, and do slay them, and do all manner of iniquity unto them, even as they did of old time.

13:25 when ye talk, ye say: If our days had been in the days of our fathers of old, we would not have slain the prophets;

we would not have stoned them, and cast them out.

324

Helaman 13:26 ye are worse than they; for as the Lord liveth, if a prophet come among you and declareth unto you the word of the Lord, which testifieth of your sins and iniquities, ye are angry with him, and cast him out and seek all manner of ways to destroy him;

you will say that he is a false prophet, and that he is a sinner, and of the devil, because he testifieth that your deeds are evil.

13:27 if a man shall come among you and shall say: Do this, and

there is no iniquity; do that and ye shall not suffer;

Walk after the pride of your own hearts; yea, walk after the
pride of your eyes, and do whatsoever your heart desireth

ye will receive him, and say that he is a prophet.

13:28 ye will lift him up, and ye will give unto him of your substance;

ye will give

him with costly apparel;

because he speaketh flattering words unto you,

he saith that all is well,

ye will not find fault with him.

325

Helaman 13:29 O ye wicked and ye perverse generation;

ye hardened and ye stiffnecked people,

how long will ye suppose that the Lord will suffer you?

how long will ye suffer yourselves to be led by foolish and blind
guides?

how long will ye choose darkness rather than light?

13:30 the anger of the Lord is already kindled against you;

he hath cursed the land because of your iniquity.

13:31 the time cometh that he curseth your riches, that they become
slippery, that ye cannot hold them;

in the days of your poverty ye cannot retain them.

13:32 in the days of your poverty ye shall cry unto the Lord;

in vain shall ye cry, for your desolation is already come upon
you,

your destruction is made sure;

then shall ye weep and howl in that day, saith the Lord of Hosts.

then shall ye lament, and say:

13:33 O that I had repented, and had not killed the prophets, and stoned them, and cast them out.

in that day ye shall say: O that we had remembered the Lord our God

in the day that he gave us our riches, and then they would not have become slippery that we should lose them;

our riches are gone from us.

13:34 we lay a tool here and on the morrow it is gone;

our swords are taken from us in the day we have sought them for battle.

13:35 we have hid up our treasures and they have slipped away from us, because of the curse of the land.

326

Helaman 13:36 O that we had repented in the day that the word of the Lord came unto us;

the land is cursed,

all things are become slippery, and we cannot hold them.

13:37 we are surrounded by demons,

we are encircled about by the angels of him who hath sought to destroy our souls.

our iniquities are great.

O Lord, canst thou not turn away thine anger from us?

this shall be your language in those days.

13:38 your days of probation are past;
ye have procrastinated the day of your salvation until it is
everlastingly too late,
your destruction is made sure;
ye have sought all the days of your lives for that which ye could
not obtain;
ye have sought for happiness in doing iniquity, which thing is
contrary to the nature of that righteousness which is in our
great and Eternal Head.

13:39 O ye people of the land, that ye would hear my words!
I pray that the anger of the Lord be turned away from you,
that ye would repent and be saved.

327*

Helaman 14:1 Samuel, the Lamanite, did prophesy a great many more things
which cannot be written.

14:2 he said unto them:
I give unto you a sign;
for five years more cometh, and behold, then cometh the Son
of God to redeem all those who shall believe on his name.
14:3 this will I give unto you for a sign at the time of his coming;
there shall be great lights in heaven, insomuch that in the night
before he cometh there shall be no darkness,
insomuch that it shall appear unto man as if it was day.
14:4 there shall be one day and a night and a day, as if it were one
day and there were no night;
this shall be unto you for a sign;

ye shall know of the rising of the sun and also of its setting;
they shall know of a surety that there shall be two days and a
night; nevertheless the night shall not be darkened;
it shall be the night before he is born.

14:5 there shall a new star arise, such an one as ye never have
beheld;

this also shall be a sign unto you.

14:6 there shall be many signs and wonders in heaven.

14:7 ye shall all be amazed, and wonder, insomuch that ye shall fall
to the earth.

14:8 whosoever shall believe on the Son of God, the same shall
have everlasting life.

14:9 thus hath the Lord commanded me, by his angel,

I should come and tell this thing unto you;

he hath commanded that I should prophesy these things unto
you;

he hath said unto me: Cry unto this people, repent and prepare
the way of the Lord.

328*

Helaman 14:10 because I am a Lamanite, and have spoken unto you the
words which the Lord hath commanded me,

because it was hard against you, ye are angry with me and do
seek to destroy me, and have cast me out from among you.

14:11 ye shall hear my words, for, for this intent have I come up upon
the walls of this city,

that ye might hear and know of the judgments of God which do

await you because of your iniquities,

that ye might know the conditions of repentance;

14:12 that ye might know of the coming of Jesus Christ, the Son of God, the Father of heaven and of earth, the Creator of all things from the beginning;

that ye might know of the signs of his coming, to the intent that ye might believe on his name.

14:13 if ye believe on his name

ye will repent of all your sins, that thereby ye may have a remission of them through his merits.

329*

Helaman 14:14 another sign I give unto you, yea, a sign of his death.

14:15 he surely must die that salvation may come;

it behooveth him and cometh expedient that he dieth, to bring to pass the resurrection of the dead, that thereby men may be brought into the presence of the Lord.

14:16 this death bringeth to pass the resurrection, and redeemeth all mankind from the first death

that spiritual death; for all mankind, by the fall of Adam being cut off from the presence of the Lord, are considered as dead, both as to things temporal and to things spiritual.

14:17 the resurrection of Christ redeemeth mankind, yea, even all mankind, and bringeth them back into the presence of the Lord.

14:18 it bringeth to pass the condition of repentance,

whosoever repenteth the same is not hewn down and cast into the fire;

whosoever repenteth not is hewn down and cast into the fire;
and there cometh upon them again a spiritual death, yea, a
second death, for they are cut off again as to things pertaining
to righteousness.

14:19 Therefore repent ye, repent ye, lest by knowing these things
and not doing them ye shall suffer yourselves to come under
condemnation, and ye are brought down unto this second
death.

330

Helaman 14:20 as I said unto you concerning another sign, a sign of his death,
in that day that he shall suffer death the sun shall be darkened
and refuse to give his light unto you;

also the moon and the stars; and there shall be no light upon
the face of this land, even from the time that he shall suffer
death, for the space of three days, to the time that he shall rise
again from the dead.

14:21 at the time that he shall yield up the ghost there shall be
thunderings and lightnings for the space of many hours,
the earth shall shake and tremble;

the rocks which are upon the face of this earth, which are both
above the earth and beneath, which ye know at this time are
solid, or the more part of it is one solid mass, shall be broken
up;

14:22 they shall be rent in twain, and shall ever after be found in
seams and in cracks, and in broken fragments upon the face of
the whole earth,

14:23 there shall be great tempests,
there shall be many mountains laid low, like unto a valley,
there shall be many places which are now called valleys which
shall become mountains, whose height is great.

14:24 many highways shall be broken up, and many cities shall
become desolate.

14:25 many graves shall be opened, and shall yield up many of their
dead;
many saints shall appear unto many.

14:26 thus hath the angel spoken unto me;
he said unto me that there should be thunderings and
lightnings for the space of many hours.

14:27 he said unto me that while the thunder and the lightning lasted,
and the tempest, that these things should be, and that darkness
should cover the face of the whole earth for the space of three
days.

14:28 the angel said unto me that many shall see greater things than
these, to the intent that they might believe that these signs and
these wonders should come to pass upon all the face of this
land,

to the intent that there should be no cause for unbelief among
the children of men

14:29 this to the intent that whosoever will believe might be saved,
that whosoever will not believe, a righteous judgment might
come upon them;

if they are condemned they bring upon themselves their own
condemnation.

Helaman 14:30 now remember, remember, my brethren, that whosoever
perisheth, perisheth unto himself;

 whosoever doeth iniquity, doeth it unto himself;

 ye are free;

 ye are permitted to act for yourselves;

 God hath given unto you a knowledge

 he hath made you free.

14:31 He hath given unto you that ye might know good from evil,
 he hath given unto you that ye might choose life or death;
 ye can do good and be restored unto that which is good, or
have that which is good restored unto you;

 ye can do evil, and have that which is evil restored unto you.

15:1 I declare unto you that except ye shall repent your houses shall
be left unto you desolate.

15:2 except ye repent, your women shall have great cause to mourn
in the day that they shall give suck;

 ye shall attempt to flee and there shall be no place for refuge;

 wo unto them which are with child, for they shall be heavy and
cannot flee;

 they shall be trodden down and shall be left to perish.

15:3 wo unto this people who are called the people of Nephi except
they shall repent, when they shall see all these signs and
wonders which shall be showed unto them;

 they have been a chosen people of the Lord;

 the people of Nephi hath he loved, and also hath he chastened
them;

in the days of their iniquities hath he chastened them because
he loveth them.

15:4 the Lamanites hath he hated because their deeds have been
evil continually,

this because of the iniquity of the tradition of their fathers.

salvation hath come unto them through the preaching of the
Nephites;

for this intent hath the Lord prolonged their days.

332

Helaman 15:5 I would that ye should behold that the more part of them are in
the path of their duty,

they do walk circumspectly before God,

they do observe to keep his commandments and his statutes
and his judgments according to the law of Moses.

15:6 the more part of them are doing this, and they are striving with
unwearied diligence

that they may bring the remainder of their brethren to the
knowledge of the truth;

15:7 ye do know of yourselves, for ye have witnessed it,

as many of them as are brought to the knowledge of the truth,
to know of the wicked and abominable traditions of their
fathers,

are led to believe the holy scriptures, yea, the prophecies of the
holy prophets, which are written, which leadeth them to faith on
the Lord, and unto repentance,

which faith and repentance bringeth a change of heart unto

them

15:8 as have come to this, ye know of yourselves are firm and steadfast in the faith, and in the thing wherewith they have been made free.

15:9 ye know also that they have buried their weapons of war, and they fear to take them up lest by any means they should sin;

ye can see that they fear to sin for behold they will suffer themselves that they be trodden down and slain by their enemies, and will not lift their swords against them,

this because of their faith in Christ.

15:10 because of their steadfastness when they do believe in that thing which they do believe,

because of their firmness when they are once enlightened, the Lord shall bless them and prolong their days,

notwithstanding their iniquity

15:11 even if they should dwindle in unbelief the Lord shall prolong their days,

until the time shall come which hath been spoken of by our fathers,

also by the prophet Zenos, and many other prophets,

concerning the restoration of our brethren, the Lamanites, again to the knowledge of the truth

333

Helaman 15:12 I say unto you,

in the latter times the promises of the Lord have been extended to our brethren, the Lamanites;

notwithstanding the many afflictions which they shall have,
notwithstanding they shall be driven to and fro upon the face of
the earth, and be hunted, and shall be smitten and scattered
abroad, having no place for refuge,
the Lord shall be merciful unto them.

15:13 this is according to the prophecy,
they shall again be brought to the true knowledge, which is the
knowledge of their Redeemer, and their great and true
shepherd, and be numbered among his sheep.

15:14 I say unto you,
it shall be better for them than for you except ye repent.

15:15 had the mighty works been shown unto them which have been
shown unto you,
unto them who have dwindled in unbelief because of the
traditions of their fathers,
ye can see of yourselves that they never would again have
dwindled in unbelief.

15:16 Therefore, saith the Lord: I will not utterly destroy them,
I will cause that in the day of my wisdom they shall return again
unto me, saith the Lord.

334

Helaman 15:17 behold, saith the Lord, concerning the people of the Nephites:
If they will not repent, and observe to do my will, I will utterly
destroy them, saith the Lord, because of their unbelief
notwithstanding the many mighty works which I have done
among them;

as surely as the Lord liveth shall these things be, saith the
Lord.

335

Helaman 16:1 there were many who heard the words of Samuel, the
Lamanite,

he spake upon the walls of the city.

as many as believed on his word went forth and sought for
Nephi;

when they had come forth and found him they confessed unto
him their sins and denied not, desiring that they might be
baptized unto the Lord.

16:2 as many as there were who did not believe in the words of
Samuel were angry with him;

they cast stones at him upon the wall, and also many shot
arrows at him as he stood upon the wall;

the Spirit of the Lord was with him, insomuch that they could
not hit him with their stones neither with their arrows.

16:3 when they saw that they could not hit him, there were many
more who did believe on his words,

they went away unto Nephi to be baptized.

16:4 Nephi was baptizing, and prophesying, and preaching,

crying repentance unto the people,

showing signs and wonders,

working miracles among the people,

that they might know that the Christ must shortly come

16:5 Telling them of things which must shortly come,

that they might know and remember at the time of their coming
that they had been made known unto them beforehand, to the
intent that they might believe;

as many as believed on the words of Samuel went forth unto
him to be baptized,

they came repenting and confessing their sins.

16:6 the more part of them did not believe in the words of Samuel;
when they saw that they could not hit him with their stones and
their arrows, they cried unto their captains, saying: Take this
fellow and bind him, for behold he hath a devil;

because of the power of the devil which is in him we cannot hit
him with our stones and our arrows;

take him and bind him, and away with him.

16:7 as they went forth to lay their hands on him, behold, he did cast
himself down from the wall, and did flee out of their lands,

even unto his own country,

began to preach and to prophesy among his own people.

16:8 he was never heard of more among the Nephites;
thus were the affairs of the people.

336

Helaman 16:10 the more part of the people remaining in their pride and
wickedness, and the lesser part walking more circumspectly
before God.

16:12 there was but little alteration in the affairs of the people, save it
were the people began to be more hardened in iniquity,
do more and more of that which was contrary to the

commandments of God,

16:13 in the ninetieth year of the reign of the judges, there were great signs given unto the people,

wonders;

the words of the prophets began to be fulfilled.

16:14 angels did appear unto men, wise men,
did declare unto them glad tidings of great joy;
in this year the scriptures began to be fulfilled.

16:15 Nevertheless, the people began to harden their hearts,
all save it were the most believing part of them, both of the Nephites and also of the Lamanites, and began to depend upon their own strength and upon their own wisdom,

16:16 Some things they may have guessed right, among so many; but behold, we know that all these great and marvelous works cannot come to pass, of which has been spoken.

16:17 they began to reason and to contend among themselves,

16:18 it is not reasonable that such a being as a Christ shall come; if so, and he be the Son of God, the Father of heaven and of earth, as it has been spoken, why will he not show himself unto us as well as unto them who shall be at Jerusalem?

16:19 why will he not show himself in this land as well as in the land of Jerusalem?

16:20 we know that this is a wicked tradition, which has been handed down unto us by our fathers, to cause us that we should believe in some great and marvelous thing which should come to pass,

not among us, but in a land which is far distant, a land which we know not;

they can keep us in ignorance, for we cannot witness with our own eyes that they are true.

16:21 they will, by the cunning and the mysterious arts of the evil one, work some great mystery

which we cannot understand,

which will keep us down to be servants to their words,

also servants unto them, for we depend upon them to teach us the word;

thus will they keep us in ignorance if we will yield ourselves unto them, all the days of our lives.

16:22 many more things did the people imagine up in their hearts, which were foolish and vain;

they were much disturbed, for Satan did stir them up to do iniquity continually;

he did go about spreading rumors and contentions upon all the face of the land,

that he might harden the hearts of the people against that which was good and against that which should come.

16:23 notwithstanding the signs and the wonders which were wrought among the people of the Lord,

the many miracles which they did,

Satan did get great hold upon the hearts of the people upon all the face of the land.

336

3 Nephi 1:1 Lachoneus was the chief judge and the governor over the land.

1:2 Nephi, the son of Helaman, had departed out of the land of

Zarahemla, giving charge unto his son Nephi, who was his eldest son, concerning the plates of brass, and all the records which had been kept, and all those things which had been kept sacred from the departure of Lehi out of Jerusalem.

1:3 his son Nephi did keep the records in his stead, yea, the record of this people.

1:4 the prophecies of the prophets began to be fulfilled more fully; there began to be greater signs and greater miracles wrought among the people.

1:5 there were some who began to say that the time was past for the words to be fulfilled, which were spoken by Samuel, the Lamanite.

1:6 they began to rejoice over their brethren, saying: Behold the time is past, and the words of Samuel are not fulfilled; your joy and your faith concerning this thing hath been vain.

1:7 they did make a great uproar throughout the land; the people who believed began to be very sorrowful, lest by any means those things which had been spoken might not come to pass.

1:8 they did watch steadfastly for that day and that night and that day which should be as one day as if there were no night, that they might know that their faith had not been vain.

1:9 there was a day set apart by the unbelievers, that all those who believed in those traditions should be put to death except the sign should come to pass, which had been given by Samuel the prophet.

1:10 when Nephi, the son of Nephi, saw this wickedness of his people, his heart was exceedingly sorrowful.

1:11 he went out and bowed himself down upon the earth, and cried mightily to his God in behalf of his people,

those who were about to be destroyed because of their faith in the tradition of their fathers.

1:12 he cried mightily unto the Lord, all that day;
behold, the voice of the Lord came unto him, saying:

1:13 Lift up your head and be of good cheer;
the time is at hand, and on this night shall the sign be given, and on the morrow come I into the world, to show unto the world that I will fulfill all that which I have caused to be spoken by the mouth of my holy prophets.

1:14 I come unto my own, to fulfill all things which I have made known unto the children of men from the foundation of the world,

to do the will, both of the Father and of the Son of the Father because of me, and of the Son because of my flesh.

the time is at hand, and this night shall the sign be given.

1:15 the words which came unto Nephi were fulfilled, according as they had been spoken;

at the going down of the sun there was no darkness;

the people began to be astonished because there was no darkness when the night came.

1:16 there were many, who had not believed the words of the prophets, who fell to the earth and became as if they were dead,

they knew that the great plan of destruction which they had laid for those who believed in the words of the prophets had been frustrated;

the sign which had been given was already at hand.

1:17 they began to know that the Son of God must shortly appear;
all the people upon the face of the whole earth from the west to
the east, both in the land north and in the land south, were so
exceedingly astonished that they fell to the earth.

1:18 they knew that the prophets had testified of these things for
many years,

that the sign which had been given was already at hand;
they began to fear because of their iniquity and their unbelief.

1:19 there was no darkness in all that night, but it was as light as
though it was mid-day.

the sun did rise in the morning again, according to its proper
order;

they knew that it was the day that the Lord should be born,
because of the sign which had been given.

1:20 it had come to pass, yea, all things, every whit, according to the
words of the prophets.

1:21 a new star did appear, according to the word.

1:22 from this time forth there began to be lyings sent forth among
the people, by Satan, to harden their hearts, to the intent that
they might not believe in those signs and wonders which they
had seen;

notwithstanding these lyings and deceivings the more part of
the people did believe, and were converted unto the Lord.

1:23 Nephi went forth among the people, and also many others,
baptizing unto repentance, in the which there was a great
remission of sins.

thus the people began again to have peace in the land.

1:24 there were no contentions, save it were a few that began to preach, endeavoring to prove by the scriptures that it was no more expedient to observe the law of Moses.

in this thing they did err, having not understood the scriptures.

1:25 they soon became converted, and were convinced of the error which they were in,

it was made known unto them that the law was not yet fulfilled, it must be fulfilled in every whit; yea, the word came unto them that it must be fulfilled;

that one jot or tittle should not pass away till it should all be fulfilled;

337

3 Nephi 1:27 the ninety and third year did also pass away in peace, save it were for the Gadianton robbers, who dwelt upon the mountains, who did infest the land; for so strong were their holds and their secret places that the people could not overpower them;

they did commit many murders, and did do much slaughter among the people.

1:28 they began to increase in great degree, because there were many dissenters of the Nephites who did flee unto them,

which did cause much sorrow unto those Nephites who did remain in the land.

1:29 there was also a cause of much sorrow among the Lamanites;

they had many children who did grow up and began to wax strong in years, that they became for themselves, and were led

away by some who were Zoramites, by their lyings and their flattering words, to join those Gadianton robbers.

1:30 thus were the Lamanites afflicted also, and began to decrease as to their faith and righteousness, because of the wickedness of the rising generation.

2:1 the people began to forget those signs and wonders which they had heard,

 began to be less and less astonished at a sign or a wonder from heaven,

 they began to be hard in their hearts, and blind in their minds, began to disbelieve all which they had heard and seen

2:2 Imagining up some vain thing in their hearts,

 that it was wrought by men and by the power of the devil, to lead away and deceive the hearts of the people;

 thus did Satan get possession of the hearts of the people again,

 he did blind their eyes and lead them away to believe that the doctrine of Christ was a foolish and a vain thing.

2:3 the people began to wax strong in wickedness and abominations;

 they did not believe that there should be any more signs or wonders given;

 Satan did go about, leading away the hearts of the people, tempting them and causing them that they should do great wickedness in the land.

2:7 nine years had passed away from the time when the sign was given, which was spoken of by the prophets, that Christ should come into the world.

3 Nephi 2:10 the people did still remain in wickedness, notwithstanding the much preaching and prophesying which was sent among them;

2:11 there began to be wars and contentions throughout all the land;

the Gadianton robbers had become so numerous, and did slay so many of the people, and did lay waste so many cities, and did spread so much death and carnage throughout the land, that it became expedient that all the people, both the Nephites and the Lamanites, should take up arms against them.

2:12 all the Lamanites who had become converted unto the Lord did unite with their brethren, the Nephites,

were compelled, for the safety of their lives and their women and their children, to take up arms against those Gadianton robbers,

also to maintain their rights, and the privileges of their church and of their worship, and their freedom and their liberty.

2:13 the Nephites were threatened with utter destruction because of this war, which had become exceedingly sore.

2:14 those Lamanites who had united with the Nephites were numbered among the Nephites;

2:15 their curse was taken from them, and their skin became white like unto the Nephites;

2:16 their young men and their daughters became exceedingly fair, and they were numbered among the Nephites, and were called

Nephites.

2:17 the war between the robbers and the people of Nephi did continue and did become exceedingly sore;

the people of Nephi did gain some advantage of the robbers, insomuch that they did drive them back out of their lands into the mountains and into their secret places.

2:18 they did come forth against the people of Nephi; and because of the wickedness of the people of Nephi, and their many contentions and dissensions, the Gadianton robbers did gain many advantages over them.

2:19 the sword of destruction did hang over them, insomuch that they were about to be smitten down by it, and this because of their iniquity.

339

3 Nephi 3:1 in the sixteenth year from the coming of Christ, Lachoneus, the governor of the land, received an epistle from the leader and the governor of this band of robbers;

these were the words which were written,

3:2 I write this epistle unto you, and do give unto you exceedingly great praise because of your firmness, and also the firmness of your people, in maintaining that which ye suppose to be your right and liberty;

ye do stand well, as if ye were supported by the hand of a god, in the defence of your liberty, and your property, and your country,

3:3 it seemeth a pity unto me, most noble Lachoneus, that ye

should be so foolish and vain as to suppose that ye can stand against so many brave men who are at my command, who do now at this time stand in their arms, and do await with great anxiety for the word Go down upon the Nephites and destroy them.

3:4 I, knowing of their unconquerable spirit, having proved them in the field of battle, and knowing of their everlasting hatred towards you because of the many wrongs which ye have done unto them, therefore if they should come down against you they would visit you with utter destruction.

3:5 I have written this epistle, sealing it with mine own hand, feeling for your welfare,

3:6 I write unto you, desiring that ye would yield up unto this my people, your cities, your lands, and your possessions, rather than that they should visit you with the sword and that destruction should come upon you.

3:7 yield yourselves up unto us, and unite with us become acquainted with our secret works, and become our brethren that ye may be like unto us not our slaves, but our brethren and partners of all our substance.

3:8 if ye will do this, with an oath, ye shall not be destroyed; if ye will not do this, I swear unto you with an oath, that on the morrow month I will command that my armies shall come down against you, and they shall not stay their hand and shall spare not, but shall slay you, and shall let fall the sword upon you even until ye shall become extinct.

3:9 I am the governor of this the secret society of Gadianton; which society and the works thereof I know to be good; and they are

of ancient date and they have been handed down unto us.

3:10 I hope that ye will deliver up your lands and your possessions, without the shedding of blood, that this my people may recover their rights and government, who have dissented away from you because of your wickedness in retaining from them their rights of government,

340

3 Nephi 3:11 when Lachoneus received this epistle he was exceedingly astonished, because of the boldness of Giddianhi

demanding the possession of the land of the Nephites, and also of threatening the people and avenging the wrongs of those that had received no wrong, save it were they had wronged themselves by dissenting away unto those wicked and abominable robbers.

3:12 Lachoneus, the governor, was a just man, and could not be frightened by the demands and the threatenings of a robber;

he did cause that his people should cry unto the Lord for strength against the time that the robbers should come down against them.

3:13 he sent a proclamation among all the people, that they should gather together their women, and their children, their flocks and their herds, and all their substance, save it were their land, unto one place.

3:14 he caused that fortifications should be built round about them, and the strength thereof should be exceedingly great.

he caused that armies, both of the Nephites and of the

Lamanites, or of all them who were numbered among the Nephites, should be placed as guards round about to watch them, and to guard them from the robbers day and night.

3:15 he said unto them: As the Lord liveth, except ye repent of all your iniquities, and cry unto the Lord, ye will in nowise be delivered out of the hands of those Gadianton robbers.

3:16 so great and marvelous were the words and prophecies of Lachoneus that they did cause fear to come upon all the people; and they did exert themselves in their might to do according to the words of Lachoneus.

341

3 Nephi 3:18 Now the chiefest among all the chief captains and the great commander of the armies of the Nephites was appointed, and his name was Gidgiddoni.

3:19 it was the custom among all the Nephites to appoint for their chief captains, (save it were in their times of wickedness) some one that had the spirit of revelation and also prophecy;

 this Gidgiddoni was a great prophet among them, as also was the chief judge.

3:20 the people said unto Gidgiddoni: Pray unto the Lord, and let us go up upon the mountains and into the wilderness, that we may fall upon the robbers and destroy them in their own lands.

3:21 Gidgiddoni saith unto them: The Lord forbid;

 if we should go up against them the Lord would deliver us into their hands;

 we will prepare ourselves in the center of our lands, and we

will gather all our armies together,
we will not go against them,
we will wait till they shall come against us;
as the Lord liveth, if we do this he will deliver them into our
hands.

3:22 they had taken their horses, and their chariots, and their cattle,
and all their flocks, and their herds, and their grain, and all their
substance, and did march forth by thousands and by tens of
thousands, until they had all gone forth to the place which had
been appointed that they should gather themselves together, to
defend themselves against their enemies.

342

3 Nephi 3:24 there were a great many thousand people who were called
Nephites, who did gather themselves together in this land.

Lachoneus did cause that they should gather themselves
together in the land southward, because of the great curse
which was upon the land northward.

3:25 they did fortify themselves against their enemies;
they did dwell in one land, and in one body,
they did fear the words which had been spoken by Lachoneus,
they did repent of all their sins;
they did put up their prayers unto the Lord their God, that he
would deliver them in the time that their enemies should come
down against them to battle.

3:26 they were exceedingly sorrowful because of their enemies.
Gidgiddoni did cause that they should make weapons of war of

every kind, and they should be strong with armor, and with shields, and with bucklers, after the manner of his instruction.

343

3 Nephi 4:1 those armies of robbers had prepared for battle, began to come down and to sally forth from the hills, and out of the mountains, and the wilderness, and their strongholds, and their secret places,

began to take possession of the lands, both which were in the land south and which were in the land north,

began to take possession of all the lands which had been deserted by the Nephites, and the cities which had been left desolate.

4:2 there were no wild beasts nor game in those lands which had been deserted by the Nephites, and there was no game for the robbers save it were in the wilderness.

4:3 the robbers could not exist save it were in the wilderness, for the want of food;

the Nephites had left their lands desolate, and had gathered their flocks and their herds and all their substance, and they were in one body.

4:4 there was no chance for the robbers to plunder and to obtain food, save it were to come up in open battle against the Nephites;

the Nephites being in one body, and having so great a number, and having reserved for themselves provisions, and horses and cattle, and flocks of every kind, that they might subsist for

the space of seven years, in the which time they did hope to
destroy the robbers from off the face of the land;

344

3 Nephi 4:5 Giddianhi found that it was expedient that he should go up to
battle against the Nephites,

there was no way that they could subsist save it were to
plunder and rob and murder.

4:6 they durst not spread themselves upon the face of the land
insomuch that they could raise grain, lest the Nephites should
come upon them and slay them;

4:7 they did come up to battle;

great and terrible was the day that they did come up to battle;
they were girded about after the manner of robbers;
they had a lamb-skin about their loins, and they were dyed in
blood,

their heads were shorn,
they had headplates upon them;
and great and terrible was the appearance of the armies of
Giddianhi,

because of their armor,
because of their being dyed in blood.

4:8 the armies of the Nephites, when they saw the appearance of
the army of Giddianhi, had all fallen to the earth, and did lift
their cries to the Lord their God, that he would spare them and
deliver them out of the hands of their enemies.

4:9 when the armies of Giddianhi saw this they began to shout with

a loud voice, because of their joy,

they had supposed that the Nephites had fallen with fear
because of the terror of their armies.

4:10 in this thing they were disappointed, for the Nephites did not
fear them; but they did fear their God

did supplicate him for protection;

when the armies of Giddianhi did rush upon them they were
prepared to meet them;

in the strength of the Lord they did receive them.

4:11 the battle commenced in this the sixth month;

great and terrible was the battle

great and terrible was the slaughter thereof, insomuch that
there never was known so great a slaughter among all the
people of Lehi since he left Jerusalem.

4:12 notwithstanding the threatenings and the oaths which
Giddianhi had made, behold, the Nephites did beat them,

4:13 Gidgiddoni commanded that his armies should pursue them as
far as the borders of the wilderness, and that they should not
spare any that should fall into their hands by the way;

4:14 Giddianhi, who had stood and fought with boldness, was
pursued as he fled; and being weary because of his much
fighting he was overtaken and slain.

4:15 the armies of the Nephites did return again to their place of
security.

4:16 but they came up on all sides to lay siege round about the
people of Nephi;

they did suppose that if they should cut off the people of Nephi
from their lands, and should hem them in on every side, and if

they should cut them off from all their outward privileges, that they could cause them to yield themselves up according to their wishes.

4:17 it was Zemnarihah that did cause that this siege should take place.

4:18 this was an advantage to the Nephites; for it was impossible for the robbers to lay siege sufficiently long to have any effect upon the Nephites, because of their much provision which they had laid up in store,

4:19 because of the scantiness of provisions among the robbers they had nothing save it were meat for their subsistence, which meat they did obtain in the wilderness;

4:20 the wild game became scarce in the wilderness

4:21 the Nephites were continually marching out by day and by night, and falling upon their armies, and cutting them off by thousands and by tens of thousands.

4:23 Zemnarihah did give command unto his people that they should withdraw themselves from the siege, and march into the furthestmost parts of the land northward.

4:24 Gidgiddoni being aware of their design, and knowing of their weakness because of the want of food, and the great slaughter which had been made among them, therefore he did send out his armies in the night-time, and did cut off the way of their retreat,

4:25 when the robbers began their march, they were met by the armies of the Nephites both in their front and in their rear.

4:27 there were many thousands who did yield themselves up prisoners unto the Nephites, and the remainder of them were

slain.

4:28 their leader, Zemnah, was taken and hanged upon a tree,
yea, even upon the top thereof until he was dead.

343

3 Nephi 4:29 May the Lord preserve his people in righteousness and in
holiness of heart, that they may cause to be felled to the earth
all who shall seek to slay them because of power and secret
combinations,

4:30 they did rejoice and cry again with one voice,
May the God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of
Jacob, protect this people in righteousness,
so long as they shall call on the name of their God for
protection.

4:31 they did break forth, all as one, in singing, and praising their
God for the great thing which he had done for them, in
preserving them from falling into the hands of their enemies.

4:32 they did cry: Hosanna to the Most High God.
they did cry: Blessed be the name of the Lord God Almighty,
the Most High God.

4:33 their hearts were swollen with joy, unto the gushing out of
many tears, because of the great goodness of God in
delivering them out of the hands of their enemies;
they knew it was because of their repentance and their humility
that they had been delivered from an everlasting destruction.

3 Nephi 5:1 there was not a living soul among all the people of the

Nephites who did doubt in the least the words of all the holy prophets who had spoken;

they knew that it must needs be that they must be fulfilled.

5:2 they knew that it must be expedient that Christ had come, because of the many signs which had been given, according to the words of the prophets;

because of the things which had come to pass already they knew that it must needs be that all things should come to pass according to that which had been spoken.

5:3 they did forsake all their sins, and their abominations, their whoredoms, and did serve God with all diligence day and night.

344

3 Nephi 5:4 when they had taken all the robbers prisoners, insomuch that none did escape who were not slain, they did cast their prisoners into prison,

did cause the word of God to be preached unto them;

as many as would repent of their sins and enter into a covenant that they would murder no more were set at liberty.

5:5 as many as there were who did not enter into a covenant, who did still continue to have those secret murders in their hearts,

as many as were found breathing out threatenings against their brethren were condemned and punished according to the law.

5:6 thus they did put an end to all those wicked, and secret, and

abominable combinations, in the which there was so much wickedness, and so many murders committed.

5:8 there had many things transpired which, in the eyes of some, would be great and marvelous; nevertheless, they cannot all be written in this book;

this book cannot contain even a hundredth part of what was done among so many people in the space of twenty and five years;

5:9 there are records which do contain all the proceedings of this people;

345

3 Nephi 5:12 I am called Mormon, being called after the land of Mormon, the land in which Alma did establish the church among the people,

the first church which was established among them after their transgression.

5:13 I am a disciple of Jesus Christ, the Son of God.

I have been called of him to declare his word among his people, that they might have everlasting life.

5:14 it hath become expedient that I, according to the will of God, that the prayers of those who have gone hence, who were the holy ones, should be fulfilled according to their faith, should make a record of these things which have been done

5:15 a small record of that which hath taken place from the time that Lehi left Jerusalem,

even down until the present time.

5:16 I do make my record from the accounts which have been given
by those who were before me,

until the commencement of my day;

5:17 then I do make a record of the things which I have seen with
mine own eyes.

5:18 I know the record which I make to be a just and a true record;
there are many things which, according to our language, we
are not able to write.

5:19 I make an end of my saying, which is of myself, and proceed to
give my account of the things which have been before me.

346

3 Nephi 5:20 I am Mormon, and a pure descendant of Lehi.

I have reason to bless my God and my Savior Jesus Christ,
he brought our fathers out of the land of Jerusalem,
(and no one knew it save it were himself and those whom he
brought out of that land)

he hath given me and my people so much knowledge unto the
salvation of our souls.

5:21 he hath blessed the house of Jacob, and hath been merciful
unto the seed of Joseph.

5:22 insomuch as the children of Lehi have kept his commandments
he hath blessed them and prospered them according to his
word.

5:23 surely shall he again bring a remnant of the seed of Joseph to
the knowledge of the Lord their God.

5:24 as surely as the Lord liveth, will he gather in from the four

quarters of the earth all the remnant of the seed of Jacob, who are scattered abroad upon all the face of the earth.

5:25 as he hath covenanted with all the house of Jacob, even so shall the covenant wherewith he hath covenanted with the house of Jacob be fulfilled in his own due time, unto the restoring all the house of Jacob unto the knowledge of the covenant that he hath covenanted with them.

5:26 then shall they know their Redeemer, who is Jesus Christ, the Son of God;

then shall they be gathered in from the four quarters of the earth unto their own lands, from whence they have been dispersed;

as the Lord liveth so shall it be.

347

3 Nephi 6:1 the people of the Nephites did all return to their own lands every man, with his family, his flocks and his herds, his horses and his cattle, and all things whatsoever did belong unto them.

6:2 they had not eaten up all their provisions;

they did take with them all that they had not devoured, of all their grain of every kind, and their gold, and their silver, and all their precious things,

they did return to their own lands and their possessions, both on the north and on the south,

6:3 they granted unto those robbers who had entered into a covenant to keep the peace of the land who were desirous to remain Lamanites, lands, according to their numbers,

that they might have, with their labors, wherewith to subsist upon;

thus they did establish peace in all the land.

6:4 they began again to prosper and to wax great;

there was great order in the land;

they had formed their laws according to equity and justice.

6:5 there was nothing in all the land to hinder the people from prospering continually, except they should fall into transgression.

6:6 it was Gidgiddoni, and the judge, Lachoneus, and those who had been appointed leaders, who had established this great peace in the land.

6:7 there were many cities built anew, and there were many old cities repaired.

6:8 there were many highways cast up, and many roads made, which led from city to city, and from land to land, and from place to place.

6:9 the people had continual peace.

348

3 Nephi 6:10 it came to pass in the twenty and ninth year there began to be some disputings among the people;

some were lifted up unto pride and boastings because of their exceedingly great riches,

even unto great persecutions;

6:11 there were many merchants in the land, and also many lawyers, and many officers.

6:12 the people began to be distinguished by ranks, according to their riches and their chances for learning,

some were ignorant because of their poverty,

others did receive great learning because of their riches.

6:13 Some were lifted up in pride,

others were exceedingly humble;

some did return railing for railing, while others would receive railing and persecution and all manner of afflictions, and would not turn and revile again, but were humble and penitent before God.

6:14 there became a great inequality in all the land,

the church began to be broken up;

349

3 Nephi 6:14 in the thirtieth year the church was broken up in all the land

save it were among a few of the Lamanites who were

converted unto the true faith; and they would not depart from it,

they were firm, and steadfast, and immovable, willing with all diligence to keep the commandments of the Lord.

6:15 the cause of this iniquity of the people was this Satan had great power, unto the stirring up of the people to do all manner of iniquity,

to the puffing them up with pride,

tempting them to seek for power, and authority, and riches, and the vain things of the world.

6:16 Satan did lead away the hearts of the people to do all manner of iniquity;

they had enjoyed peace but a few years.

6:17 the people having been delivered up for the space of a long time to be carried about by the temptations of the devil

whithersoever he desired to carry them,

to do whatsoever iniquity he desired they should

they were in a state of awful wickedness.

6:18 they did not sin ignorantly,

they knew the will of God concerning them,

it had been taught unto them;

they did wilfully rebel against God.

6:19 it was in the days of Lachoneus, the son of Lachoneus,

6:20 there began to be men inspired from heaven and sent forth,

standing among the people in all the land, preaching

testifying boldly of the sins and iniquities of the people, and

testifying unto them concerning the redemption which the Lord

would make for his people,

in other words, the resurrection of Christ;

they did testify boldly of his death and sufferings.

6:21 there were many of the people who were exceedingly angry

because of those who testified of these things;

those who were angry were chiefly the chief judges,

they who had been high priests and lawyers;

all those who were lawyers were angry with those who testified of these things.

6:22 there was no lawyer nor judge nor high priest that could have

power to condemn any one to death save their condemnation

was signed by the governor of the land.

6:23 there were many of those who testified of the things pertaining

to Christ who testified boldly, who were taken and put to death secretly by the judges,

the knowledge of their death came not unto the governor of the land until after their death.

350

3 Nephi 6:24 this was contrary to the laws of the land, that any man should be put to death except they had power from the governor of the land

6:25 a complaint came up unto the land of Zarahemla, to the governor of the land, against these judges who had condemned the prophets of the Lord unto death, not according to the law.

6:26 they were taken and brought up before the judge to be judged of the crime which they had done, according to the law which had been given by the people.

6:27 those judges had many friends and kindreds;
the remainder, yea, even almost all the lawyers and the high priests, did gather themselves together, and unite with the kindreds of those judges who were to be tried according to the law.

6:28 they did enter into a covenant one with another,
even into that covenant which was given by them of old, which covenant was given and administered by the devil, to combine against all righteousness.

6:29 they did combine against the people of the Lord,
and enter into a covenant to destroy them, and to deliver those

who were guilty of murder from the grasp of justice,
which was about to be administered according to the law.
6:30 they did set at defiance the law and the rights of their country;
they did covenant one with another to destroy the governor,
and to establish a king over the land, that the land should no
more be at liberty but should be subject unto kings.

351

3 Nephi 7:1 they did destroy upon the judgment seat, yea, did murder the
chief judge of the land.

7:2 the people were divided one against another;
they did separate one from another into tribes, every man
according to his family and his kindred and friends;
thus they did destroy the government of the land.

7:3 every tribe did appoint a chief or a leader over them;
they became tribes and leaders of tribes.

7:4 there was no man among them save he had much family and
many kindreds and friends;
their tribes became exceedingly great.

7:5 there were no wars as yet among them;
all this iniquity had come upon the people because they did
yield themselves unto the power of Satan.

7:6 the regulations of the government were destroyed, because of
the secret combination of the friends and kindreds of those who
murdered the prophets.

7:7 they did cause a great contention in the land,
the more righteous part of the people had nearly all become

wicked;

there were but few righteous men among them.

352

3 Nephi 7:8 six years had not passed away since the more part of the people had turned from their righteousness, like the dog to his vomit, or like the sow to her wallowing in the mire.

7:9 this secret combination, which had brought so great iniquity upon the people, did gather themselves together,

did place at their head a man whom they did call Jacob;

7:10 they did call him their king;

he became a king over this wicked band;

he was one of the chiefest who had given his voice against the prophets who testified of Jesus.

7:11 they were not so strong in number as the tribes of the people, who were united together

their leaders did establish their laws, every one according to his tribe;

they were enemies; notwithstanding they were not a righteous people,

they were united in the hatred of those who had entered into a covenant to destroy the government.

7:12 Jacob seeing that their enemies were more numerous than they,

he being the king of the band, therefore he commanded his people that they should take their flight into the northernmost part of the land,

there build up unto themselves a kingdom, until they were
joined by dissenters,

they become sufficiently strong to contend with the tribes of the
people;

7:13 so speedy was their march that it could not be impeded until
they had gone forth out of the reach of the people.

353*

3 Nephi 7:14 they were divided into tribes, every man according to his family,
kindred and friends;

they had come to an agreement that they would not go to war
one with another;

they were not united as to their laws, and their manner of
government,

they were established according to the minds of those who
were their chiefs and their leaders.

they did establish very strict laws that one tribe should not
trespass against another,

in some degree they had peace in the land;

their hearts were turned from the Lord their God,

they did stone the prophets and did cast them out from among
them.

7:15 Nephi having been visited by angels and also the voice of the
Lord,

having seen angels,

being eye-witness, and having had power given unto him that
he might know concerning the ministry of Christ,

also being eye-witness to their quick return from righteousness
unto their wickedness and abominations;

7:16 being grieved for the hardness of their hearts and the
blindness of their minds

went forth among them in that same year,
began to testify, boldly, repentance and remission of sins
through faith on the Lord Jesus Christ.

7:17 he did minister many things unto them;
all of them cannot be written, and a part of them would not
suffice, therefore they are not written in this book.

Nephi did minister with power and with great authority.

354*

3 Nephi 7:18 they were angry with him, even because he had greater power
than they,

it were not possible that they could disbelieve his words,
so great was his faith on the Lord Jesus Christ
angels did minister unto him daily.

7:19 in the name of Jesus did he cast out devils and unclean spirits;
even his brother did he raise from the dead, after he had been
stoned and suffered death by the people.

7:20 the people saw it, and did witness of it, and were angry with
him because of his power;

he did also do many more miracles, in the sight of the people,
in the name of Jesus.

7:21 the thirty and first year did pass away, and there were but few
who were converted unto the Lord;

as many as were converted did truly signify unto the people that they had been visited by the power and Spirit of God, which was in Jesus Christ, in whom they believed.

7:22 as many as had devils cast out from them, and were healed of their sicknesses and their infirmities, did truly manifest unto the people that they had been wrought upon by the Spirit of God, and had been healed;

they did show forth signs also and did do some miracles among the people.

355

3 Nephi 7:23 Nephi did cry unto the people

he did preach unto them repentance and remission of sins.

7:24 I would have you to remember also, that there were none who were brought unto repentance who were not baptized with water.

7:25 there were ordained of Nephi, men unto this ministry, all such as should come unto them should be baptized with water,

this as a witness and a testimony before God, and unto the people,

they had repented and received a remission of their sins.

7:26 there were many in the commencement of this year that were baptized unto repentance;

356

3 Nephi 8:1 according to our record, and we know our record to be true,

it was a just man who did keep the record for he truly did
many miracles in the name of Jesus;

there was not any man who could do a miracle in the name of
Jesus save he were cleansed every whit from his iniquity

8:2 if there was no mistake made by this man in the reckoning of
our time, the thirty and third year had passed away;

8:3 the people began to look with great earnestness for the sign
which had been given by the prophet Samuel, the Lamanite,

for the time that there should be darkness for the space of three
days over the face of the land.

8:4 there began to be great doubtings and disputations among the
people, notwithstanding so many signs had been given.

8:5 there arose a great storm, such an one as never had been
known in all the land.

8:6 there was also a great and terrible tempest;
there was terrible thunder,
it did shake the whole earth as if it was about to divide asunder.

8:7 there were exceedingly sharp lightnings, such as never had
been known in all the land.

8:8 the city of Zarahemla did take fire.

8:9 the city of Moroni did sink into the depths of the sea, and the
inhabitants thereof were drowned.

8:10 the earth was carried up upon the city of Moronihah that in the
place of the city there became a great mountain.

8:11 there was a great and terrible destruction in the land
southward.

8:12 there was a more great and terrible destruction in the land

northward;

the whole face of the land was changed, because of the tempest and the whirlwinds and the thunderings and the lightnings, and the exceedingly great quaking of the whole earth;

8:13 the highways were broken up, and the level roads were spoiled,

many smooth places became rough.

8:14 And many great and notable cities were sunk, and many were burned, and many were shaken till the buildings thereof had fallen to the earth,

the inhabitants thereof were slain, and the places were left desolate.

8:15 there were some cities which remained; but the damage thereof was exceeding great, and there were many of them who were slain.

8:16 there were some who were carried away in the whirlwind;

8:18 the rocks were rent in twain; they were broken up upon the face of the whole earth, insomuch that they were found in broken fragments, and in seams and in cracks, upon all the face of the land.

8:19 they did last for about the space of three hours;

there was darkness upon the face of the land.

8:20 the inhabitants thereof who had not fallen could feel the vapor of darkness;

8:21 there could be no light, because of the darkness, neither candles, neither torches; neither could there be fire kindled with their fine and exceedingly dry wood, so that there could

not be any light at all;

8:23 it did last for the space of three days that there was no light
seen;

there was great mourning and howling and weeping among all
the people continually;

8:24 in one place they were heard to cry,

O that we had repented before this great and terrible day, and
then would our brethren have been spared,

they would not have been burned in that great city Zarahemla.

8:25 O that we had repented before this great and terrible day, and
had not killed and stoned the prophets, and cast them out; then
would our mothers and our fair daughters, and our children
have been spared, and not have been buried up in that great
city Moronihah.

357*

3 Nephi 9:1 there was a voice heard among all the inhabitants of the earth,
upon all the face of this land,

9:2 Wo, wo, wo unto this people;

wo unto the inhabitants of the whole earth except they shall
repent;

the devil laugheth,

his angels rejoice,

because of the slain of the fair sons and daughters of my
people;

it is because of their iniquity and abominations that they are
fallen!

9:3 that great city Zarahemla have I burned with fire, and the inhabitants thereof.

9:4 that great city Moroni have I caused to be sunk in the depths of the sea, and the inhabitants thereof to be drowned.

9:5 that great city Mornoihah have I covered with earth, and the inhabitants thereof, to hide their iniquities and their abominations from before my face, that the blood of the prophets and the saints shall not come any more unto me against them.

9:6 the city of Gilgal have I caused to be sunk, and the inhabitants thereof to be buried up in the depths of the earth;

9:7 the city of Onihah and the inhabitants thereof,
the city of Mocum and the inhabitants thereof,
the city of Jerusalem and the inhabitants thereof; and waters have I caused to come up in the stead thereof, to hide their wickedness and abominations from before my face, that the blood of the prophets and the saints shall not come up any more unto me against them.

9:8 the city of Gadiandi, and the city of Gadiomnah, and the city of Jacob, and the city of Gimgimno, all these have I caused to be sunk, and made hills and valleys in the places thereof; and the inhabitants thereof have I buried up in the depths of the earth, to hide their wickedness and abominations from before my face, that the blood of the prophets and the saints should not come up any more unto me against them.

9:9 that great city Jacobugath, which was inhabited by the people of king Jacob, have I caused to be burned with fire because of their sins and their wickedness, which was above all the

wickedness of the whole earth, because of their secret murders and combinations;

it was they that did destroy the peace of my people and the government of the land;

I did cause them to be burned, to destroy them from before my face, that the blood of the prophets and the saints should not come up unto me any more against them.

9:10 the city of Laman, and the city of Josh, and the city of Gad, and the city of Kishkumen, have I caused to be burned with fire, and the inhabitants thereof, because of their wickedness in casting out the prophets, and stoning those whom I did send to declare unto them concerning their wickedness and their abominations.

9:11 because they did cast them all out, that there were none righteous among them, I did send down fire and destroy them, that their wickedness and abominations might be hid from before my face, that the blood of the prophets and the saints whom I sent among them might not cry unto me from the ground against them.

9:12 many great destructions have I caused to come upon this land, and upon this people, because of their wickedness and their abominations.

9:13 O all ye that are spared because ye were more righteous than they,

will ye not now return unto me,

repent of your sins, and be converted, that I may heal you?

9:14 if ye will come unto me ye shall have eternal life.

mine arm of mercy is extended towards you, and whosoever

will come, him will I receive;

blessed are those who come unto me.

9:15 I am Jesus Christ the Son of God.

I created the heavens and the earth, and all things that in them are.

I was with the Father from the beginning.

I am in the Father, and the Father in me; and in me hath the Father glorified his name.

9:16 I came unto my own, and my own received me not.

the scriptures concerning my coming are fulfilled.

9:17 as many as have received me, to them have I given to become the sons of God; and even so will I to as many as shall believe on my name,

by me redemption cometh, and in me is the law of Moses fulfilled.

9:18 I am the light and the life of the world.

I am Alpha and Omega, the beginning and the end.

9:19 ye shall offer up unto me no more the shedding of blood;

your sacrifices and your burnt offerings shall be done away,

I will accept none of your sacrifices and your burnt offerings.

9:20 ye shall offer for a sacrifice unto me a broken heart and a contrite spirit.

whoso cometh unto me with a broken heart and a contrite spirit, him will I baptize with fire and with the Holy Ghost, even as the Lamanites, because of their faith in me at the time of their conversion, were baptized with fire and with the Holy Ghost, and they knew it not.

9:21 I have come unto the world to bring redemption unto the world,

to save the world from sin.

9:22 whoso repenteth and cometh unto me as a little child, him will I receive, for of such is the kingdom of God.

I have laid down my life, and have taken it up again;
repent, and come unto me ye ends of the earth, and be saved.

10:1 all the people of the land did hear these sayings, and did witness of it.

after these sayings there was silence in the land for the space of many hours;

10:2 so great was the astonishment of the people that they did cease lamenting and howling for the loss of their kindred which had been slain;

there was silence in all the land for the space of many hours.

358

3 Nephi 10:3 there came a voice again unto the people, and all the people did hear, and did witness of it,

10:4 O ye people of these great cities which have fallen, who are descendants of Jacob,

who are of the house of Israel,

how oft have I gathered you as a hen gathereth her chickens under her wings, and have nourished you.

10:5 how oft would I have gathered you as a hen gathereth her chickens under her wings,

O ye people of the house of Israel, who have fallen;

O ye people of the house of Israel, ye that dwell at Jerusalem, as ye that have fallen;

how oft would I have gathered you as a hen gathereth her chickens, and ye would not.

10:6 O ye house of Israel whom I have spared, how oft will I gather you as a hen gathereth her chickens under her wings, if ye will repent and return unto me with full purpose of heart.

10:7 if not, O house of Israel, the places of your dwellings shall become desolate until the time of the fulfilling of the covenant to your fathers.

10:8 after the people had heard these words, behold, they began to weep and howl again because of the loss of their kindred and friends.

359

3 Nephi 10:9 it was in the morning, and the darkness dispersed from off the face of the land,

the earth did cease to tremble, and the rocks did cease to rend, and the dreadful groanings did cease, and all the tumultuous noises did pass away.

10:10 the earth did cleave together again, that it stood; and the mourning, and the weeping, and the wailing of the people who were spared alive did cease;

their mourning was turned into joy,

their lamentations into the praise and thanksgiving unto the Lord Jesus Christ, their Redeemer.

10:11 thus far were the scriptures fulfilled which had been spoken by the prophets.

10:12 it was the more righteous part of the people who were saved,

it was they who received the prophets and stoned them not;
it was they who had not shed the blood of the saints, who were
spared

10:13 they were spared and were not sunk and buried up in the
earth;

they were not drowned in the depths of the sea;
they were not burned by fire, neither were they fallen upon and
crushed to death;
they were not carried away in the whirlwind;
neither were they overpowered by the vapor of smoke and of
darkness.

360

3 Nephi 10:14 whoso readeth, let him understand;

he that hath the scriptures, let him search them, and see and
behold if all these deaths and destructions by fire, and by
smoke, and by tempests, and by whirlwinds, and by the
opening of the earth to receive them, and all these things are
not unto the fulfilling of the prophecies of many of the holy
prophets.

10:15 many have testified of these things at the coming of Christ, and
were slain because they testified of these things.

10:16 the prophet Zenos did testify of these things,
also Zenock spake concerning these things,
they testified particularly concerning us, who are the remnant of
their seed.

10:17 our father Jacob also testified concerning a remnant of the

seed of Joseph.

are not we a remnant of the seed of Joseph?

these things which testify of us, are they not written upon the plates of brass which our father Lehi brought out of Jerusalem?

10:18 the people of Nephi who were spared, and also those who had been called Lamanites, who had been spared, did have great favors shown unto them,

great blessings poured out upon their heads,

soon after the ascension of Christ into heaven he did truly manifest himself unto them

10:19 Showing his body unto them, and ministering unto them;

361*

3 Nephi 11:1 there were a great multitude gathered together, of the people of Nephi, round about the temple which was in the land Bountiful;

they were marveling and wondering one with another, and were showing one to another the great and marvelous change which had taken place.

11:2 they were also conversing about this Jesus Christ, of whom the sign had been given concerning his death.

11:3 while they were thus conversing one with another, they heard a voice as if it came out of heaven;

they cast their eyes round about, for they understood not the voice which they heard;

it was not a harsh voice, neither was it a loud voice;

notwithstanding it being a small voice it did pierce them that did hear to the center,

there was no part of their frame that it did not cause to quake;
it did pierce them to the very soul, and did cause their hearts to
burn.

11:4 again they heard the voice, and they understood it not.

11:5 again the third time they did hear the voice, and did open their
ears to hear it;

their eyes were towards the sound thereof;

they did look steadfastly towards heaven, from whence the
sound came.

11:6 the third time they did understand the voice which they heard;
it said unto them:

11:7 Behold my Beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased, in whom I
have glorified my name hear ye him.

11:8 they cast their eyes up again towards heaven;

they saw a Man descending out of heaven;

he was clothed in a white robe;

he came down and stood in the midst of them;

the eyes of the whole multitude were turned upon him,

they durst not open their mouths, even one to another, and wist
not what it meant,

they thought it was an angel that had appeared unto them.

11:9 he stretched forth his hand and spake unto the people,

11:10 Behold, I am Jesus Christ, whom the prophets testified shall
come into the world.

11:11 I am the light and the life of the world;

I have drunk out of that bitter cup which the Father hath given
me, and have glorified the Father in taking upon me the sins of
the world,

I have suffered the will of the Father in all things from the beginning.

11:12 when Jesus had spoken these words the whole multitude fell to the earth;

they remembered that it had been prophesied among them that Christ should show himself unto them after his ascension into heaven.

11:13 the Lord spake unto them saying:

11:14 Arise and come forth unto me, that ye may thrust your hands into my side,

that ye may feel the prints of the nails in my hands and in my feet,

that ye may know that I am the God of Israel, and the God of the whole earth, and have been slain for the sins of the world.

11:15 the multitude went forth, and thrust their hands into his side, and did feel the prints of the nails in his hands and in his feet;

this they did do, going forth one by one until they had all gone forth, and did see with their eyes and did feel with their hands, and did know of a surety and did bear record, that it was he, of whom it was written by the prophets, that should come.

11:16 when they had all gone forth and had witnessed for themselves, they did cry out with one accord, saying:

11:17 Hosanna! Blessed be the name of the Most High God!

they did fall down at the feet of Jesus, and did worship him.

362*

3 Nephi 11:18 he spake unto Nephi

he commanded him that he should come forth.

11:19 Nephi arose and went forth, and bowed himself before the Lord and did kiss his feet.

11:20 the Lord commanded him that he should arise.

he arose and stood before him.

11:21 the Lord said unto him:

I give unto you power that ye shall baptize this people when I am again ascended into heaven.

11:22 the Lord called others, and said unto them likewise; and he gave unto them power to baptize.

he said unto them: On this wise shall ye baptize; and there shall be no disputations among you.

11:23 whoso repenteth of his sins through your words and desireth to be baptized in my name, on this wise shall ye baptize them

ye shall go down and stand in the water, and in my name shall ye baptize them.

11:24 these are the words which ye shall say, calling them by name, saying:

11:25 Having authority given me of Jesus Christ, I baptize you in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost.

Amen.

11:26 then shall ye immerse them in the water, and come forth again out of the water.

11:27 after this manner shall ye baptize in my name;

the Father, and the Son, and the Holy Ghost are one;

I am in the Father, and the Father in me, and the Father and I are one.

11:28 as I have commanded you thus shall ye baptize.

there shall be no disputations among you, as there have hitherto been; neither shall there be disputations among you concerning the points of my doctrine, as there have hitherto been.

11:29 he that hath the spirit of contention is not of me, but is of the devil, who is the father of contention,

he stirreth up the hearts of men to contend with anger, one with another.

11:30 this is not my doctrine, to stir up the hearts of men with anger, one against another;

this is my doctrine, that such things should be done away.

363

3 Nephi 11:32 this is my doctrine, and it is the doctrine which the Father hath given unto me;

I bear record of the Father, and the Father beareth record of me, and the Holy Ghost beareth record of the Father and me;

I bear record that the Father commandeth all men, everywhere, to repent and believe in me.

11:33 whoso believeth in me, and is baptized, the same shall be saved;

they are they who shall inherit the kingdom of God.

11:34 whoso believeth not in me, and is not baptized, shall be damned.

11:35 this is my doctrine,

I bear record of it from the Father; and whoso believeth in me believeth in the Father also; and unto him will the Father bear

record of me, for he will visit him with fire and with the Holy Ghost.

11:36 thus will the Father bear record of me, and the Holy Ghost will bear record unto him of the Father and me;
for the Father, and I, and the Holy Ghost are one.

364

3 Nephi 11:37 I say unto you, ye must repent, and become as a little child, be baptized in my name, or ye can in nowise receive these things.

11:38 ye must repent, and be baptized in my name, and become as a little child, or ye can in nowise inherit the kingdom of God.

11:39 this is my doctrine,
whoso buildeth upon this buildeth upon my rock,
the gates of hell shall not prevail against them.

11:40 whoso shall declare more or less than this, and establish it for my doctrine, the same cometh of evil, and is not built upon my rock;

he buildeth upon a sandy foundation, and the gates of hell stand open to receive such when the floods come and the winds beat upon them.

11:41 go forth unto this people, and declare the words which I have spoken, unto the ends of the earth.

365

3 Nephi 12:1 the number of them who had been called, and received power

and authority to baptize, was twelve)

he stretched forth his hand unto the multitude, and cried unto them, saying:

Blessed are ye if ye shall give heed unto the words of these twelve whom I have chosen from among you to minister unto you, and to be your servants;

unto them I have given power that they may baptize you with water;

after that ye are baptized with water, behold, I will baptize you with fire and with the Holy Ghost;

blessed are ye if ye shall believe in me and be baptized, after that ye have seen me and know that I am.

12:2 more blessed are they who shall believe in your words because that ye shall testify that ye have seen me, and that ye know that I am.

366

3 Nephi 12:2 blessed are they who shall believe in your words, and come down into the depths of humility and be baptized,

they shall be visited with fire and with the Holy Ghost, and shall receive a remission of their sins.

12:3 blessed are the poor in spirit who come unto me, for theirs is the kingdom of heaven.

12:4 blessed are all they that mourn, for they shall be comforted.

12:5 blessed are the meek, for they shall inherit the earth.

12:6 blessed are all they who do hunger and thirst after righteousness, for they shall be filled with the Holy Ghost.

12:7 blessed are the merciful, for they shall obtain mercy.

12:8 blessed are all the pure in heart, for they shall see God.

12:9 blessed are all the peacemakers, for they shall be called the children of God.

12:10 blessed are all they who are persecuted for my name s sake, for theirs is the kingdom of heaven.

12:11 blessed are ye when men shall revile you and persecute, and shall say all manner of evil against you falsely, for my sake;

12:12 For ye shall have great joy and be exceedingly glad, for great shall be your reward in heaven; for so persecuted they the prophets who were before you.

12:13 I give unto you to be the salt of the earth; but if the salt shall lose its savor wherewith shall the earth be salted?

The salt shall be thenceforth good for nothing, but to be cast out and to be trodden under foot of men.

12:14 I give unto you to be the light of this people.

A city that is set on a hill cannot be hid.

12:15 do men light a candle and put it under a bushel? Nay, but on a candlestick, and it giveth light to all that are in the house;

12:16 Therefore let your light so shine before this people, that they may see your good works and glorify your Father who is in heaven.

367*

3 Nephi 12:17 Think not that I am come to destroy the law or the prophets. I am not come to destroy but to fulfil;

12:18 verily I say unto you, one jot nor one tittle hath not passed away

from the law, but in me it hath all been fulfilled.

12:19 I have given you the law and the commandments of my Father,
ye shall believe in me,
ye shall repent of your sins,
come unto me with a broken heart and a contrite spirit.
ye have the commandments before you,
the law is fulfilled.

12:20 come unto me and be ye saved;
except ye shall keep my commandments, which I have
commanded you at this time, ye shall in no case enter into the
kingdom of heaven.

12:21 Ye have heard that it hath been said by them of old time, and it
is also written before you, that thou shalt not kill,
whosoever shall kill shall be in danger of the judgment of God;

12:22 I say unto you, that whosoever is angry with his brother shall be
in danger of his judgment.

whosoever shall say to his brother, Raca, shall be in danger of
the council;

whosoever shall say, Thou fool, shall be in danger of hell fire.

12:23 if ye shall come unto me, or shall desire to come unto me,
rememberest that thy brother hath aught against thee

12:24 Go thy way unto thy brother, and first be reconciled to thy
brother, and then come unto me with full purpose of heart,
I will receive you.

12:25 Agree with thine adversary quickly while thou art in the way
with him, lest at any time he shall get thee, and thou shalt be
cast into prison.

12:26 thou shalt by no means come out thence until thou hast paid

the uttermost senine.

while ye are in prison can ye pay even one senine?

Nay.

12:27 it is written by them of old time, that thou shalt not commit adultery;

12:28 I say unto you, that whosoever looketh on a woman, to lust after her, hath committed adultery already in his heart.

12:29 I give unto you a commandment, that ye suffer none of these things to enter into your heart;

12:30 For it is better that ye should deny yourselves of these things, wherein ye will take up your cross, than that ye should be cast into hell.

12:31 It hath been written, that whosoever shall put away his wife, let him give her a writing of divorcement.

12:32 whosoever shall put away his wife, saving for the cause of fornication, causeth her to commit adultery;

whoso shall marry her who is divorced committeth adultery.

12:33 again it is written, thou shalt not forswear thyself, but shalt perform unto the Lord thine oaths;

12:34 swear not at all; neither by heaven, for it is God s throne;

12:35 Nor by the earth, for it is his footstool;

12:36 Neither shalt thou swear by thy head, because thou canst not make one hair black or white;

12:37 But let your communication be Yea, yea; Nay, nay; for whatsoever cometh of more than these is evil.

368*

3 Nephi 12:38 it is written, an eye for an eye, and a tooth for a tooth;

12:39 ye shall not resist evil, but whosoever shall smite thee on thy right cheek, turn to him the other also;

12:40 if any man will sue thee at the law and take away thy coat, let him have thy cloak also;

12:41 whosoever shall compel thee to go a mile, go with him twain.

12:42 Give to him that asketh thee, and from him that would borrow of thee turn thou not away.

12:43 it is written also, that thou shalt love thy neighbor and hate thine enemy;

12:44 I say unto you, love your enemies, bless them that curse you, do good to them that hate you, and pray for them who despitefully use you and persecute you;

12:45 That ye may be the children of your Father who is in heaven;
he maketh his sun to rise on the evil and on the good.

12:46 those things which were of old time, which were under the law, in me are all fulfilled.

12:47 Old things are done away, and all things have become new.

12:48 I would that ye should be perfect even as I, or your Father who is in heaven is perfect.

13:1 I would that ye should do alms unto the poor; but take heed that ye do not your alms before men to be seen of them; otherwise ye have no reward of your Father who is in heaven.

369

3 Nephi 13:2 when ye shall do your alms do not sound a trumpet before you, as will hypocrites do in the synagogues and in the streets, that

they may have glory of men.

they have their reward.

13:3 when thou doest alms let not thy left hand know what thy right hand doeth;

13:4 That thine alms may be in secret;
thy Father who seeth in secret, himself shall reward thee openly.

13:5 when thou prayest thou shalt not do as the hypocrites, for they love to pray, standing in the synagogues and in the corners of the streets, that they may be seen of men.

they have their reward.

13:6 when thou prayest, enter into thy closet, and when thou hast shut thy door, pray to thy Father who is in secret;

thy Father, who seeth in secret, shall reward thee openly.

13:7 when ye pray, use not vain repetitions, as the heathen, for they think that they shall be heard for their much speaking.

13:8 Be not ye therefore like unto them, for your Father knoweth what things ye have need of before ye ask him.

370*

3 Nephi 13:9 After this manner therefore pray ye: Our Father who art in heaven, hallowed be thy name.

13:10 Thy will be done on earth as it is in heaven.

13:11 forgive us our debts, as we forgive our debtors.

13:12 lead us not into temptation,
deliver us from evil.

13:13 thine is the kingdom,

the power,
the glory,

371

3 Nephi 13:14 if ye forgive men their trespasses your heavenly Father will also forgive you;

13:15 if ye forgive not men their trespasses neither will your Father forgive your trespasses.

13:16 when ye fast be not as the hypocrites, of a sad countenance, they disfigure their faces that they may appear unto men to fast. they have their reward.

13:17 when thou fastest, anoint thy head, and wash thy face;

13:18 That thou appear not unto men to fast, but unto thy Father, who is in secret;

thy Father, who seeth in secret, shall reward thee openly.

13:19 Lay not up for yourselves treasures upon earth, where moth and rust doth corrupt, and thieves break through and steal;

13:20 lay up for yourselves treasures in heaven, where neither moth nor rust doth corrupt, and where thieves do not break through nor steal.

13:21 where your treasure is, there will your heart be also.

13:22 The light of the body is the eye; if, therefore, thine eye be single, thy whole body shall be full of light.

13:23 if thine eye be evil, thy whole body shall be full of darkness. If, therefore, the light that is in thee be darkness, how great is that darkness!

13:24 No man can serve two masters;

either he will hate the one and love the other, or else he will hold to the one and despise the other. Ye cannot serve God and Mammon.

372

3 Nephi 13:25 when Jesus had spoken these words he looked upon the twelve whom he had chosen, and said unto them:

Remember the words which I have spoken.

ye are they whom I have chosen to minister unto this people.

Therefore I say unto you, take no thought for your life, what ye shall eat, or what ye shall drink; nor yet for your body, what ye shall put on.

Is not the life more than meat, and the body than raiment?

13:26 the fowls of the air, for they sow not, neither do they reap nor gather into barns; yet your heavenly Father feedeth them.

Are ye not much better than they?

13:27 Which of you by taking thought can add one cubit unto his stature?

13:28 why take ye thought for raiment?

Consider the lilies of the field how they grow;

they toil not, neither do they spin;

13:29 yet I say unto you, that even Solomon, in all his glory, was not arrayed like one of these.

13:30 if God so clothe the grass of the field, which today is, and tomorrow is cast into the oven, even so will he clothe you, if ye are not of little faith.

13:31 take no thought, saying, What shall we eat? or, What shall we

drink? or, Wherewithal shall we be clothed?

13:32 your heavenly Father knoweth that ye have need of all these things.

13:33 seek ye first the kingdom of God and his righteousness, and all these things shall be added unto you.

13:34 Take therefore no thought for the morrow, for the morrow shall take thought for the things of itself.

Sufficient is the day unto the evil thereof.

373

3 Nephi 14:1 when Jesus had spoken these words he turned again to the multitude, and did open his mouth unto them again,

Judge not, that ye be not judged.

14:2 For with what judgment ye judge, ye shall be judged; with what measure ye mete, it shall be measured to you again.

14:3 why beholdest thou the mote that is in thy brother's eye, but considerest not the beam that is in thine own eye?

14:4 how wilt thou say to thy brother: Let me pull the mote out of thine eye and behold, a beam is in thine own eye?

14:5 Thou hypocrite, first cast the beam out of thine own eye; and then shalt thou see clearly to cast the mote out of thy brother's eye.

14:6 Give not that which is holy unto the dogs, neither cast ye your pearls before swine, lest they trample them under their feet, and turn again and rend you.

14:7 Ask, and it shall be given unto you; seek, and ye shall find; knock, and it shall be opened unto you.

14:8 every one that asketh, receiveth;
he that seeketh, findeth;
to him that knocketh, it shall be opened.

14:9 Or what man is there of you, who, if his son ask bread, will give him a stone?

14:10 Or if he ask a fish, will he give him a serpent?

14:11 If ye then, being evil, know how to give good gifts unto your children, how much more shall your Father who is in heaven give good things to them that ask him?

14:12 all things whatsoever ye would that men should do to you, do ye even so to them,
this is the law and the prophets.

374

3 Nephi 14:13 Enter ye in at the strait gate;
wide is the gate, and broad is the way, which leadeth to destruction,

many there be who go in thereat;

14:14 strait is the gate, and narrow is the way, which leadeth unto life,
few there be that find it.

14:15 Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep s clothing,
but inwardly they are ravening wolves.

14:16 Ye shall know them by their fruits.
Do men gather grapes of thorns, or figs of thistles?

14:17 Even so every good tree bringeth forth good fruit;
a corrupt tree bringeth forth evil fruit.

14:18 A good tree cannot bring forth evil fruit, neither a corrupt tree

bring forth good fruit.

14:19 Every tree that bringeth not forth good fruit is hewn down, and cast into the fire.

14:20 by their fruits ye shall know them.

375

3 Nephi 14:21 Not every one that saith unto me, Lord, Lord, shall enter into the kingdom of heaven;

he that doeth the will of my Father who is in heaven.

14:22 Many will say to me in that day: Lord, Lord, have we not prophesied in thy name,

in thy name have cast out devils,

in thy name done many wonderful works?

14:23 then will I profess unto them: I never knew you; depart from me, ye that work iniquity.

14:24 whoso heareth these sayings of mine and doeth them, I will liken him unto a wise man, who built his house upon a rock

14:25 the rain descended, and the floods came, and the winds blew, and beat upon that house; and it fell not, for it was founded upon a rock.

14:26 every one that heareth these sayings of mine and doeth them not shall be likened unto a foolish man, who built his house upon the sand

14:27 the rain descended, and the floods came, and the winds blew, and beat upon that house; and it fell, and great was the fall of it.

376

3 Nephi 15:1 when Jesus had ended these sayings he cast his eyes round about on the multitude,

Behold, ye have heard the things which I taught before I ascended to my Father;

whoso remembereth these sayings of mine and doeth them, him will I raise up at the last day.

15:2 he perceived that there were some among them who marveled, and wondered what he would concerning the law of Moses;

they understood not the saying that old things had passed away, and that all things had become new.

15:3 he said unto them:

Marvel not that I said unto you that old things had passed away, and that all things had become new.

15:4 I say unto you the law is fulfilled that was given unto Moses.

15:5 I am he that gave the law,
I am he who covenanted with my people Israel;
the law in me is fulfilled,
I have come to fulfil the law;
therefore it hath an end.

15:6 I do not destroy the prophets,
as many as have not been fulfilled in me, verily I say unto you, shall all be fulfilled.

15:7 because I said unto you
old things have passed away,
I do not destroy that which hath been spoken concerning things which are to come.

15:8 the covenant which I have made with my people is not all fulfilled;

the law which was given unto Moses hath an end in me.

15:9 I am the law, and the light.

Look unto me,

endure to the end,

ye shall live;

for unto him that endureth to the end

will I give eternal life.

15:10 I have given unto you the commandments;

keep my commandments.

this is the law and the prophets,

they truly testified of me.

377

3 Nephi 15:11 when Jesus had spoken these words, he said unto those twelve whom he had chosen:

15:12 Ye are my disciples;

ye are a light unto this people, who are a remnant of the house of Joseph.

15:13 this is the land of your inheritance;

the Father hath given it unto you.

15:14 not at any time hath the Father given me commandment that I should tell it unto your brethren at Jerusalem.

15:15 Neither at any time hath the Father given me commandment that I should tell unto them concerning the other tribes of the house of Israel, whom the Father hath led away out of the land.

15:16 This much did the Father command me,
that I should tell unto them:

15:17 That other sheep I have which are not of this fold; them also I
must bring, and they shall hear my voice;
there shall be one fold, and one shepherd.

15:18 because of stiffneckedness and unbelief they understood not
my word; therefore I was commanded to say no more of the
Father concerning this thing unto them.

15:19 the Father hath commanded me,
I tell it unto you,
ye were separated from among them because of their iniquity;
therefore it is because of their iniquity that they know not of you.

378

3 Nephi 15:20 verily, I say unto you again

the other tribes hath the Father separated from them;
it is because of their iniquity that they know not of them.

15:21 verily I say unto you,
ye are they of whom I said: Other sheep I have which are not of
this fold;

them also I must bring, and they shall hear my voice; and there
shall be one fold, and one shepherd.

15:22 they understood me not, for they supposed it had been the
Gentiles;

they understood not that the Gentiles should be converted
through their preaching.

15:23 they understood me not that I said they shall hear my voice;

they understood me not that the Gentiles should not at any time
hear my voice

I should not manifest myself unto them save it were by the Holy
Ghost.

15:24 ye have both heard my voice, and seen me;
ye are my sheep, and ye are numbered among those whom
the Father hath given me.

379

3 Nephi 16:1 verily, verily, I say unto you

I have other sheep which are not of this land,
neither of the land of Jerusalem,
neither in any parts of that land round about
whither I have been to minister.

16:2 they of whom I speak are they who have not as yet heard my
voice;

neither have I at any time manifested myself unto them.

16:3 I have received a commandment of the Father that I shall go
unto them,

that they shall hear my voice,
shall be numbered among my sheep,
that there may be one fold and one shepherd;
therefore I go to show myself unto them.

16:4 I command you that ye shall write these sayings after I am
gone, that if it so be that my people at Jerusalem, they who
have seen me and been with me in my ministry, do not ask the
Father in my name, that they may receive a knowledge of you

by the Holy Ghost,

also of the other tribes whom they know not of, that these sayings which ye shall write shall be kept and shall be manifested unto the Gentiles,

through the fulness of the Gentiles, the remnant of their seed, who shall be scattered forth upon the face of the earth

because of their unbelief, may be brought in, or may be brought to a knowledge of me, their Redeemer.

16:5 then will I gather them in from the four quarters of the earth;

then will I fulfill the covenant which the Father hath made unto all the people of the house of Israel.

16:6 blessed are the Gentiles, because of their belief in me, in and of the Holy Ghost,

which witnesses unto them of me and of the Father.

16:7 because of their belief in me, saith the Father, and because of the unbelief of you,

O house of Israel, in the latter day shall the truth come unto the Gentiles, that the fulness of these things shall be made known unto them.

380

3 Nephi 16:8 wo, saith the Father, unto the unbelieving of the Gentiles for notwithstanding they have come forth upon the face of this land, and have scattered my people who are of the house of Israel; and my people who are of the house of Israel have been cast out from among them, and have been trodden under feet by them;

16:9 because of the mercies of the Father unto the Gentiles,
also the judgments of the Father upon my people who are of
the house of Israel,
verily, verily, I say unto you,
after all this, and I have caused my people who are of the
house of Israel to be smitten, and to be afflicted,
to be slain, and to be cast out from among them,
to become hated by them,
to become a hiss and a byword among them

381

3 Nephi 16:10 thus commandeth the Father that I should say unto you: At that
day when the Gentiles shall sin against my gospel, and shall
reject the fulness of my gospel,
shall be lifted up in the pride of their hearts above all nations,
above all the people of the whole earth,
shall be filled with all manner of lyings,
of deceits, and of mischiefs, and all manner of hypocrisy, and
murders, and priestcrafts, and whoredoms,
of secret abominations;
if they shall do all those things, and shall reject the fulness of
my gospel,
behold, saith the Father,
I will bring the fulness of my gospel from among them.
16:11 then will I remember my covenant which I have made unto my
people,
O house of Israel,

I will bring my gospel unto them.

16:12 I will show unto thee,

O house of Israel,

the Gentiles shall not have power over you;

I will remember my covenant unto you,

O house of Israel,

ye shall come unto the knowledge of the fulness of my gospel.

16:13 if the Gentiles will repent and return unto me, saith the Father,

they shall be numbered among my people,

O house of Israel.

16:14 I will not suffer my people, who are of the house of Israel, to go through among them, and tread them down, saith the Father.

16:15 if they will not turn unto me, and hearken unto my voice, I will suffer them, yea, I will suffer my people,

O house of Israel,

they shall go through among them, and shall tread them down,

they shall be as salt that hath lost its savor,

which is thenceforth good for nothing but to be cast out, and to be trodden under foot of my people, O house of Israel.

16:16 Verily, verily, I say unto you, thus hath the Father commanded me

I should give unto this people this land for their inheritance.

16:17 then the words of the prophet Isaiah shall be fulfilled,

16:18 Thy watchmen shall lift up the voice; with the voice together shall they sing,

they shall see eye to eye when the Lord shall bring again Zion.

16:19 Break forth into joy, sing together, ye waste places of Jerusalem;

the Lord hath comforted his people,
he hath redeemed Jerusalem.

16:20 The Lord hath made bare his holy arm in the eye of all the
nations;

all the ends of the earth shall see the salvation of God.

382

3 Nephi 17:1 when Jesus had spoken these words he looked round about
again on the multitude

he said unto them: Behold, my time is at hand.

17:2 I perceive that ye are weak, that ye cannot understand all my
words which I am commanded of the Father to speak unto you
at this time.

17:3 go ye unto your homes, and ponder upon the things which I
have said,

ask of the Father, in my name, that ye may understand,
prepare your minds for the morrow, and I come unto you again.

17:4 now I go unto the Father, and also to show myself unto the lost
tribes of Israel,

they are not lost unto the Father, for he knoweth whither he
hath taken them.

383

3 Nephi 17:5 when Jesus had thus spoken,

he cast his eyes round about again on the multitude,
they were in tears, and did look steadfastly upon him

as if they would ask him to tarry a little longer with them.

17:6 he said unto them:

Behold, my bowels are filled with compassion towards you.

17:7 Have ye any that are sick among you? Bring them hither.

Have ye any that are lame, or blind, or halt, or maimed, or leprous, or that are withered, or that are deaf, or that are afflicted in any manner?

Bring them hither and I will heal them,

I have compassion upon you;

my bowels are filled with mercy.

17:8 I perceive that ye desire that I should show unto you what I have done unto your brethren at Jerusalem,

I see that your faith is sufficient that I should heal you.

17:9 when he had thus spoken, all the multitude, with one accord, did go forth with their sick and their afflicted, and their lame, and with their blind, and with their dumb, and with all them that were afflicted in any manner;

he did heal them every one as they were brought forth unto him.

17:10 they did all, both they who had been healed and they who were whole, bow down at his feet, and did worship him;

as many as could come for the multitude did kiss his feet, they did bathe his feet with their tears.

384

3 Nephi 17:11 he commanded that their little children should be brought.

17:12 So they brought their little children and set them down upon

the ground round about him, and Jesus stood in the midst;
the multitude gave way till they had all been brought unto him.

17:13 when they had all been brought,

Jesus stood in the midst,

he commanded the multitude that they should kneel down
upon the ground.

17:14 when they had knelt upon the ground, Jesus groaned within
himself, and said:

Father, I am troubled because of the wickedness of the people
of the house of Israel.

17:15 when he had said these words, he himself also knelt upon the
earth;

he prayed unto the Father,

the things which he prayed cannot be written,

the multitude did bear record who heard him.

17:16 after this manner do they bear record:

The eye hath never seen, neither hath the ear heard, before, so
great and marvelous things as we saw and heard Jesus speak
unto the Father;

17:17 no tongue can speak, neither can there be written by any man,
neither can the hearts of men conceive so great and marvelous
things as we both saw and heard Jesus speak;

no one can conceive of the joy which filled our souls at the time
we heard him pray for us unto the Father.

17:18 when Jesus had made an end of praying unto the Father, he
arose;

so great was the joy of the multitude that they were overcome.

17:19 Jesus spake unto them, and bade them arise.

17:20 they arose from the earth,
he said unto them: Blessed are ye because of your faith.
my joy is full.

17:21 when he had said these words, he wept,
the multitude bare record of it,
he took their little children, one by one, and blessed them,
prayed unto the Father for them.

17:22 when he had done this he wept again;

17:23 he spake unto the multitude,
said unto them:
Behold your little ones.

17:24 And as they looked to behold they cast their eyes towards
heaven,
they saw the heavens open,
they saw angels descending out of heaven as it were in the
midst of fire;
they came down and encircled those little ones about,
they were encircled about with fire;
the angels did minister unto them.

17:25 the multitude did see and hear and bear record;
they know that their record is true
they all of them did see and hear,
every man for himself;
they were in number about two thousand and five hundred
souls;
they did consist of men, women, and children.

3 Nephi 18:1 Jesus commanded his disciples

they should bring forth some bread and wine unto him.

18:2 while they were gone for bread and wine, he commanded the multitude that they should sit themselves down upon the earth.

18:3 when the disciples had come with bread and wine,
he took of the bread and brake and blessed it;
he gave unto the disciples and commanded that they should eat.

18:4 when they had eaten and were filled, he commanded that they should give unto the multitude.

18:5 when the multitude had eaten and were filled, he said unto the disciples:

Behold there shall one be ordained among you, and to him will I give power that he shall break bread and bless it and give it unto the people of my church, unto all those who shall believe and be baptized in my name.

18:6 this shall ye always observe to do, even as I have done,
even as I have broken bread and blessed it and given it unto you.

18:7 this shall ye do in remembrance of my body, which I have shown unto you.

it shall be a testimony unto the Father that ye do always remember me.

if ye do always remember me ye shall have my Spirit to be with you.

18:8 when he said these words, he commanded his disciples that they should take the wine of the cup and drink of it,

that they should also give unto the multitude that they might drink of it.

18:9 they did so, and did drink of it and were filled;

they gave unto the multitude, and they did drink, and they were filled.

18:10 when the disciples had done this, Jesus said unto them:

Blessed are ye for this thing which ye have done, for this is fulfilling my commandments,

this doth witness unto the Father that ye are willing to do that which I have commanded you.

18:11 this shall ye always do to those who repent and are baptized in my name;

ye shall do it in remembrance of my blood, which I have shed for you,

that ye may witness unto the Father that ye do always remember me.

if ye do always remember me ye shall have my Spirit to be with you.

386

3 Nephi 18:12 I give unto you a commandment that ye shall do these things.

if ye shall always do these things blessed are ye,
ye are built upon my rock.

18:13 whoso among you shall do more or less than these are not built upon my rock, but are built upon a sandy foundation;

when the rain descends, and the floods come, and the winds blow, and beat upon them, they shall fall, and the gates of hell

are ready open to receive them.

18:14 blessed are ye if ye shall keep my commandments, which the Father hath commanded me that I should give unto you.

18:15 ye must watch and pray always, lest ye be tempted by the devil, and ye be led away captive by him.

18:16 I have prayed among you even so shall ye pray in my church, among my people who do repent and are baptized in my name.

Behold I am the light;

I have set an example for you.

387

3 Nephi 18:17 when Jesus had spoken these words unto his disciples, he turned again unto the multitude

said unto them:

18:18 Behold, verily, verily, I say unto you, ye must watch and pray always

lest ye enter into temptation;

for Satan desireth to have you, that he may sift you as wheat.

18:19 ye must always pray unto the Father in my name;

18:20 whatsoever ye shall ask the Father in my name, which is right, believing that ye shall receive, behold it shall be given unto you.

18:21 Pray in your families unto the Father, always in my name, that your wives and your children may be blessed.

18:22 ye shall meet together oft;

ye shall not forbid any man from coming unto you when ye

shall meet together, but suffer them that they may come unto
you and forbid them not;

18:23 ye shall pray for them, and shall not cast them out;
if it so be that they come unto you oft ye shall pray for them unto
the Father, in my name.

18:24 hold up your light that it may shine unto the world.

I am the light which ye shall hold up
that which ye have seen me do.

ye see that I have prayed unto the Father, and ye all have
witnessed.

18:25 ye see that I have commanded that none of you should go
away, but rather have commanded that ye should come unto
me,

that ye might feel and see; even so shall ye do unto the world;
whosoever breaketh this commandment suffereth himself to be
led into temptation.

388

3 Nephi 18:26 when Jesus had spoken these words, he turned his eyes again
upon the disciples whom he had chosen,

said unto them:

18:27 Behold verily, verily, I say unto you, I give unto you another
commandment, and then I must go unto my Father

that I may fulfil other commandments which he hath given me.

18:28 this is the commandment which I give unto you,
ye shall not suffer any one knowingly to partake of my flesh and
blood unworthily, when ye shall minister it;

18:29 For whoso eateth and drinketh my flesh and blood unworthily eateth and drinketh damnation to his soul;

if ye know that a man is unworthy to eat and drink of my flesh and blood ye shall forbid him.

18:30 ye shall not cast him out from among you, but ye shall minister unto him and shall pray for him unto the Father, in my name;

if it so be that he repenteth and is baptized in my name, then shall ye receive him, shall minister unto him of my flesh and blood.

18:31 if he repent not he shall not be numbered among my people, he may not destroy my people, I know my sheep, and they are numbered.

18:32 Nevertheless, ye shall not cast him out of your synagogues, or your places of worship, for unto such shall ye continue to minister; ye know not but what they will return and repent, come unto me with full purpose of heart, and I shall heal them; ye shall be the means of bringing salvation unto them.

18:33 keep these sayings which I have commanded you that ye come not under condemnation; wo unto him whom the Father condemneth.

18:34 I give you these commandments because of the disputations which have been among you.

blessed are ye if ye have no disputations among you.

18:35 now I go unto the Father, because it is expedient that I should go unto the Father for your sakes.

18:36 when Jesus had made an end of these sayings, he touched with his hand the disciples whom he had chosen, one by one,

even until he had touched them all,

spake unto them as he touched them.

18:37 the multitude heard not the words which he spake,

they did not bear record;

the disciples bare record that he gave them power to give the Holy Ghost.

this record is true.

18:38 when Jesus had touched them all, there came a cloud and overshadowed the multitude

they could not see Jesus.

18:39 while they were overshadowed he departed from them, and ascended into heaven.

the disciples saw and did bear record that he ascended again into heaven.

389

3 Nephi 19:1 when Jesus had ascended into heaven, the multitude did disperse,

every man did take his wife and his children and did return to his own home.

19:2 it was noised abroad among the people immediately, before it was yet dark, that the multitude had seen Jesus, and that he had ministered unto them, and that he would also show himself on the morrow unto the multitude.

19:4 on the morrow, when the multitude was gathered together, they went forth and stood in the midst of the multitude.

19:5 the multitude was so great that they did cause that they should

be separated into twelve bodies.

19:6 the twelve did teach the multitude;

they did cause that the multitude should kneel down upon the face of the earth, and should pray unto the Father in the name of Jesus.

19:7 the disciples did pray unto the Father also in the name of Jesus.

they arose and ministered unto the people.

19:8 when they had ministered those same words which Jesus had spoken nothing varying from the words which Jesus had spoken behold, they knelt again and prayed to the Father in the name of Jesus.

19:9 they did pray for that which they most desired; and they desired that the Holy Ghost should be given unto them.

19:10 when they had thus prayed they went down unto the water s edge, and the multitude followed them.

19:11 Nephi went down into the water and was baptized.

19:12 he came up out of the water and began to baptize.

he baptized all those whom Jesus had chosen.

19:13 when they were all baptized and had come up out of the water, the Holy Ghost did fall upon them, and they were filled with the Holy Ghost and with fire.

19:14 they were encircled about as if it were by fire; and it came down from heaven, and the multitude did witness it, and did bear record;

angels did come down out of heaven and did minister unto them.

19:15 while the angels were ministering unto the disciples, behold,

Jesus came and stood in the midst and ministered unto them.

19:16 he spake unto the multitude, and commanded them that they should kneel down again upon the earth, and also that his disciples should kneel down upon the earth.

19:17 when they had all knelt down upon the earth, he commanded his disciples that they should pray.

19:18 they began to pray; and they did pray unto Jesus, calling him their Lord and their God.

390

3 Nephi 19:19 Jesus departed out of the midst of them, and went a little way off from them and bowed himself to the earth,

he said:

19:20 Father, I thank thee that thou hast given the Holy Ghost unto these whom I have chosen;

it is because of their belief in me that I have chosen them out of the world.

19:21 Father, I pray thee that thou wilt give the Holy Ghost unto all them that shall believe in their words.

19:22 Father, thou hast given them the Holy Ghost because they believe in me; and thou seest that they believe in me because thou hearest them, and they pray unto me;

they pray unto me because I am with them.

19:23 Father, I pray unto thee for them, and also for all those who shall believe on their words, that they may believe in me, that I may be in them as thou, Father, art in me, that we may be one.

391

3 Nephi 19:24 when Jesus had thus prayed unto the Father, he came unto his disciples,

they did still continue, without ceasing, to pray unto him;

they did not multiply many words, for it was given unto them what they should pray,

they were filled with desire.

19:25 Jesus blessed them as they did pray unto him;

his countenance did smile upon them,

the light of his countenance did shine upon them,

they were as white as the countenance and also the garments of Jesus;

the whiteness thereof did exceed all the whiteness, yea, even there could be nothing upon earth so white as the whiteness thereof.

19:26 Jesus said unto them: Pray on; nevertheless they did not cease to pray.

392*

3 Nephi 19:27 he turned from them again, and went a little way off and bowed himself to the earth;

he prayed again unto the Father, saying:

19:28 Father, I thank thee that thou hast purified those whom I have chosen, because of their faith,

I pray for them, and also for them who shall believe on their words,

that they may be purified in me,
through faith on their words, even as they are purified in me.

19:29 Father, I pray not for the world, but for those whom thou hast
given me out of the world, because of their faith,

that they may be purified in me,
that I may be in them as thou, Father, art in me,
that we may be one, that I may be glorified in them.

393

3 Nephi 19:30 Jesus had spoken these words he came again unto his
disciples;

they did pray steadfastly, without ceasing, unto him;
he did smile upon them again;
they were white, even as Jesus.

19:31 he went again a little way off and prayed unto the Father;

19:32 tongue cannot speak the words which he prayed,
neither can be written by man the words which he prayed.

19:33 the multitude did hear and do bear record; and their hearts
were open

they did understand in their hearts the words which he prayed.

19:34 so great and marvelous were the words which he prayed that
they cannot be written, neither can they be uttered by man.

19:35 when Jesus had made an end of praying he came again to the
disciples,

said unto them:

So great faith have I never seen among all the Jews;
I could not show unto them so great miracles, because of their

unbelief.

19:36 there are none of them that have seen so great things as ye have seen;

neither have they heard so great things as ye have heard.

20:1 he commanded the multitude that they should cease to pray, and also his disciples.

he commanded them that they should not cease to pray in their hearts.

20:2 he commanded them that they should arise and stand up upon their feet.

they arose up and stood upon their feet.

20:3 he brake bread again and blessed it, and gave to the disciples to eat.

20:4 when they had eaten he commanded them that they should break bread, and give unto the multitude.

20:5 when they had given unto the multitude he also gave them wine to drink,

and commanded them that they should give unto the multitude.

20:6 there had been no bread, neither wine, brought by the disciples, neither by the multitude;

20:7 he truly gave unto them bread to eat, and also wine to drink.

20:8 he said unto them: He that eateth this bread eateth of my body to his soul;

he that drinketh of this wine drinketh of my blood to his soul; and his soul shall never hunger nor thirst, but shall be filled.

20:9 when the multitude had all eaten and drunk, behold, they were filled with the Spirit;

they did cry out with one voice, and gave glory to Jesus, whom

they both saw and heard.

395

3 Nephi 20:10 when they had all given glory unto Jesus, he said unto them:

Behold now I finish the commandment which the Father hath commanded me concerning this people, who are a remnant of the house of Israel.

20:11 Ye remember that I spake unto you, and said that when the words of Isaiah should be fulfilled

they are written, ye have them before you, therefore search them

20:12 when they shall be fulfilled then is the fulfilling of the covenant which the Father hath made unto his people,

20:13 then shall the remnants, which shall be scattered abroad upon the face of the earth, be gathered in from the east and from the west, and from the south and from the north;

they shall be brought to the knowledge of the Lord their God, who hath redeemed them.

396

3 Nephi 20:14 the Father hath commanded me that I should give unto you this land, for your inheritance.

20:15 if the Gentiles do not repent after the blessing which they shall receive, after they have scattered my people

20:16 Then shall ye, who are a remnant of the house of Jacob, go forth among them;

ye shall be in the midst of them who shall be many;
ye shall be among them as a lion among the beasts of the
forest,

and as a young lion among the flocks of sheep, who, if he
goeth through both treadeth down and teareth in pieces, and
none can deliver.

20:17 Thy hand shall be lifted up upon thine adversaries, and all
thine enemies shall be cut off.

20:18 I will gather my people together as a man gathereth his
sheaves into the floor.

20:19 I will make my people with whom the Father hath covenanted,
yea, I will make thy horn iron, and I will make thy hoofs brass.

thou shalt beat in pieces many people; and I will consecrate
their gain unto the Lord,

their substance unto the Lord of the whole earth.

I am he who doeth it.

397

3 Nephi 20:20 it shall come to pass, saith the Father, that the sword of my
justice shall hang over them at that day;

except they repent it shall fall upon them, saith the Father,
even upon all the nations of the Gentiles.

20:21 I will establish my people, O house of Israel.

20:22 this people will I establish in this land, unto the fulfilling of the
covenant which I made with your father Jacob;

it shall be a New Jerusalem.

the powers of heaven shall be in the midst of this people;

I will be in the midst of you.

398

3 Nephi 20:23 I am he of whom Moses spake, saying:

A prophet shall the Lord your God raise up unto you of your brethren, like unto me;

him shall ye hear in all things whatsoever he shall say unto you.

it shall come to pass that every soul who will not hear that prophet shall be cut off from among the people.

20:24 I say unto you, yea, and all the prophets from Samuel and those that follow after, as many as have spoken, have testified of me.

399

3 Nephi 20:25 ye are the children of the prophets; and ye are of the house of Israel;

ye are of the covenant which the Father made with your fathers, saying

unto Abraham: And in thy seed shall all the kindreds of the earth be blessed.

20:26 The Father having raised me up unto you first, sent me to bless you in turning away every one of you from his iniquities;

this because ye are the children of the covenant

20:27 after that ye were blessed then fulfilleth the Father the covenant

which he made with Abraham, saying:

In thy seed shall all the kindreds of the earth be blessed unto the pouring out of the Holy Ghost through me upon the Gentiles, which blessing upon the Gentiles shall make them mighty above all, unto the scattering of my people, O house of Israel.

20:28 they shall be a scourge unto the people of this land.

they shall have received the fulness of my gospel,
if they shall harden their hearts against me I will return their iniquities upon their own heads, saith the Father.

20:29 I will remember the covenant which I have made with my people;

I have covenanted with them that I would gather them together in mine own due time,

I would give unto them again the land of their fathers for their inheritance, which is the land of Jerusalem,

which is the promised land unto them forever, saith the Father.

20:30 the time cometh, when the fulness of my gospel shall be preached unto them;

20:31 they shall believe in me, that I am Jesus Christ, the Son of God, and shall pray unto the Father in my name.

20:32 Then shall their watchmen lift up their voice, and with the voice together shall they sing;

they shall see eye to eye.

20:33 Then will the Father gather them together again,
give unto them Jerusalem for the land of their inheritance.

20:34 Then shall they break forth into joy Sing together,
ye waste places of Jerusalem; for the Father hath comforted his

people, he hath redeemed Jerusalem.

20:35 The Father hath made bare his holy arm in the eyes of all the nations;

all the ends of the earth shall see the salvation of the Father;
the Father and I are one.

400

3 Nephi 20:36 then shall be brought to pass that which is written:

Awake, awake again, and put on thy strength, O Zion;
put on thy beautiful garments, O Jerusalem, the holy city,
henceforth there shall no more come into thee the

uncircumcised and the unclean.

20:37 Shake thyself from the dust; arise, sit down, O Jerusalem;
loose thyself from the bands of thy neck, O captive daughter of
Zion.

20:38 thus saith the Lord: Ye have sold yourselves for naught,
ye shall be redeemed without money.

20:39 my people shall know my name;
in that day they shall know that I am he that doth speak.

20:40 then shall they say: How beautiful upon the mountains are the
feet of him that bringeth good tidings unto them,

that publisheth peace;
that bringeth good tidings unto them of good,
that publisheth salvation;
that saith unto Zion: Thy God reigneth!

20:41 then shall a cry go forth: Depart ye, depart ye,
go ye out from thence,

touch not that which is unclean;
go ye out of the midst of her;
be ye clean that bear the vessels of the Lord.

20:42 ye shall not go out with haste nor go by flight;
the Lord will go before you,
the God of Israel shall be your rearward.

20:43 my servant shall deal prudently;
he shall be exalted and extolled and be very high.

20:44 As many were astonished at thee his visage was so marred,
more than any man, and his form more than the sons of men

20:45 So shall he sprinkle many nations; the kings shall shut their
mouths at him,

that which had not been told them shall they see;
that which they had not heard shall they consider.

20:46 Verily, verily, I say unto you, all these things shall surely come,
even as the Father hath commanded me.

Then shall this covenant which the Father hath covenanted
with his people be fulfilled;
then shall Jerusalem be inhabited again with my people,
it shall be the land of their inheritance.

401

3 Nephi 21:1 verily I say unto you, I give unto you a sign,
that ye may know the time when these things shall be about to
take place
that I shall gather in, from their long dispersion, my people, O
house of Israel,

shall establish again among them my Zion;

21:2 this is the thing which I will give unto you for a sign
verily I say unto you that when these things which I declare
unto you,
which I shall declare unto you hereafter of myself, and by the
power of the Holy Ghost
which shall be given unto you of the Father, shall be made
known unto the Gentiles
that they may know concerning this people who are a remnant
of the house of Jacob,
concerning this my people who shall be scattered by them;

21:3 Verily, verily, I say unto you, when these things shall be made
known unto them of the Father,
shall come forth of the Father, from them unto you;

21:4 it is wisdom in the Father that they should be established in this
land,
be set up as a free people by the power of the Father,
these things might come forth from them unto a remnant of your
seed,
that the covenant of the Father may be fulfilled which he hath
covenanted with his people, O house of Israel;

21:5 when these works and the works which shall be wrought
among you hereafter
shall come forth from the Gentiles, unto your seed which shall
dwindle in unbelief because of iniquity;

21:6 thus it behooveth the Father that it should come forth from the
Gentiles,
he may show forth his power unto the Gentiles, for this cause

that the Gentiles, if they will not harden their hearts,
that they may repent and come unto me and be baptized in my
name

know of the true points of my doctrine,
that they may be numbered among my people, O house of
Israel;

21:7 when these things come to pass
that thy seed shall begin to know these things
it shall be a sign unto them, that they may know that the work of
the Father hath already commenced unto the fulfilling of the
covenant which he hath made unto the people who are of the
house of Israel.

402

3 Nephi 21:8 when that day shall come, it shall come to pass that kings shall
shut their mouths;

that which had not been told them shall they see;
that which they had not heard shall they consider.

21:9 in that day, for my sake shall the Father work a work, which
shall be a great and a marvelous work among them;

there shall be among them those who will not believe it,
although a man shall declare it unto them.

21:10 behold, the life of my servant shall be in my hand;
they shall not hurt him, although he shall be marred because of
them.

I will heal him,

I will show unto them that my wisdom is greater than the

cunning of the devil.

21:11 whosoever will not believe in my words,
who am Jesus Christ,
which the Father shall cause him to bring forth unto the
Gentiles,
shall give unto him power that he shall bring them forth unto
the Gentiles,
(it shall be done even as Moses said)
they shall be cut off from among my people who are of the
covenant.

21:12 my people who are a remnant of Jacob shall be among the
Gentiles,
in the midst of them as a lion among the beasts of the forest,
as a young lion among the flocks of sheep,
who, if he go through both treadeth down and teareth in pieces,
none can deliver.

21:13 Their hand shall be lifted up upon their adversaries, and all
their enemies shall be cut off.

21:14 wo be unto the Gentiles except they repent;
it shall come to pass in that day, saith the Father, that I will cut
off thy horses out of the midst of thee,
I will destroy thy chariots;

21:15 I will cut off the cities of thy land, and throw down all thy
strongholds;

21:16 I will cut off witchcrafts out of thy land,
thou shalt have no more soothsayers;

21:17 Thy graven images I will also cut off,
thy standing images out of the midst of thee,

thou shalt no more worship the works of thy hands;
21:18 I will pluck up thy groves out of the midst of thee;
so will I destroy thy cities.
21:19 all lyings, and deceivings, and envyings, and strifes, and
priestcrafts, and whoredoms, shall be done away.

403

3 Nephi 21:20 it shall come to pass, saith the Father, that at that day
whosoever will not repent and come unto my Beloved Son,
them will I cut off from among my people, O house of Israel;
21:21 I will execute vengeance and fury upon them, even as upon the
heathen, such as they have not heard.
21:22 if they will repent
hearken unto my words,
harden not their hearts,
I will establish my church among them,
they shall come in unto the covenant
be numbered among this the remnant of Jacob, unto whom I
have given this land for their inheritance;
21:23 they shall assist my people, the remnant of Jacob,
also as many of the house of Israel as shall come,
that they may build a city, which shall be called the New
Jerusalem.
21:24 then shall they assist my people that they may be gathered in,
who are scattered upon all the face of the land, in unto the New
Jerusalem.
21:25 then shall the power of heaven come down among them;

I also will be in the midst.

21:26 then shall the work of the Father commence at that day, even when this gospel shall be preached among the remnant of this people.

404

3 Nephi 21:26 Verily I say unto you, at that day shall the work of the Father commence among all the dispersed of my people,

even the tribes which have been lost, which the Father hath led away out of Jerusalem.

21:27 the work shall commence among all the dispersed of my people, with the Father

to prepare the way whereby they may come unto me, they may call on the Father in my name.

21:28 then shall the work commence, with the Father among all nations

preparing the way whereby his people may be gathered home to the land of their inheritance.

21:29 they shall go out from all nations;

they shall not go out in haste, nor go by flight,

I will go before them, saith the Father, and I will be their rearward.

22:1 then shall that which is written come to pass:

Sing, O barren, thou that didst not bear;

break forth into singing,

cry aloud, thou that didst not travail with child;

for more are the children of the desolate than the children of

the married wife, saith the Lord.

22:2 Enlarge the place of thy tent,
let them stretch forth the curtains of thy habitations;
spare not, lengthen thy cords and strengthen thy stakes;
22:3 thou shalt break forth on the right hand and on the left,
thy seed shall inherit the Gentiles and make the desolate cities
to be inhabited.

22:4 Fear not, for thou shalt not be ashamed;
neither be thou confounded,
for thou shalt not be put to shame;
for thou shalt forget the shame of thy youth,
shalt not remember the reproach of thy youth, and shalt not
remember the reproach of thy widowhood any more.

22:5 For thy maker, thy husband, the Lord of Hosts is his name;
thy Redeemer, the Holy One of Israel the God of the whole
earth shall he be called.

22:6 For the Lord hath called thee as a woman forsaken and
grieved in spirit,
and a wife of youth, when thou wast refused, saith thy God.

22:7 For a small moment have I forsaken thee, but with great
mercies will I gather thee.

22:8 In a little wrath I hid my face from thee for a moment,
with everlasting kindness will I have mercy on thee, saith the
Lord thy Redeemer.

22:9 For this, the waters of Noah unto me, for as I have sworn that
the waters of Noah should no more go over the earth, so have I
sworn that I would not be wroth with thee.

22:10 For the mountains shall depart and the hills be removed, but

my kindness shall not depart from thee, neither shall the covenant of my peace be removed, saith the Lord that hath mercy on thee.

22:11 O thou afflicted, tossed with tempest, and not comforted! Behold, I will lay thy stones with fair colors, and lay thy foundations with sapphires.

22:12 I will make thy windows of agates, and thy gates of carbuncles, and all thy borders of pleasant stones.

22:13 all thy children shall be taught of the Lord;
great shall be the peace of thy children.

22:14 In righteousness shalt thou be established;
thou shalt be far from oppression for thou shalt not fear, and from terror for it shall not come near thee.

22:15 they shall surely gather together against thee, not by me;
whosoever shall gather together against thee shall fall for thy sake.

405

3 Nephi 22:16 I have created the smith that bloweth the coals in the fire, and that bringeth forth an instrument for his work;

I have created the waster to destroy.

22:17 No weapon that is formed against thee shall prosper;
every tongue that shall revile against thee in judgment thou shalt condemn.

This is the heritage of the servants of the Lord, and their righteousness is of me, saith the Lord.

23:1 I say unto you, that ye ought to search these things.

Yea, a commandment I give unto you that ye search these things diligently; for great are the words of Isaiah.

23:2 For surely he spake as touching all things concerning my people which are of the house of Israel;

it must needs be that he must speak also to the Gentiles.

23:3 all things that he spake have been and shall be, even according to the words which he spake.

23:4 Therefore give heed to my words;

write the things which I have told you;

according to the time and the will of the Father they shall go forth unto the Gentiles.

23:5 whosoever will hearken unto my words and repenteth and is baptized, the same shall be saved.

Search the prophets, for many there be that testify of these things.

23:6 when Jesus had said these words he said unto them again, after he had expounded all the scriptures unto them which they had received, he said unto them: Behold, other scriptures I would that ye should write, that ye have not.

23:7 he said unto Nephi: Bring forth the record which ye have kept.

23:8 Nephi had brought forth the records, and laid them before him, he cast his eyes upon them and said:

23:9 Verily I say unto you, I commanded my servant Samuel, the Lamanite, that he should testify unto this people,

that at the day that the Father should glorify his name in me that there were many saints who should arise from the dead, and should appear unto many, and should minister unto them. he said unto them: Was it not so?

23:10 his disciples answered him and said: Yea, Lord, Samuel did prophesy according to thy words, and they were all fulfilled.

23:11 Jesus said unto them: How be it that ye have not written this thing, that many saints did arise and appear unto many and did minister unto them?

23:12 Nephi remembered that this thing had not been written.

23:13 Jesus commanded that it should be written; therefore it was written according as he commanded.

406

3 Nephi 23:14 when Jesus had expounded all the scriptures in one, which they had written,

he commanded them that they should teach the things which he had expounded unto them.

24:1 he commanded them that they should write the words which the Father had given unto Malachi, which he should tell unto them.

after they were written he expounded them.

these are the words which he did tell unto them, saying: Thus said the Father unto Malachi Behold, I will send my messenger, and he shall prepare the way before me,

the Lord whom ye seek shall suddenly come to his temple,

even the messenger of the covenant, whom ye delight in;

he shall come, saith the Lord of Hosts.

24:2 who may abide the day of his coming, and who shall stand when he appeareth? For he is like a refiner's fire, and like fuller's soap.

24:3 he shall sit as a refiner and purifier of silver; and he shall purify the sons of Levi, and purge them as gold and silver, that they may offer unto the Lord an offering in righteousness.

24:4 Then shall the offering of Judah and Jerusalem be pleasant unto the Lord, as in the days of old, and as in former years.

24:5 I will come near to you to judgment;

I will be a swift witness against the sorcerers, and against the adulterers, and against false swearers, and against those that oppress the hireling in his wages, the widow and the fatherless, and that turn aside the stranger, and fear not me, saith the Lord of Hosts.

24:6 I am the Lord, I change not; therefore ye sons of Jacob are not consumed.

407

3 Nephi 24:7 Even from the days of your fathers ye are gone away from mine ordinances, and have not kept them.

Return unto me and I will return unto you, saith the Lord of Hosts.

But ye say: Wherein shall we return?

24:8 Will a man rob God? Yet ye have robbed me.

But ye say: Wherein have we robbed thee?

In tithes and offerings.

24:9 Ye are cursed with a curse, for ye have robbed me, even this whole nation.

24:10 Bring ye all the tithes into the storehouse, that there may be meat in my house; and prove me now herewith, saith the Lord

of Hosts, if I will not open you the windows of heaven, and pour you out a blessing that there shall not be room enough to receive it.

24:11 I will rebuke the devourer for your sakes,
he shall not destroy the fruits of your ground; neither shall your vine cast her fruit before the time in the fields, saith the Lord of Hosts.

24:12 all nations shall call you blessed, for ye shall be a delightsome land, saith the Lord of Hosts.

408

3 Nephi 24:13 Your words have been stout against me, saith the Lord. Yet ye say: What have we spoken against thee?

24:14 Ye have said: It is vain to serve God, and what doth it profit that we have kept his ordinances
that we have walked mournfully before the Lord of Hosts?

24:15 now we call the proud happy;
they that work wickedness are set up;
they that tempt God are even delivered.

24:16 Then they that feared the Lord spake often one to another, and the Lord hearkened and heard;
a book of remembrance was written before him for them that feared the Lord, and that thought upon his name.

24:17 they shall be mine, saith the Lord of Hosts, in that day when I make up my jewels;
I will spare them as a man spareth his own son that serveth him.

24:18 Then shall ye return and discern between the righteous and the wicked, between him that serveth God and him that serveth him not.

25:1 behold, the day cometh that shall burn as an oven;
all the proud, yea, and all that do wickedly, shall be stubble;
the day that cometh shall burn them up, saith the Lord of Hosts,
that it shall leave them neither root nor branch.

25:2 unto you that fear my name, shall the Son of Righteousness arise with healing in his wings;
ye shall go forth and grow up as calves in the stall.

25:3 ye shall tread down the wicked; for they shall be ashes under the soles of your feet in the day that I shall do this, saith the Lord of Hosts.

25:4 Remember ye the law of Moses, my servant, which I commanded unto him in Horeb for all Israel, with the statutes and judgments.

25:5 I will send you Elijah the prophet before the coming of the great and dreadful day of the Lord;

25:6 he shall turn the heart of the fathers to the children, and the heart of the children to their fathers, lest I come and smite the earth with a curse.

409

3 Nephi 26:1 when Jesus had told these things he expounded them unto the multitude;

he did expound all things unto them, both great and small.

26:2 he saith: These scriptures, which ye had not with you, the

Father commanded that I should give unto you;

it was wisdom in him that they should be given unto future generations.

26:3 he did expound all things,

from the beginning until the time that he should come in his glory

even all things which should come upon the face of the earth,

even until the elements should melt with fervent heat,

the earth should be wrapt together as a scroll,

the heavens and the earth should pass away;

26:4 even unto the great and last day, when all people, and all kindreds, and all nations and tongues shall stand before God, to be judged of their works, whether they be good or whether they be evil

26:5 If they be good, to the resurrection of everlasting life;

if they be evil, to the resurrection of damnation; being on a parallel, the one on the one hand and the other on the other hand, according to the mercy, and the justice, and the holiness which is in Christ, who was before the world began.

410

3 Nephi 26:6 there cannot be written in this book even a hundredth part of the things which Jesus did truly teach unto the people;

26:7 the plates of Nephi do contain the more part of the things which he taught the people.

26:8 these things have I written, which are a lesser part of the things which he taught the people; and I have written them to the

intent that they may be brought again unto this people, from the Gentiles, according to the words which Jesus hath spoken.

26:9 when they shall have received this, which is expedient that they should have first, to try their faith,

if it shall so be that they shall believe these things then shall the greater things be made manifest unto them.

26:10 if it so be that they will not believe these things, then shall the greater things be withheld from them, unto their condemnation.

26:11 I was about to write them, all which were engraven upon the plates of Nephi, but the Lord forbade it,

I will try the faith of my people.

26:12 I, Mormon, do write the things which have been commanded me of the Lord.

26:13 I would that ye should behold that the Lord truly did teach the people, for the space of three days;

after that he did show himself unto them oft, and did break bread oft, and bless it, and give it unto them.

411

3 Nephi 26:14 he did teach and minister unto the children of the multitude of whom hath been spoken, and he did loose their tongues,

they did speak unto their fathers great and marvelous things, even greater than he had revealed unto the people; and he loosed their tongues that they could utter.

26:15 it came to pass that after he had ascended into heaven the second time that he showed himself unto them,

had gone unto the Father,

having healed all their sick, and their lame,
opened the eyes of their blind
unstopped the ears of the deaf,
even had done all manner of cures among them,
raised a man from the dead,
had shown forth his power unto them,
had ascended unto the Father

26:16 the multitude gathered themselves together,
they both saw and heard these children;
even babes did open their mouths and utter marvelous things;
the things which they did utter were forbidden that there should
not any man write them.

412

3 Nephi 26:17 the disciples whom Jesus had chosen began from that time
forth to baptize and to teach as many as did come unto them;
as many as were baptized in the name of Jesus were filled with
the Holy Ghost.

26:18 many of them saw and heard unspeakable things, which are
not lawful to be written.

26:19 they taught, and did minister one to another;
they had all things common among them, every man dealing
justly, one with another.

26:20 they did do all things even as Jesus had commanded them.

413

3 Nephi 26:21 they who were baptized in the name of Jesus were called the church of Christ.

27:1 as the disciples of Jesus were journeying and were preaching the things which they had both heard and seen, and were baptizing in the name of Jesus,

the disciples were gathered together and were united in mighty prayer and fasting.

27:2 Jesus again showed himself unto them,

they were praying unto the Father in his name;

Jesus came and stood in the midst of them, and said unto them: What will ye that I shall give unto you?

27:3 they said unto him: Lord, we will that thou wouldst tell us the name whereby we shall call this church;

there are disputations among the people concerning this matter.

27:4 the Lord said unto them: Verily, verily, I say unto you, why is it that the people should murmur and dispute because of this thing?

27:5 Have they not read the scriptures, which say ye must take upon you the name of Christ, which is my name?

by this name shall ye be called at the last day;

27:6 whoso taketh upon him my name, and endureth to the end, the same shall be saved at the last day.

27:7 whatsoever ye shall do, ye shall do it in my name;

ye shall call the church in my name;

ye shall call upon the Father in my name that he will bless the church for my sake.

414*

3 Nephi 27:8 how be it my church save it be called in my name?

if a church be called in Moses name then it be Moses church;

if it be called in the name of a man then it be the church of a man;

if it be called in my name then it is my church, if it so be that they are built upon my gospel.

27:9 ye are built upon my gospel; therefore ye shall call whatsoever things ye do call, in my name;

if ye call upon the Father, for the church, if it be in my name the Father will hear you;

27:10 if it so be that the church is built upon my gospel then will the Father show forth his own works in it.

27:11 But if it be not built upon my gospel, and is built upon the works of men, or upon the works of the devil, verily I say unto you they have joy in their works for a season,

by and by the end cometh, and they are hewn down and cast into the fire, from whence there is no return.

27:12 their works do follow them,

it is because of their works that they are hewn down;

remember the things that I have told you.

27:13 I have given unto you my gospel, and this is the gospel which I have given unto you that I came into the world to do the will of my Father, because my Father sent me.

27:14 my Father sent me that I might be lifted up upon the cross;

after that I had been lifted up upon the cross, that I might draw all men unto me,

as I have been lifted up by men even so should men be lifted
up by the Father,

to stand before me, to be judged of their works, whether they
be good or whether they be evil

27:15 for this cause have I been lifted up;

therefore, according to the power of the Father I will draw all
men unto me, that they may be judged according to their works.

415*

3 Nephi 27:16 whoso repenteth and is baptized in my name shall be filled;

if he endureth to the end, behold, him will I hold guiltless before
my Father at that day when I shall stand to judge the world.

27:17 he that endureth not unto the end, the same is he that is also
hewn down and cast into the fire, from whence they can no
more return, because of the justice of the Father.

27:18 this is the word which he hath given unto the children of men.

for this cause he fulfilleth the words which he hath given,
he lieth not, but fulfilleth all his words.

27:19 no unclean thing can enter into his kingdom;

nothing entereth into his rest save it be those who have
washed their garments in my blood, because of their faith, and
the repentance of all their sins, and their faithfulness unto the
end.

416

3 Nephi 27:20 this is the commandment:

Repent, all ye ends of the earth,
come unto me and be baptized in my name,
that ye may be sanctified by the reception of the Holy Ghost,
that ye may stand spotless before me at the last day.

27:21 Verily, verily, I say unto you, this is my gospel;
ye know the things that ye must do in my church;
the works which ye have seen me do that shall ye also do;
that which ye have seen me do even that shall ye do;
27:22 if ye do these things blessed are ye, for ye shall be lifted up at
the last day.

417*

3 Nephi 27:23 Write the things which ye have seen and heard, save it be
those which are forbidden.

27:24 Write the works of this people, which shall be, even as hath
been written, of that which hath been.

27:25 out of the books which have been written, and which shall be
written, shall this people be judged,
by them shall their works be known unto men.

27:26 all things are written by the Father;
out of the books which shall be written shall the world be
judged.

27:27 know ye that ye shall be judges of this people, according to the
judgment which I shall give unto you, which shall be just.

what manner of men ought ye to be?

Verily I say unto you, even as I am.

27:28 now I go unto the Father.

verily I say unto you, whatsoever things ye shall ask the Father
in my name shall be given unto you.

27:29 ask, and ye shall receive;

knock, and it shall be opened unto you;

he that asketh, receiveth;

unto him that knocketh, it shall be opened.

27:30 my joy is great, even unto fulness, because of you,

even the Father rejoiceth, and also all the holy angels,

because of you and this generation;

none of them are lost.

27:31 I mean them who are now alive of this generation;

in them I have fulness of joy.

418

3 Nephi 27:32 it sorroweth me because of the fourth generation from this
generation, for they are led away captive by him even as was

the son of perdition;

they will sell me for silver and for gold, and for that which moth
doth corrupt and which thieves can break through and steal.

in that day will I visit them, even in turning their works upon
their own heads.

27:33 Enter ye in at the strait gate; for strait is the gate, and narrow is
the way that leads to life, and few there be that find it;

wide is the gate, and broad the way which leads to death, and
many there be that travel therein, until the night cometh,
wherein no man can work.

28:1 What is it that ye desire of me, after that I am gone to the

Father?

28:2 after we have lived unto the age of man, that our ministry, wherein thou hast called us, may have an end, that we may speedily come unto thee in thy kingdom.

28:3 he said unto them: Blessed are ye because ye desired this thing of me;

after that ye are seventy and two years old ye shall come unto me in my kingdom; and with me ye shall find rest.

28:4 he turned himself unto the three, and said unto them: What will ye that I should do unto you, when I am gone unto the Father?

28:5 they sorrowed in their hearts, for they durst not speak unto him the thing which they desired.

28:6 he said unto them: Behold, I know your thoughts, ye have desired the thing which John, my beloved, who was with me in my ministry, before that I was lifted up by the Jews, desired of me.

28:7 more blessed are ye, for ye shall never taste of death; but ye shall live to behold all the doings of the Father unto the children of men, even until all things shall be fulfilled according to the will of the Father, when I shall come in my glory with the powers of heaven.

28:8 ye shall never endure the pains of death; but when I shall come in my glory ye shall be changed in the twinkling of an eye from mortality to immortality;

then shall ye be blessed in the kingdom of my Father.

419

3 Nephi 28:9 for ye have desired that ye might bring the souls of men unto me, while the world shall stand.

28:10 for this cause ye shall have fulness of joy;
ye shall sit down in the kingdom of my Father;
your joy shall be full, even as the Father hath given me fulness
of joy;

ye shall be even as I am,
I am even as the Father;
the Father and I are one;

28:11 the Holy Ghost beareth record of the Father and me;
the Father giveth the Holy Ghost unto the children of men,
because of me.

28:12 when Jesus had spoken these words, he touched every one of them with his finger save it were the three who were to tarry, and then he departed.

28:13 the heavens were opened, and they were caught up into heaven, and saw and heard unspeakable things.

28:14 it was forbidden them that they should utter; neither was it given unto them power that they could utter the things which they saw and heard;

28:15 whether they were in the body or out of the body, they could not tell; for it did seem unto them like a transfiguration of them, that they were changed from this body of flesh into an immortal state, that they could behold the things of God.

28:16 they did again minister upon the face of the earth; nevertheless they did not minister of the things which they had heard and seen, because of the commandment which was given them in heaven.

420*

3 Nephi 28:18 they did go forth upon the face of the land,
did minister unto all the people,
uniting as many to the church as would believe in their
preaching;

baptizing them, and as many as were baptized did receive the
Holy Ghost.

28:19 they were cast into prison by them who did not belong to the
church.

the prisons could not hold them, for they were rent in twain.

28:20 they were cast down into the earth;

they did smite the earth with the word of God, insomuch that by
his power they were delivered out of the depths of the earth;

they could not dig pits sufficient to hold them.

28:21 thrice they were cast into a furnace and received no harm.

28:22 twice were they cast into a den of wild beasts; and behold they
did play with the beasts as a child with a suckling lamb, and
received no harm.

28:23 thus they did go forth among all the people of Nephi, and did
preach the gospel of Christ unto all people upon the face of the
land;

they were converted unto the Lord, and were united unto the
church of Christ,

thus the people of that generation were blessed, according to
the word of Jesus.

3 Nephi 28:26 I have seen them,

they have ministered unto me.

28:27 they will be among the Gentiles,

the Gentiles shall know them not.

28:28 They will also be among the Jews,

the Jews shall know them not.

28:29 when the Lord seeth fit in his wisdom that they shall minister

unto all the scattered tribes of Israel, and unto all nations,

kindreds, tongues and people, and shall bring out of them unto

Jesus many souls,

their desire may be fulfilled,

because of the convincing power of God which is in them.

28:30 they are as the angels of God,

if they shall pray unto the Father in the name of Jesus they can
show themselves unto whatsoever man it seemeth them good.

28:31 great and marvelous works shall be wrought by them, before
the great and coming day when all people must surely stand

before the judgment-seat of Christ;

28:32 even among the Gentiles shall there be a great and marvelous
work wrought by them, before that judgment day.

28:33 if ye had all the scriptures which give an account of all the
marvelous works of Christ,

ye would according to the words of Christ, know that these
things must surely come.

28:34 wo be unto him that will not hearken unto the words of Jesus,

also to them whom he hath chosen and sent among them;

whoso receiveth not the words of Jesus and the words of those
whom he hath sent receiveth not him;

therefore he will not receive them at the last day;

28:35 it would be better for them if they had not been born.

do ye suppose that ye can get rid of the justice of an offended
God, who hath been trampled under feet of men, that thereby
salvation might come?

422

3 Nephi 28:36 I spake concerning those whom the Lord hath chosen, yea,
even three who were caught up into the heavens,

I knew not whether they were cleansed from mortality to
immortality

28:37 since I wrote, I have inquired of the Lord, and he hath made it
manifest unto me that there must needs be a change wrought
upon their bodies, or else it needs be that they must taste of
death;

28:38 that they might not taste of death there was a change wrought
upon their bodies,

that they might not suffer pain nor sorrow save it were for the
sins of the world.

28:39 this change was not equal to that which shall take place at the
last day;

there was a change wrought upon them, insomuch that Satan
could have no power over them,

he could not tempt them;

they were sanctified in the flesh,

they were holy,
the powers of the earth could not hold them.

28:40 in this state they were to remain until the judgment day of
Christ;

at that day they were to receive a greater change,
to be received into the kingdom of the Father to go no more out,
to dwell with God eternally in the heavens.

29:1 when the Lord shall see fit, in his wisdom, that these sayings
shall come unto the Gentiles according to his word, then ye
may know that the covenant which the Father hath made with
the children of Israel, concerning their restoration to the lands
of their inheritance, is already beginning to be fulfilled.

29:2 ye may know that the words of the Lord, which have been
spoken by the holy prophets, shall all be fulfilled;

ye need not say that the Lord delays his coming unto the
children of Israel.

29:3 ye need not imagine in your hearts that the words which have
been spoken are vain,

the Lord will remember his covenant which he hath made unto
his people of the house of Israel.

29:4 when ye shall see these sayings coming forth among you, then
ye need not any longer spurn at the doings of the Lord, for the
sword of his justice is in his right hand;

if ye shall spurn at his doings he will cause that it shall soon
overtake you.

29:5 Wo unto him that spurneth at the doings of the Lord;
wo unto him that shall deny the Christ and his works!

29:6 wo unto him that shall deny the revelations of the Lord, and that

shall say the Lord no longer worketh by revelation, or by prophecy, or by gifts, or by tongues, or by healings, or by the power of the Holy Ghost!

29:7 wo unto him that shall say at that day, to get gain, that there can be no miracle wrought by Jesus Christ;

he that doeth this shall become like unto the son of perdition, for whom there was no mercy, according to the word of Christ!

29:8 ye need not any longer hiss, nor spurn, nor make game of the Jews, nor any of the remnant of the house of Israel; for behold, the Lord remembereth his covenant unto them, and he will do unto them according to that which he hath sworn.

29:9 ye need not suppose that ye can turn the right hand of the Lord unto the left, that he may not execute judgment unto the fulfilling of the covenant which he hath made unto the house of Israel.

423

3 Nephi 30:1 Hearken, O ye Gentiles, and hear the words of Jesus Christ, the Son of the living God,

he hath commanded me that I should speak concerning you, he commandeth me that I should write, saying:

30:2 Turn, all ye Gentiles, from your wicked ways; repent of your evil doings, of your lyings and deceivings, and of your whoredoms, and of your secret abominations, and your idolatries, and of your murders, and your priestcrafts, and your envyings, and your strifes, and from all your wickedness and

abominations,

come unto me, and be baptized in my name,
that ye may receive a remission of your sins,
be filled with the Holy Ghost,
that ye may be numbered with my people
of the house of Israel.

424*

4 Nephi:1 the disciples of Jesus had formed a church of Christ in all the
lands round about.

as many as did come unto them, and did truly repent of their
sins, were baptized in the name of Jesus;

they did also receive the Holy Ghost.

4 Nephi:2 the people were all converted unto the Lord, upon all the face
of the land, both Nephites and Lamanites,

there were no contentions and disputations among them,

every man did deal justly one with another.

4 Nephi:3 they had all things common among them;

there were not rich and poor, bond and free,

they were all made free, and partakers of the heavenly gift.

425

4 Nephi:4 there still continued to be peace in the land.

4 Nephi:5 there were great and marvelous works wrought by the disciples
of Jesus,

they did heal the sick, and raise the dead, and cause the lame

to walk, and the blind to receive their sight, and the deaf to hear;

all manner of miracles did they work among the children of men;

in nothing did they work miracles save it were in the name of Jesus.

4 Nephi:7 the Lord did prosper them exceedingly in the land; they did build cities again where there had been cities burned.

4 Nephi:8 that great city Zarahemla did they cause to be built again.

4 Nephi:10 the people of Nephi did wax strong, and did multiply exceedingly fast, and became an exceedingly fair and delightsome people.

4 Nephi:11 they were married, and given in marriage, and were blessed according to the multitude of the promises which the Lord had made unto them.

426

4 Nephi:12 they did not walk any more after the performances and ordinances of the law of Moses;

they did walk after the commandments which they had received from their Lord and their God, continuing in fasting and prayer, in meeting together oft both to pray and to hear the word of the Lord.

4 Nephi:13 there was no contention among all the people, in all the land; there were mighty miracles wrought among the disciples of Jesus.

4 Nephi:14 the disciples of Jesus, whom he had chosen, had all gone to the paradise of God, save it were the three who should tarry;

there were other disciples ordained in their stead;

4 Nephi:15 there was no contention in the land, because of the love of God which did dwell in the hearts of the people.

4 Nephi:16 there were no envyings, nor strifes, nor tumults, nor whoredoms, nor lyings, nor murders, nor any manner of lasciviousness;

surely there could not be a happier people among all the people who had been created by the hand of God.

4 Nephi:17 There were no robbers, nor murderers, neither were there Lamanites, nor any manner of -ites;

they were in one, the children of Christ, and heirs to the kingdom of God.

4 Nephi:18 how blessed were they! For the Lord did bless them in all their doings;

there was no contention in all the land.

4 Nephi:19 Nephi, he that kept this last record, (and he kept it upon the plates of Nephi) died, and his son Amos kept it in his stead;

he kept it upon the plates of Nephi also.

4 Nephi:20 he kept it eighty and four years,

there was still peace in the land, save it were a small part of the people who had revolted from the church and taken upon them the name of Lamanites;

4 Nephi:23 the people had multiplied, insomuch that they were spread

upon all the face of the land,

they had become exceedingly rich, because of their prosperity
in Christ.

4 Nephi:24 there began to be among them those who were lifted up in
pride, such as the wearing of costly apparel, and all manner of
fine pearls, and of the fine things of the world.

4 Nephi:25 from that time forth they did have their goods and their
substance no more common among them.

4 Nephi:26 they began to be divided into classes;

they began to build up churches unto themselves to get gain,
and began to deny the true church of Christ.

4 Nephi:27 when two hundred and ten years had passed away there were
many churches in the land;

there were many churches which professed to know the Christ,
they did deny the more parts of his gospel,
they did receive all manner of wickedness, and did administer
that which was sacred unto him to whom it had been forbidden
because of unworthiness.

4 Nephi:28 this church did multiply exceedingly because of iniquity, and
because of the power of Satan who did get hold upon their
hearts.

4 Nephi:29 there was another church which denied the Christ;

they did persecute the true church of Christ, because of their
humility and their belief in Christ;

they did despise them because of the many miracles which
were wrought among them.

4 Nephi:30 they did exercise power and authority over the disciples of
Jesus who did tarry with them,

they did cast them into prison; but by the power of the word of God, which was in them, the prisons were rent in twain, they went forth doing mighty miracles among them.

4 Nephi:31 notwithstanding all these miracles, the people did harden their hearts, and did seek to kill them, even as the Jews at Jerusalem sought to kill Jesus, according to his word.

4 Nephi:32 they did cast them into furnaces of fire, they came forth receiving no harm.

4 Nephi:33 they also cast them into dens of wild beasts, they did play with the wild beasts even as a child with a lamb; they did come forth from among them, receiving no harm.

428

4 Nephi:34 Nevertheless, the people did harden their hearts, for they were led by many priests and false prophets to build up many churches, and to do all manner of iniquity.

they did smite upon the people of Jesus; but the people of Jesus did not smite again.

they did dwindle in unbelief and wickedness, from year to year, 4 Nephi:35 in this year, yea, in the two hundred and thirty and first year, there was a great division among the people.

4 Nephi:36 there arose a people who were called the Nephites, and they were true believers in Christ;

4 Nephi:37 the true believers in Christ, and the true worshipers of Christ, (among whom were the three disciples of Jesus who should tarry) were called Nephites,

4 Nephi:38 they who rejected the gospel were called Lamanites,

they did not dwindle in unbelief, but they did wilfully rebel against the gospel of Christ;

they did teach their children that they should not believe, even as their fathers, from the beginning, did dwindle.

4 Nephi:39 it was because of the wickedness and abomination of their fathers, even as it was in the beginning.

they were taught to hate the children of God, even as the Lamanites were taught to hate the children of Nephi from the beginning.

4 Nephi:40 the more wicked part of the people did wax strong, and became exceedingly more numerous than were the people of God.

4 Nephi:41 they did still continue to build up churches unto themselves, and adorn them with all manner of precious things.

4 Nephi:42 the wicked part of the people began again to build up the secret oaths and combinations of Gadianton.

4 Nephi:43 the people who were called the people of Nephi began to be proud in their hearts, because of their exceeding riches, and become vain like unto their brethren, the Lamanites.

4 Nephi:44 from this time the disciples began to sorrow for the sins of the world.

4 Nephi:45 when three hundred years had passed away, both the people of Nephi and the Lamanites had become exceedingly wicked one like unto another.

4 Nephi:46 there were none that were righteous save it were the disciples of Jesus.

gold and silver did they lay up in store in abundance, and did traffic in all manner of traffic.

4 Nephi:47 Amos died; and his brother, Ammaron, did keep the record in his stead.

4 Nephi:48 Ammaron, being constrained by the Holy Ghost, did hide up the records which were sacred

4 Nephi:49 he did hide them up unto the Lord that they might come again unto the remnant of the house of Jacob according to the prophecies and the promises of the Lord.

429

Mormon 1:2 and Ammaron said unto me:

1:3 when ye are about twenty and four years old
remember the things that ye have observed concerning this people;

go to the land Antum, unto a hill which shall be called Shim;
there have I deposited unto the Lord all the sacred engravings concerning this people.

1:4 ye shall take the plates of Nephi unto yourself, and the remainder shall ye leave in the place where they are;

ye shall engrave on the plates of Nephi all the things that ye have observed concerning this people.

1:5 I remembered the things which Ammaron commanded me.

1:7 the people were as numerous almost, as it were the sand of the sea.

1:8 there began to be a war
this war was between the Nephites, and the Lamanites

1:11 they did have in this same year a number of battles, in which the Nephites did beat the Lamanites and did slay many of

them.

1:12 the Lamanites withdrew their design, and there was peace settled in the land; and peace did remain for the space of about four years,

1:13 But wickedness did prevail upon the face of the whole land, insomuch that the Lord did take away his beloved disciples, the work of miracles and of healing did cease because of the iniquity of the people.

1:14 there were no gifts from the Lord, and the Holy Ghost did not come upon any, because of their wickedness and unbelief.

1:15 I was visited of the Lord, and tasted and knew of the goodness of Jesus.

1:16 I did endeavor to preach unto this people, but my mouth was shut, and I was forbidden that I should preach unto them; they had wilfully rebelled against their God; and the beloved disciples were taken away out of the land, because of their iniquity.

430

Mormon 1:17 I did remain among them, but I was forbidden to preach unto them, because of the hardness of their hearts;

because of the hardness of their hearts the land was cursed for their sake.

1:18 these Gadianon robbers, who were among the Lamanites, did infest the land,

the inhabitants thereof began to hide up their treasures in the earth; and they became slippery,

the Lord had cursed the land, that they could not hold them, nor retain them again.

2:1 there began to be a war again between the Nephites and the Lamanites.

2:2 in my sixteenth year I did go forth at the head of an army of the Nephites, against the Lamanites;

2:3 the Lamanites did come upon us with exceedingly great power, insomuch that they did frighten my armies;

they would not fight, and they began to retreat towards the north countries.

2:4 notwithstanding all our fortifications the Lamanites did come upon us and did drive us out of the city.

2:8 notwithstanding the great destruction which hung over my people, they did not repent of their evil doings;

there was blood and carnage spread throughout all the face of the land,

it was one complete revolution throughout all the face of the land.

431

Mormon 2:10 the Nephites began to repent of their iniquity, and began to cry even as had been prophesied by Samuel the prophet;

no man could keep that which was his own,
for the thieves, and the robbers, and the murderers, and the magic art, and the witchcraft which was in the land.

2:11 there began to be a mourning and a lamentation in all the land

2:12 when I, Mormon, saw their lamentation and their mourning and their sorrow before the Lord, my heart did begin to rejoice

within me, knowing the mercies and the long-suffering of the Lord, therefore supposing that he would be merciful unto them that they would again become a righteous people.

2:13 my joy was vain,

their sorrowing was not unto repentance, because of the goodness of God;

it was rather the sorrowing of the damned,

the Lord would not always suffer them to take happiness in sin.

2:14 they did not come unto Jesus with broken hearts and contrite spirits,

they did curse God, and wish to die.

Nevertheless they would struggle with the sword for their lives.

2:15 I saw that the day of grace was passed with them, both temporally and spiritually;

2:17 I had gone according to the word of Ammaron, and taken the plates of Nephi, and did make a record according to the words of Ammaron.

2:18 upon the plates of Nephi I did make a full account of all the wickedness and abominations;

upon these plates I did forbear to make a full account of their wickedness and abominations,

a continual scene of wickedness and abominations has been before mine eyes ever since I have been sufficient to behold the ways of man.

2:19 wo is me because of their wickedness;

my heart has been filled with sorrow because of their wickedness, all my days;

nevertheless, I know that I shall be lifted up at the last day.

Mormon 2:23 And it came to pass that I did speak unto my people, and did urge them with great energy, that they would stand boldly before the Lamanites and fight for their wives, and their children, and their houses, and their homes.

2:24 my words did arouse them somewhat to vigor,
they did not flee from before the Lamanites, but did stand with boldness against them.

2:26 when they had fled we did pursue them with our armies, and did meet them again, and did beat them;

the strength of the Lord was not with us;
we were left to ourselves, that the Spirit of the Lord did not abide in us;

we had become weak like unto our brethren.

2:27 my heart did sorrow because of this the great calamity of my people,

because of their wickedness and their abominations.

we did go forth against the Lamanites and the robbers of Gadianton, until we had again taken possession of the lands of our inheritance.

3:1 I had employed my people, the Nephites, in preparing their lands and their arms against the time of battle.

3:2 the Lord did say unto me:

Cry unto this people Repent ye, and come unto me,
be ye baptized, and build up again my church, and ye shall be spared.

3:3 I did cry unto this people, but it was in vain;
they did not realize that it was the Lord that had spared them,
and granted unto them a chance for repentance.
they did harden their hearts against the Lord their God.

434

Mormon 3:4 the king of the Lamanites sent an epistle unto me,

3:5 I did cause my people that they should gather themselves
together at the land Desolation,

3:7 the Lamanites did come down to the city of Desolation to battle
against us;

we did beat them, insomuch that they did return to their own
lands again.

3:8 we did beat them again, and did slay a great number of them,

3:9 because of this great thing which my people, the Nephites, had
done, they began to boast in their own strength,

began to swear before the heavens that they would avenge
themselves of the blood of their brethren who had been slain
by their enemies.

3:10 they did swear by the heavens, and also by the throne of God,
that they would go up to battle against their enemies, and
would cut them off from the face of the land.

3:11 I, Mormon, did utterly refuse from this time forth to be a
commander and a leader of this people, because of their
wickedness and abomination.

3:12 I had led them, notwithstanding their wickedness
I had led them many times to battle,

had loved them, according to the love of God which was in me,
with all my heart;

my soul had been poured out in prayer unto my God all the day
long for them;

it was without faith, because of the hardness of their hearts.

3:13 thrice have I delivered them out of the hands of their enemies,
they have repented not of their sins.

3:14 when they had sworn by all that had been forbidden them by
our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ, that they would go up unto
their enemies to battle, and avenge themselves of the blood of
their brethren,

the voice of the Lord came unto me saying:

3:15 Vengeance is mine, and I will repay;

because this people repented not after I had delivered them,
behold, they shall be cut off from the face of the earth.

3:16 I utterly refused to go up against mine enemies;

I did even as the Lord had commanded me;

I did stand as an idle witness to manifest unto the world the
things which I saw and heard, according to the manifestations
of the Spirit which had testified of things to come.

435

Mormon 3:18 I write unto all the ends of the earth;

unto you, twelve tribes of Israel, who shall be judged according
to your works by the twelve whom Jesus chose to be his
disciples in the land of Jerusalem.

3:19 I write also unto the remnant of this people,

who shall also be judged by the twelve whom Jesus chose in this land;

they shall be judged by the other twelve whom Jesus chose in the land of Jerusalem.

3:20 these things doth the Spirit manifest unto me;
for this cause I write unto you,
that ye may know that ye must all stand before the judgment-seat of Christ,

every soul who belongs to the whole human family of Adam;
ye must stand to be judged of your works,
whether they be good or evil;

3:21 also that ye may believe the gospel of Jesus Christ, which ye shall have among you;

also that the Jews, the covenant people of the Lord, shall have other witness besides him whom they saw and heard, that Jesus, whom they slew, was the very Christ and the very God.

3:22 I would that I could persuade all ye ends of the earth to repent and prepare to stand before the judgment-seat of Christ.

436

Mormon 4:7 the Lamanites did come against the city Teancum,

4:8 they were repulsed and driven back by the Nephites.

when the Nephites saw that they had driven the Lamanites they did again boast of their own strength;

4:10 the Nephites repented not of the evil they had done, but persisted in their wickedness continually.

4:11 it is impossible for the tongue to describe, or for man to write a

perfect description of the horrible scene of the blood and carnage which was among the people, both of the Nephites and of the Lamanites;

every heart was hardened, so that they delighted in the shedding of blood continually.

4:12 there never had been so great wickedness among all the children of Lehi, nor even among all the house of Israel, according to the words of the Lord, as was among this people.

4:13 the Lamanites did take possession of the city Desolation, because their number did exceed the number of the Nephites.

4:14 they did also march forward against the city Teancum, and did drive the inhabitants forth out of her, and did take many prisoners both women and children, and did offer them up as sacrifices unto their idol gods.

4:15 the Nephites being angry because the Lamanites had sacrificed their women and their children,

they did go against the Lamanites with exceedingly great anger,

they did beat again the Lamanites, and drive them out of their lands.

4:18 from this time forth did the Nephites gain no power over the Lamanites, but began to be swept off by them even as a dew before the sun.

437

Mormon 4:23 I, Mormon, seeing that the Lamanites were about to overthrow the land,

I did go to the hill Shim, and did take up all the records which Ammaron had hid up unto the Lord.

5:1 I did go forth among the Nephites, and did repent of the oath which I had made

I would no more assist them;
they gave me command again of their armies,
they looked upon me as though I could deliver them from their afflictions.

5:2 I was without hope,
I knew the judgments of the Lord which should come upon them;

they repented not of their iniquities, but did struggle for their lives without calling upon that Being who created them.

5:3 the Lamanites did come against us as we had fled to the city of Jordan;

they were driven back that they did not take the city at that time.

5:4 they came against us again, and we did maintain the city.

5:5 whatsoever lands we had passed by, and the inhabitants thereof were not gathered in, were destroyed by the Lamanites,

their towns, and villages, and cities were burned with fire;

5:6 the Lamanites did come again against us to battle, and we did stand against them boldly;

it was all in vain, for so great were their numbers that they did tread the people of the Nephites under their feet.

5:7 we did again take to flight, and those whose flight was swifter than the Lamanites did escape,

those whose flight did not exceed the Lamanites were swept down and destroyed.

438

Mormon 5:8 I, Mormon, do not desire to harrow up the souls of men in casting before them such an awful scene of blood and carnage as was laid before mine eyes;

these things must surely be made known,
all things which are hid must be revealed upon the house-tops

5:9 a knowledge of these things must come unto the remnant of these people, and also unto the Gentiles,

I write a small abridgment, daring not to give a full account of the things which I have seen, because of the commandment which I have received,

that ye might not have too great sorrow because of the wickedness of this people.

5:10 I speak unto their seed, and also to the Gentiles who have care for the house of Israel, that realize and know from whence their blessings come.

5:11 I know that such will sorrow for the calamity of the house of Israel;

they will sorrow for the destruction of this people;
they will sorrow that this people had not repented
that they might have been clasped in the arms of Jesus.

439

Mromon 5:12 these things are written unto the remnant of the house of

Jacob;

they are written after this manner, because it is known of God that wickedness will not bring them forth unto them;

they are to be hid up unto the Lord that they may come forth in his own due time.

5:13 this is the commandment which I have received;

behold, they shall come forth according to the commandment of the Lord, when he shall see fit, in his wisdom.

5:14 they shall go unto the unbelieving of the Jews;

for this intent shall they go

that they may be persuaded that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of the living God; that the Father may bring about, through his most Beloved, his great and eternal purpose, in restoring the Jews, or all the house of Israel, to the land of their inheritance, which the Lord their God hath given them,

unto the fulfilling of his covenant;

5:15 that the seed of this people may more fully believe his gospel, which shall go forth unto them from the Gentiles;

440

Mormon 5:15 this people shall be scattered, and shall become a dark, a filthy, and a loathsome people, beyond the description of that which ever hath been amongst us,

even that which hath been among the Lamanites,

because of their unbelief and idolatry.

5:16 the Spirit of the Lord hath already ceased to strive with their fathers; and they are without Christ and God in the world;

they are driven about as chaff before the wind.

5:17 They were once a delightsome people, and they had Christ for their shepherd;

they were led even by God the Father.

5:18 they are led about by Satan, even as chaff is driven before the wind, or as a vessel is tossed about upon the waves, without sail or anchor, or without anything wherewith to steer her;

5:19 the Lord hath reserved their blessings, which they might have received in the land, for the Gentiles who shall possess the land.

441

Mormon 5:20 they shall be driven and scattered by the Gentiles; after they have been driven and scattered by the Gentiles, behold, then will the Lord remember the covenant which he made unto Abraham and unto all the house of Israel.

5:21 the Lord will remember the prayers of the righteous, which have been put up unto him for them.

5:22 O ye Gentiles, how can ye stand before the power of God, except ye shall repent and turn from your evil ways?

5:23 Know ye not that ye are in the hands of God? Know ye not that he hath all power, and at his great command the earth shall be rolled together as a scroll?

5:24 repent ye, and humble yourselves before him, lest he shall come out in justice against you

lest a remnant of the seed of Jacob shall go forth among you as a lion, and tear you in pieces, and there is none to deliver.

Mormon 6:2 I, Mormon, wrote an epistle unto the king of the Lamanites,
desired of him that he would grant unto us that we might gather
together our people unto the land of Cumorah, by a hill which
was called Cumorah, and there we could give them battle.

6:3 the king of the Lamanites did grant unto me the thing which I
desired.

6:4 we did march forth to the land of Cumorah,
we did pitch our tents around about the hill Cumorah;
it was in a land of many waters, rivers, and fountains;
here we had hope to gain advantage over the Lamanites.

6:5 when three hundred and eighty and four years had passed
away, we had gathered in all the remainder of our people unto
the land of Cumorah.

6:6 when we had gathered in all our people in one to the land of
Cumorah,

I, Mormon, began to be old;
knowing it to be the last struggle of my people,
having been commanded of the Lord that I should not suffer the
records which had been handed down by our fathers, which
were sacred, to fall into the hands of the Lamanites,

Mormon 6:6 I made this record out of the plates of Nephi, and hid up in the
hill Cumorah all the records which had been entrusted to me

by the hand of the Lord, save it were these few plates which I gave unto my son Moroni.

6:7 my people, with their wives and their children, did now behold the armies of the Lamanites marching towards them;

with that awful fear of death which fills the breasts of all the wicked, did they await to receive them.

6:8 they came to battle against us, and every soul was filled with terror because of the greatness of their numbers.

6:9 they did fall upon my people with the sword, and with the bow, and with the arrow, and with the ax, and with all manner of weapons of war.

6:10 my men were hewn down,

I fell wounded in the midst;

they passed by me that they did not put an end to my life.

6:11 they had gone through and hewn down all my people save it were twenty and four of us,

we having survived the dead of our people, did behold on the morrow, when the Lamanites had returned unto their camps, from the top of the hill Cumorah,

6:15 all my people, save it were those twenty and four who were with me, and also a few who had escaped into the south countries, and a few who had deserted over unto the Lamanites,

their flesh, and bones, and blood lay upon the face of the earth, being left by the hands of those who slew them to molder upon the land, and to crumble and to return to their mother earth.

444*

Mormon 6:16 I cried:

6:17 O ye fair ones, how could ye have departed from the ways of the Lord!

O ye fair ones, how could ye have rejected that Jesus, who stood with open arms to receive you!

6:18 if ye had not done this, ye would not have fallen.

ye are fallen, and I mourn your loss.

6:19 O ye fair sons and daughters, ye fathers and mothers, ye husbands and wives, ye fair ones, how is it that ye could have fallen!

6:20 ye are gone, and my sorrows cannot bring your return.

6:21 the day soon cometh that your mortal must put on immortality, these bodies which are now moldering in corruption must soon become incorruptible bodies;

then ye must stand before the judgment-seat of Christ to be judged according to your works;

if it so be that ye are righteous, then are ye blessed with your fathers who have gone before you.

6:22 O that ye had repented before this great destruction had come upon you.

ye are gone, and the Father, yea, the Eternal Father of heaven, knoweth your state;

he doeth with you according to his justice and mercy.

445*

Mormon 7:1 I would speak somewhat unto the remnant of this people who

are spared,

that they may know of the things of their fathers;

7:2 Know ye that ye are of the house of Israel.

7:3 Know ye that ye must come unto repentance, or ye cannot be saved.

7:4 Know ye that ye must lay down your weapons of war, and delight no more in the shedding of blood,

take them not again, save it be that God shall command you.

7:5 Know ye that ye must come to the knowledge of your fathers, repent of all your sins and iniquities,

believe in Jesus Christ, that he is the Son of God,

that he was slain by the Jews, and by the power of the Father

he hath risen again,

he hath gained the victory over the grave; and also in him is the sting of death swallowed up.

7:6 he bringeth to pass the resurrection of the dead, whereby man must be raised to stand before his judgment-seat.

7:7 he hath brought to pass the redemption of the world,

he that is found guiltless before him at the judgment day hath it given unto him to dwell in the presence of God in his kingdom,

to sing ceaseless praises with the choirs above, unto the

Father, and unto the Son, and unto the Holy Ghost, which are

one God, in a state of happiness which hath no end.

446

Mormon 7:8 repent, and be baptized in the name of Jesus,

lay hold upon the gospel of Christ, which shall be set before

you,

not only in this record but also in the record which shall come unto the Gentiles from the Jews, which record shall come from the Gentiles unto you.

7:9 this is written for the intent that ye may believe that; if ye believe that ye will believe this also; if ye believe this ye will know concerning your fathers, also the marvelous works which were wrought by the power of God among them.

7:10 ye will also know that ye are a remnant of the seed of Jacob; ye are numbered among the people of the first covenant; if it so be that ye believe in Christ, are baptized, first with water, then with fire and with the Holy Ghost, following the example of our Savior, according to that which he hath commanded us, it shall be well with you in the day of judgment.

447

Mormon 8:1 I, Moroni, do finish the record of my father, Mormon.

I have but few things to write, which things I have been commanded by my father.

8:2 the Nephites who had escaped into the country southward were hunted by the Lamanites, until they were all destroyed.

8:3 my father also was killed by them,

I even remain alone to write the sad tale of the destruction of my people.

whether they will slay me, I know not.

8:4 Therefore I will write and hide up the records in the earth; and
whither I go it mattereth not.

8:5 my father hath made this record, and he hath written the intent
thereof.

I would write it also if I had room upon the plates, but I have not;
ore I have none, for I am alone.

My father hath been slain in battle, and all my kinsfolk,

I have not friends nor whither to go;

how long the Lord will suffer that I may live I know not.

448

Mormon 8:7 the Lamanites have hunted my people, the Nephites, down
from city to city

from place to place, even until they are no more;

great has been their fall;

great and marvelous is the destruction of my people, the

Nephites.

8:8 it is the hand of the Lord which hath done it.

the Lamanites are at war one with another;

the whole face of this land is one continual round of murder
and bloodshed;

no one knoweth the end of the war.

8:9 there are none save it be the Lamanites and robbers that do
exist upon the face of the land.

8:10 there are none that do know the true God save it be the
disciples of Jesus, who did tarry in the land until the

wickedness of the people was so great that the Lord would not suffer them to remain with the people;

whether they be upon the face of the land no man knoweth.

8:11 my father and I have seen them, and they have ministered unto us.

449

Mormon 8:12 whoso receiveth this record, and shall not condemn it because of the imperfections which are in it, the same shall know of greater things than these.

I am Moroni; and were it possible, I would make all things known unto you.

8:13 I am the son of Mormon,

8:14 I am the same who hideth up this record unto the Lord; the plates thereof are of no worth, because of the commandment of the Lord.

he truly saith that no one shall have them to get gain; the record thereof is of great worth; whoso shall bring it to light, him will the Lord bless.

8:15 none can have power to bring it to light save it be given him of God;

God wills that it shall be done with an eye single to his glory, or the welfare of the ancient and long dispersed covenant people of the Lord.

8:16 blessed be he that shall bring this thing to light;

it shall be brought out of darkness unto light, according to the word of God;

it shall be brought out of the earth, and it shall shine forth out of
darkness, and come unto the knowledge of the people;
it shall be done by the power of God.

450

Mormon 8:17 if there be faults they be the faults of a man.

we know no fault;

God knoweth all things;

he that condemneth, let him be aware lest he shall be in
danger of hell fire.

8:18 he that saith: Show unto me, or ye shall be smitten let him
beware lest he commandeth that which is forbidden of the
Lord.

8:19 the same that judgeth rashly shall be judged rashly again;
according to his works shall his wages be;
he that smiteth shall be smitten again, of the Lord.

451

Mormon 8:20 the scripture says man shall not smite, neither shall he judge;
for judgment is mine, saith the Lord,

vengeance is mine also, and I will repay.

8:21 he that shall breathe out wrath and strifes against the work of
the Lord, and against the covenant people of the Lord who are
the house of Israel, and shall say:

We will destroy the work of the Lord,

the Lord will not remember his covenant which he hath made

unto the house of Israel

the same is in danger to be hewn down and cast into the fire;

8:22 the eternal purposes of the Lord shall roll on,
until all his promises shall be fulfilled.

452

Mormon 8:23 Search the prophecies of Isaiah.

those saints who have gone before me, who have possessed
this land, shall cry, yea, even from the dust will they cry unto the
Lord;

as the Lord liveth he will remember the covenant which he hath
made with them.

8:24 he knoweth their prayers,
they were in behalf of their brethren.
he knoweth their faith,
in his name could they remove mountains;
in his name could they cause the earth to shake;
by the power of his word did they cause prisons to tumble to
the earth;

even the fiery furnace could not harm them,
neither wild beasts
nor poisonous serpents, because of the power of his word.

8:25 their prayers were also in behalf of him that the Lord should
suffer to bring these things forth.

8:26 no one need say they shall not come, for they surely shall,
the Lord hath spoken it;
out of the earth shall they come, by the hand of the Lord,

none can stay it;

it shall come in a day when it shall be said that miracles are done away;

it shall come even as if one should speak from the dead.

8:27 it shall come in a day when the blood of saints shall cry unto the Lord, because of secret combinations and the works of darkness.

8:28 it shall come in a day when the power of God shall be denied, churches become defiled and lifted up in the pride of their hearts;

in a day when leaders of churches and teachers shall rise in the pride of their hearts, even to the envying of them who belong to their churches.

8:29 it shall come in a day when there shall be heard of fires, and tempests, and vapors of smoke in foreign lands;

8:30 there shall also be heard of wars, rumors of wars, and earthquakes in divers places.

8:31 it shall come in a day when there shall be great pollutions upon the face of the earth; there shall be murders, and robbing, and lying, and deceivings, and whoredoms, and all manner of abominations;

there shall be many who will say, Do this, or do that, and it mattereth not, for the Lord will uphold such at the last day.

453

Mormon 8:31 wo unto such for they are in the gall of bitterness and in the bonds of iniquity.

8:32 Y it shall come in a day when there shall be churches built up that shall say: Come unto me, and for your money you shall be forgiven of your sins.

8:33 O ye wicked and perverse and stiffnecked people,
why have ye built up churches unto yourselves to get gain?
Why have ye transfigured the holy word of God, that ye might bring damnation upon your souls?
look ye unto the revelations of God;
the time cometh at that day when all these things must be fulfilled.

8:34 the Lord hath shown unto me great and marvelous things concerning that which must shortly come, at that day when these things shall come forth among you.

8:35 I speak unto you as if ye were present, and yet ye are not.
Jesus Christ hath shown you unto me,
I know your doing.

8:36 I know that ye do walk in the pride of your hearts;
there are none save a few only who do not lift themselves up in the pride of their hearts, unto the wearing of very fine apparel, unto envying, and strifes, and malice, and persecutions, and all manner of iniquities;
your churches, yea, even every one, have become polluted because of the pride of your hearts.

8:37 ye do love money, and your substance, and your fine apparel, and the adorning of your churches, more than ye love the poor and the needy, the sick and the afflicted.

Mormon 8:38 O ye pollutions, ye hypocrites, ye teachers, who sell yourselves for that which will canker,

why have ye polluted the holy church of God?

Why are ye ashamed to take upon you the name of Christ?

Why do ye not think that greater is the value of an endless happiness than that misery which never dies because of the praise of the world?

8:39 Why do ye adorn yourselves with that which hath no life, and yet suffer the hungry, and the needy, and the naked, and the sick and the afflicted to pass by you, and notice them not?

8:40 why do ye build up your secret abominations to get gain, and cause that widows should mourn before the Lord, and also orphans to mourn before the Lord,

also the blood of their fathers and their husbands to cry unto the Lord from the ground, for vengeance upon your heads?

8:41 the sword of vengeance hangeth over you;

the time soon cometh that he avengeth the blood of the saints upon you,

he will not suffer their cries any longer.

Mormon 9:1 I speak also concerning those who do not believe in Christ.

9:2 will ye believe in the day of your visitation behold, when the Lord shall come,

that great day when the earth shall be rolled together as a scroll, and the elements shall melt with fervent heat,

in that great day when ye shall be brought to stand before the Lamb of God

then will ye say that there is no God?

9:3 Then will ye longer deny the Christ, or can ye behold the Lamb of God?

455

Mormon 9:3 Do ye suppose that ye shall dwell with him under a consciousness of your guilt?

Do ye suppose that ye could be happy to dwell with that holy Being, when your souls are racked with a consciousness of guilt that ye have ever abused his laws?

9:4 ye would be more miserable to dwell with a holy and just God, under a consciousness of your filthiness before him, than ye would to dwell with the damned souls in hell.

9:5 when ye shall be brought to see your nakedness before God, the glory of God, and the holiness of Jesus Christ, it will kindle a flame of unquenchable fire upon you.

9:6 O then ye unbelieving, turn ye unto the Lord; cry mightily unto the Father in the name of Jesus, that perhaps ye may be found spotless, pure, fair, and white, having been cleansed by the blood of the Lamb, at that great and last day.

9:7 I speak unto you who deny the revelations of God, and say that they are done away, that there are no revelations, nor prophecies, nor gifts, nor healing, nor speaking with tongues, and the interpretation of tongues;

9:8 I say unto you, he that denieth these things knoweth not the gospel of Christ;

he has not read the scriptures;

if so, he does not understand them.

9:9 do we not read that God is the same yesterday, today, and forever,

in him there is no variableness neither shadow of changing?

9:10 if ye have imagined up unto yourselves a god who doth vary, and in whom there is shadow of changing, then have ye imagined up unto yourselves a god who is not a God of miracles.

456

Mormon 9:11 I will show unto you a God of miracles, even the God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob;

it is that same God who created the heavens and the earth, and all things that in them are.

9:12 he created Adam, and by Adam came the fall of man.

because of the fall of man came Jesus Christ, even the Father and the Son;

because of Jesus Christ came the redemption of man.

9:13 because of the redemption of man, which came by Jesus Christ, they are brought back into the presence of the Lord;

this is wherein all men are redeemed, because the death of Christ bringeth to pass the resurrection, which bringeth to pass a redemption from an endless sleep, from which sleep all men shall be awakened by the power of God when the trump shall sound;

they shall come forth, both small and great, and all shall stand before his bar, being redeemed and loosed from this eternal

band of death, which death is a temporal death.

9:14 then cometh the judgment of the Holy One upon them;
then cometh the time that he that is filthy shall be filthy still;
he that is righteous shall be righteous still;
he that is happy shall be happy still;
he that is unhappy shall be unhappy still.

9:15 O all ye that have imagined up unto yourselves a god who can
do no miracles, I would ask of you, have all these things
passed, of which I have spoken? Has the end come yet?

Behold I say unto you, Nay;

God has not ceased to be a God of miracles.

457

Mormon 9:16 are not the things that God hath wrought marvelous in our
eyes?

who can comprehend the marvelous works of God?

9:17 Who shall say that it was not a miracle that by his word the
heaven and the earth should be;

by the power of his word man was created of the dust of the
earth;

by the power of his word have miracles been wrought?

9:18 who shall say that Jesus Christ did not many mighty miracles?
there were many mighty miracles wrought by the hands of the
apostles.

9:19 if there were miracles wrought then, why has God ceased to be
a God of miracles and yet be an unchangeable Being?

I say unto you he changeth not;

if so he would cease to be God;

he ceaseth not to be God, and is a God of miracles.

9:20 the reason why he ceaseth to do miracles among the children of men is because that they dwindle in unbelief, and depart from the right way, and know not the God in whom they should trust.

9:21 I say unto you that whoso believeth in Christ, doubting nothing, whatsoever he shall ask the Father in the name of Christ it shall be granted him;

this promise is unto all, even unto the ends of the earth.

458

Mormon9:22 thus said Jesus Christ, the Son of God, unto his disciples who should tarry,

also to all his disciples, in the hearing of the multitude:

Go ye into all the world, and preach the gospel to every creature;

9:23 he that believeth and is baptized shall be saved,
he that believeth not shall be damned;

9:24 these signs shall follow them that believe
in my name shall they cast out devils;
they shall speak with new tongues;
they shall take up serpents;
if they drink any deadly thing it shall not hurt them;
they shall lay hands on the sick
they shall recover;

9:25 whosoever shall believe in my name, doubting nothing, unto

him will I confirm all my words, even unto the ends of the earth.

9:26 who can stand against the works of the Lord?

Who can deny his sayings?

Who will rise up against the almighty power of the Lord?

Who will despise the works of the Lord?

Who will despise the children of Christ?

all ye who are despisers of the works of the Lord, for ye shall wonder and perish.

9:27 O then despise not, and wonder not, but hearken unto the words of the Lord,

ask the Father in the name of Jesus for what things soever ye shall stand in need.

Doubt not,

be believing,

begin as in times of old,

come unto the Lord with all your heart,

work out your own salvation with fear and trembling before him.

460

Mormon 9:28 Be wise in the days of your probation;

strip yourselves of all uncleanness;

ask not, that ye may consume it on your lusts,

ask with a firmness unshaken, that ye will yield to no temptation,

that ye will serve the true and living God.

9:29 See that ye are not baptized unworthily;

see that ye partake not of the sacrament of Christ unworthily;

see that ye do all things in worthiness,
do it in the name of Jesus Christ, the Son of the living God;
if ye do this, and endure to the end, ye will in nowise be cast
out.

461

Mormon 9:30 I know that ye shall have my words.

9:31 Condemn me not because of mine imperfection,
neither my father, because of his imperfection,
neither them who have written before him;
rather give thanks unto God that he hath made manifest unto
you our imperfections,
that ye may learn to be more wise than we have been.

9:32 we have written this record according to our knowledge, in the
characters which are called among us the reformed Egyptian,
handed down and altered by us, according to our manner of
speech.

9:33 if our plates had been sufficiently large we should have written
in Hebrew;
the Hebrew hath been altered by us also;
if we could have written in Hebrew,
ye would have had no imperfection in our record.

9:34 the Lord knoweth the things which we have written, and also
that none other people knoweth our language;
because that none other people knoweth our language,
he hath prepared means for the interpretation thereof.

9:35 these things are written that we may rid our garments of the

blood of our brethren, who have dwindled in unbelief.

9:36 these things which we have desired concerning our brethren, yea, even their restoration to the knowledge of Christ, are according to the prayers of all the saints who have dwelt in the land.

9:37 may the Lord Jesus Christ grant that their prayers may be answered according to their faith;

may God the Father remember the covenant which he hath made with the house of Israel;

may he bless them forever, through faith on the name of Jesus Christ.

462

Ether 1:1 I, Moroni, proceed to give an account of those ancient inhabitants who were destroyed by the hand of the Lord upon the face of this north country.

1:2 I take mine account from the twenty and four plates which were found by the people of Limhi, which is called the Book of Ether.

1:3 the first part of this record, which speaks concerning the creation of the world,

also of Adam, and an account from that time even to the great tower,

whatsoever things transpired among the children of men until that time, is had among the Jews

1:4 I do not write those things which transpired from the days of Adam until that time;

they are had upon the plates;

whoso findeth them, the same will have power that he may get the full account.

463

Ether 1:6 He that wrote this record was Ether,
he was a descendant of Coriantor.

1:32 who was the son of Jared;

1:33 Which Jared came forth with his brother and their families, with some others and their families, from the great tower, at the time the Lord confounded the language of the people, and swore in his wrath that they should be scattered upon all the face of the earth;

1:34 the brother of Jared being a large and mighty man,
a man highly favored of the Lord,
his brother, said unto him: Cry unto the Lord, that he will not confound us that we may not understand our words.

1:35 the Lord had compassion upon Jared;
he did not confound the language of Jared;

1:36 Jared said unto his brother: Cry again unto the Lord, and it may be that he will turn away his anger from them who are our friends,
that he confound not their language.

1:37 the brother of Jared did cry unto the Lord, and the Lord had compassion upon their friends and their families also, that they were not confounded.

1:38 Go and inquire of the Lord whether he will drive us out of the land,

if he will drive us out of the land, cry unto him whither we shall go.

who knoweth but the Lord will carry us forth into a land which is choice above all the earth?

if it so be, let us be faithful unto the Lord, that we may receive it for our inheritance.

464

Ether 1:39 the brother of Jared did cry unto the Lord

1:40 the Lord did hear the brother of Jared, and had compassion upon him,

said unto him:

1:41 Go to and gather together thy flocks, both male and female, of every kind;

also of the seed of the earth of every kind;

and thy families;

also Jared thy brother and his family; and also thy friends and their families, and the friends of Jared and their families.

1:42 when thou hast done this thou shalt go at the head of them down into the valley which is northward.

there will I meet thee,

I will go before thee into a land which is choice above all the lands of the earth.

1:43 there will I bless thee and thy seed,

raise up unto me of thy seed, and of the seed of thy brother, and they who shall go with thee, a great nation.

there shall be none greater than the nation which I will raise up

unto me of thy seed, upon all the face of the earth.

I will do unto thee because this long time ye have cried unto me.

2:1 Jared and his brother, and their families, and also the friends of Jared and his brother and their families, went down into the valley which was northward,

with their flocks which they had gathered together, male and female, of every kind.

2:2 they did also lay snares and catch fowls of the air;

they did also prepare a vessel, in which they did carry with them the fish of the waters.

2:3 they did also carry with them deseret, which, by interpretation, is a honey bee;

thus they did carry with them swarms of bees, and all manner of that which was upon the face of the land, seeds of every kind.

2:4 the Lord came down and talked with the brother of Jared; he was in a cloud, and the brother of Jared saw him not.

2:5 the Lord commanded them that they should go forth into the wilderness, yea, into that quarter where there never had man been.

the Lord did go before them, and did talk with them as he stood in a cloud, and gave directions whither they should travel.

2:6 they did travel in the wilderness, and did build barges, in which they did cross many waters, being directed continually by the hand of the Lord.

2:7 the Lord would not suffer that they should stop beyond the sea in the wilderness, but he would that they should come forth

even unto the land of promise, which was choice above all other lands, which the Lord God had preserved for a righteous people.

2:8 he had sworn in his wrath unto the brother of Jared, that whoso should possess this land of promise, from that time henceforth and forever, should serve him, the true and only God, or they should be swept off when the fulness of his wrath should come upon them.

465

Ether 2:9 now, we can behold the decrees of God concerning this land, it is a land of promise; and whatsoever nation shall possess it shall serve God, or they shall be swept off when the fulness of his wrath shall come upon them.

the fulness of his wrath cometh upon them when they are ripened in iniquity.

2:10 this is a land which is choice above all other lands; he that doth possess it shall serve God or shall be swept off; it is the everlasting decree of God.

it is not until the fulness of iniquity among the children of the land, that they are swept off.

466

Ether 2:11 this cometh unto you, O ye Gentiles, that ye may know the decrees of God

that ye may repent, and not continue in your iniquities until the

fulness come,

that ye may not bring down the fulness of the wrath of God upon you as the inhabitants of the land have hitherto done.

2:12 this is a choice land,

whatsoever nation shall possess it shall be free from bondage, and from captivity, and from all other nations under heaven, they will but serve the God of the land, who is Jesus Christ, who hath been manifested by the things which we have written.

467

Ether 2:13 I proceed with my record;

the Lord did bring Jared and his brethren forth even to that great sea which divideth the lands.

as they came to the sea they pitched their tents;

they called the name of the place Moriancumer;

they dwelt in tents, and dwelt in tents upon the seashore for the space of four years.

2:14 the Lord came again unto the brother of Jared, and stood in a cloud and talked with him.

for the space of three hours did the Lord talk with the brother of Jared,

chastened him because he remembered not to call upon the name of the Lord.

2:15 the brother of Jared repented of the evil which he had done, did call upon the name of the Lord for his brethren who were with him.

the Lord said unto him: I will forgive thee and thy brethren of

their sins;

thou shalt not sin any more,

ye shall remember that my Spirit will not always strive with

man;

if ye will sin until ye are fully ripe ye shall be cut off from the presence of the Lord.

these are my thoughts upon the land which I shall give you for your inheritance;

it shall be a land choice above all other lands.

468

Ether 2:16 the Lord said: Go to work and build, after the manner of barges which ye have hitherto built.

the brother of Jared did go to work, and also his brethren, and built barges after the manner which they had built, according to the instructions of the Lord.

they were small, and they were light upon the water, even like unto the lightness of a fowl upon the water.

2:17 they were built after a manner that they were exceedingly tight, even that they would hold water like unto a dish;

the bottom thereof was tight like unto a dish;

the sides thereof were tight like unto a dish;

the ends thereof were peaked;

the top thereof was tight like unto a dish;

the length thereof was the length of a tree;

the door thereof, when it was shut, was tight like unto a dish.

2:18 the brother of Jared cried unto the Lord, saying:

O Lord, I have performed the work which thou hast
commanded me,

I have made the barges according as thou hast directed me.

2:19 O Lord, in them there is no light; whither shall we steer?

we shall perish, for in them we cannot breathe, save it is the air
which is in them; therefore we shall perish.

2:20 the Lord said unto the brother of Jared:

thou shalt make a hole in the top, and also in the bottom;
when thou shalt suffer for air thou shalt unstop the hole and
receive air.

if it be so that the water come in upon thee, behold, ye shall
stop the hole, that ye may not perish in the flood.

2:21 the brother of Jared did so, according as the Lord had
commanded.

2:22 he cried again unto the Lord saying:

O Lord, behold I have done even as thou hast commanded me;

I have prepared the vessels for my people,

behold there is no light in them.

Behold, O Lord, wilt thou suffer that we shall cross this great
water in darkness?

2:23 the Lord said unto the brother of Jared:

What will ye that I should do that ye may have light in your
vessels?

ye cannot have windows, for they will be dashed in pieces;
neither shall ye take fire with you, for ye shall not go by the light
of fire.

2:24 ye shall be as a whale in the midst of the sea;

the mountain waves shall dash upon you.

I will bring you up again out of the depths of the sea;
the winds have gone forth out of my mouth,
also the rains and the floods have I sent forth.

2:25 I prepare you against these things;
for ye cannot cross this great deep save I prepare you against
the waves of the sea, and the winds which have gone forth,
and the floods which shall come.

what will ye that I should prepare for you that ye may have light
when ye are swallowed up in the depths of the sea?

469

Ether 3:1 the number of the vessels which had been prepared was eight)
molten out of a rock sixteen small stones; and they were white
and clear, even as transparent glass;

he did carry them in his hands upon the top of the mount, and
cried again unto the Lord,

3:2 O Lord, thou hast said that we must be encompassed about by
the floods.

behold, O Lord, and do not be angry with thy servant because
of his weakness before thee; for we know that thou art holy and
dwellest in the heavens,

we are unworthy before thee;

because of the fall our natures have become evil continually;

nevertheless, O Lord, thou hast given us a commandment that
we must call upon thee,

that from thee we may receive according to our desires.

3:3 Behold, O Lord, thou hast smitten us because of our iniquity,

hast driven us forth, and for these many years we have been in
the wilderness;

thou hast been merciful unto us.

470

Ether 3:3 O Lord, look upon me in pity,
turn away thine anger from this thy people,
suffer not that they shall go forth across this raging deep in
darkness;

behold these things which I have molten out of the rock.

3:4 I know, O Lord, that thou hast all power, and can do
whatsoever thou wilt for the benefit of man;
touch these stones, O Lord, with thy finger,
prepare them that they may shine forth in darkness;
they shall shine forth unto us in the vessels which we have
prepared, that we may have light while we shall cross the sea.

3:5 Behold, O Lord, thou canst do this.

We know that thou art able to show forth great power, which
looks small unto the understanding of men.

3:6 when the brother of Jared had said these words, behold, the
Lord stretched forth his hand and touched the stones one by
one with his finger.

the veil was taken from off the eyes of the brother of Jared, and
he saw the finger of the Lord;

it was as the finger of a man, like unto flesh and blood;

the brother of Jared fell down before the Lord, for he was struck
with fear.

3:7 the Lord saw that the brother of Jared had fallen to the earth;
and the Lord said unto him:

Arise, why hast thou fallen?

3:8 he saith unto the Lord: I saw the finger of the Lord, and I feared
lest he should smite me;

I knew not that the Lord had flesh and blood.

3:9 the Lord said unto him: Because of thy faith thou hast seen that
I shall take upon me flesh and blood;

never has man come before me with such exceeding faith as
thou hast;

for were it not so ye could not have seen my finger.

Sawest thou more than this?

3:10 he answered: Nay; Lord, show thyself unto me.

3:11 the Lord said unto him: Believest thou the words which I shall
speak?

3:12 he answered: Yea, Lord, I know that thou speakest the truth, for
thou art a God of truth, and canst not lie.

3:13 when he had said these words, behold, the Lord showed
himself unto him,

Because thou knowest these things ye are redeemed from the
fall;

ye are brought back into my presence;

I show myself unto you.

3:14 I am he who was prepared from the foundation of the world to
redeem my people.

I am Jesus Christ. I am the Father and the Son.

In me shall all mankind have life, and that eternally, even they
who shall believe on my name;

they shall become my sons and my daughters.

471

Ether 3:15 never have I showed myself unto man whom I have created, for never has man believed in me as thou hast.

Seest thou that ye are created after mine own image?

Yea, even all men were created in the beginning after mine own image.

3:16 this body, which ye now behold, is the body of my spirit;
man have I created after the body of my spirit;
even as I appear unto thee to be in the spirit will I appear unto my people in the flesh.

3:17 Jesus showed himself unto this man in the spirit, even after the manner and in the likeness of the same body even as he showed himself unto the Nephites.

3:18 he ministered unto him even as he ministered unto the Nephites;
this man might know that he was God, because of the many great works which the Lord had showed unto him.

3:19 because of the knowledge of this man he could not be kept from beholding within the veil;
he saw the finger of Jesus,
when he saw, he fell with fear;
for he knew that it was the finger of the Lord;
he had faith no longer, for he knew, nothing doubting.

3:20 having this perfect knowledge of God, he could not be kept from within the veil;

he saw Jesus; and he did minister unto him.

472

Ether 3:21 the Lord said unto the brother of Jared:

Behold, thou shalt not suffer these things which ye have seen and heard to go forth unto the world, until the time cometh that I shall glorify my name in the flesh;

ye shall treasure up the things which ye have seen and heard, and show it to no man.

3:22 when ye shall come unto me, ye shall write them and shall seal them up, that no one can interpret them;

ye shall write them in a language that they cannot be read.

3:23 these two stones will I give unto thee,

ye shall seal them up also with the things which ye shall write.

3:24 the language which ye shall write I have confounded;

I will cause in my own due time that these stones shall magnify to the eyes of men these things which ye shall write.

3:25 when the Lord had said these words, he showed unto the brother of Jared all the inhabitants of the earth which had been, and also all that would be;

he withheld them not from his sight, even unto the ends of the earth.

3:26 he had said unto him in times before, that if he would believe in him that he could show unto him all things it should be shown unto him;

therefore the Lord could not withhold anything from him, he knew that the Lord could show him all things.

473

Ether 3:27 the Lord said unto him: Write these things and seal them up; and I will show them in mine own due time unto the children of men.

3:28 the Lord commanded him that he should seal up the two stones which he had received, and show them not, until the Lord should show them unto the children of men.

4:1 the Lord commanded the brother of Jared to go down out of the mount from the presence of the Lord, and write the things which he had seen;

they were forbidden to come unto the children of men until after that he should be lifted up upon the cross;

for this cause did king Mosiah keep them, that they should not come unto the world until after Christ should show himself unto his people.

4:2 after Christ truly had showed himself unto his people he commanded that they should be made manifest.

4:3 after that, they have all dwindled in unbelief; and there is none save it be the Lamanites, and they have rejected the gospel of Christ;

474

Ether 4:3 I am commanded that I should hide them up again in the earth.

4:4 I have written upon these plates the very things which the brother of Jared saw;

there never were greater things made manifest than those
which were made manifest unto the brother of Jared.

4:5 the Lord hath commanded me to write them;

I have written them.

he commanded me that I should seal them up;

he also hath commanded that I should seal up the
interpretation thereof;

I have sealed up the interpreters, according to the
commandment of the Lord.

4:6 the Lord said unto me: They shall not go forth unto the Gentiles
until the day that they shall repent of their iniquity, and become
clean before the Lord.

4:7 in that day that they shall exercise faith in me, saith the Lord,
even as the brother of Jared did, that they may become
sanctified in me, then will I manifest unto them the things which
the brother of Jared saw,

475*

Ether 4:7 to the unfolding unto them all my revelations, saith Jesus
Christ, the Son of God, the Father of the heavens and of the
earth, and all things that in them are.

4:8 he that will contend against the word of the Lord, let him be
accursed;

he that shall deny these things, let him be accursed;

unto them will I show no greater things, saith Jesus Christ;

I am he who speaketh.

4:9 at my command the heavens are opened and are shut;

at my word the earth shall shake;

at my command the inhabitants thereof shall pass away, even
so as by fire.

4:10 he that believeth not my words believeth not my disciples;
if it so be that I do not speak, judge ye;
ye shall know that it is I that speaketh, at the last day.

4:11 he that believeth these things which I have spoken, him will I
visit with the manifestations of my Spirit, and he shall know and
bear record.

476*

Ether 4:11 because of my Spirit he shall know that these things are true;
it persuadeth men to do good.

4:12 And whatsoever thing persuadeth men to do good is of me;
good cometh of none save it be of me.
I am the same that leadeth men to all good;
he that will not believe my words will not believe me that I am;
he that will not believe me will not believe the Father who sent
me.

I am the Father, I am the light, and the life, and the truth of the
world.

4:13 Come unto me, O ye Gentiles, and I will show unto you the
greater things, the knowledge which is hid up because of
unbelief.

4:14 Come unto me, O ye house of Israel, and it shall be made
manifest unto you how great things the Father hath laid up for
you, from the foundation of the world;

it hath not come unto you, because of unbelief.

4:15 when ye shall rend that veil of unbelief which doth cause you to remain in your awful state of wickedness, and hardness of heart, and blindness of mind, then shall the great and marvelous things which have been hid up from the foundation of the world from you

when ye shall call upon the Father in my name, with a broken heart and a contrite spirit, then shall ye know that the Father hath remembered the covenant which he made unto your fathers, O house of Israel.

477*

Ether 4:16 then shall my revelations which I have caused to be written by my servant John be unfolded in the eyes of all the people.

Remember, when ye see these things, ye shall know that the time is at hand that they shall be made manifest in very deed.

4:17 when ye shall receive this record ye may know that the work of the Father has commenced upon all the face of the land.

4:18 repent all ye ends of the earth, and come unto me,
believe in my gospel, and be baptized in my name;
he that believeth and is baptized shall be saved;
he that believeth not shall be damned;
signs shall follow them that believe in my name.

4:19 blessed is he that is found faithful unto my name at the last day,
he shall be lifted up to dwell in the kingdom prepared for him
from the foundation of the world.

it is I that hath spoken it.

Ehter 5:1 I, Moroni, have written the words which were commanded me,
according to my memory;

I have told you the things which I have sealed up;
touch them not in order that ye may translate;
that thing is forbidden you, except by and by it shall be wisdom
in God.

5:2 ye may be privileged that ye may show the plates unto those
who shall assist to bring forth this work;

5:3 unto three shall they be shown by the power of God;
they shall know of a surety that these things are true.

5:4 in the mouth of three witnesses shall these things be
established;

the testimony of three, and this work, in the which shall be
shown forth the power of God

also his word, of which the Father, and the Son, and the Holy
Ghost bear record

all this shall stand as a testimony against the world at the last
day.

5:5 if it so be that they repent and come unto the Father in the
name of Jesus, they shall be received into the kingdom of God.

5:6 if I have no authority for these things, judge ye;
ye shall know that I have authority when ye shall see me, and
we shall stand before God at the last day.

Ether 6:1 I, Moroni, proceed to give the record of Jared and his brother.

6:2 the Lord had prepared the stones which the brother of Jared had carried up into the mount,

he did put forth the stones into the vessels which were prepared, one in each end thereof; and behold, they did give light unto the vessels.

6:3 the Lord caused stones to shine in darkness, to give light unto men, women, and children, that they might not cross the great waters in darkness.

6:4 they had prepared all manner of food, that thereby they might subsist upon the water, and also food for their flocks and herds, and whatsoever beast or animal or fowl that they should carry with them

when they had done all these things they got aboard of their vessels or barges, and set forth into the sea, commending themselves unto the Lord their God.

6:5 the Lord God caused that there should be a furious wind blow upon the face of the waters, towards the promised land;

they were tossed upon the waves of the sea before the wind.

6:6 they were many times buried in the depths of the sea,

6:7 when they were buried in the deep there was no water that could hurt them, their vessels being tight like unto a dish

6:8 the wind did never cease to blow towards the promised land while they were upon the waters;

6:9 they did sing praises unto the Lord;

the brother of Jared did sing praises unto the Lord, and he did thank and praise the Lord all the day long;

6:11 they were driven forth, three hundred and forty and four days upon the water.

6:12 they did land upon the shore of the promised land.

when they had set their feet upon the shores of the promised land they bowed themselves down upon the face of the land, and did humble themselves before the Lord, and did shed tears of joy before the Lord, because of the multitude of his tender mercies over them.

480

Ether 6:13 they went forth upon the face of the land, and began to till the earth.

6:16 the friends of Jared and his brother were in number about twenty and two souls;

they also begat sons and daughters before they came to the promised land;

6:17 they were taught to walk humbly before the Lord; they were also taught from on high.

6:18 they began to spread upon the face of the land, to multiply and to till the earth; they did wax strong in the land.

481

Ether 6:20 the people were gathered together.

6:21 they did number their people; and after that they had numbered them, they did desire of them the things which they would that

they should do before they went down to their graves.

6:22 the people desired of them that they should anoint one of their sons to be a king over them.

6:23 this was grievous unto them.

the brother of Jared said unto them: Surely this thing leadeth into captivity.

6:25 they chose even the firstborn of the brother of Jared; and his name was Pagag.

he refused and would not be their king.

the people would that his father should constrain him, but his father would not;

he commanded them that they should constrain no man to be their king.

6:26 they chose all the brothers of Pagag, and they would not.

6:27 neither would the sons of Jared, even all save it were one; Orihah was anointed to be king over the people.

6:28 he began to reign, and the people began to prosper; they became exceedingly rich.

6:29 Jared died, and his brother also.

482

Ether 6:30 Orihah did walk humbly before the Lord, and did remember how great things the Lord had done for his father, and also taught his people how great things the Lord had done for their fathers.

7:1 Orihah did execute judgment upon the land in righteousness all his days,

7:2 he begat sons and daughters;

7:3 he also begat Kib in his old age.

Kib reigned in his stead;

Kib begat Corihor.

7:4 when Corihor was thirty and two years old he rebelled against his father, and went over and dwelt in the land of Nehor;

he begat sons and daughters,

they became exceedingly fair; wherefore Corihor drew away many people after him.

7:5 when he had gathered together an army he came up unto the land of Moron where the king dwelt, and took him captive,

which brought to pass the saying of the brother of Jared that they would be brought into captivity.

7:7 Kib dwelt in captivity, and his people under Corihor his son, until he became exceedingly old;

Kib begat Shule in his old age, while he was yet in captivity.

482

Ether 7:8 Shule was angry with his brother;

Shule waxed strong, and became mighty as to the strength of a man;

he was also mighty in judgment.

7:9 he did molten out of the hill, and made swords out of steel for those whom he had drawn away with him;

after he had armed them with swords he returned to the city Nehor and gave battle unto his brother Corihor, by which means he obtained the kingdom and restored it unto his father

Kib.

7:10 because of the thing which Shule had done, his father bestowed upon him the kingdom;

he began to reign in the stead of his father.

7:11 he did execute judgment in righteousness;

he did spread his kingdom upon all the face of the land, for the people had become exceedingly numerous.

7:12 Shule also begat many sons and daughters.

7:13 Corihor repented of the many evils which he had done; Shule gave him power in his kingdom.

7:14 Corihor had many sons and daughters.

among the sons of Corihor there was one whose name was Noah.

483

Ether 7:15 Noah rebelled against Shule, the king, and also his father Corihor, and drew away Cohor his brother, and also all his brethren and many of the people.

7:16 he gave battle unto Shule the king, in which he did obtain the land of their first inheritance;

he became a king over that part of the land.

7:17 he gave battle again unto Shule, the king;

he took Shule, the king, and carried him away captive into Moron.

7:18 he was about to put him to death, the sons of Shule crept into the house of Noah by night and slew him, and broke down the door of the prison and brought out their father, and placed him

upon his throne in his own kingdom.

7:19 the son of Noah did build up his kingdom in his stead;
they did not gain power any more over Shule the king,
the people who were under the reign of Shule the king did
prosper exceedingly and wax great.

7:20 the country was divided;
there were two kingdoms, the kingdom of Shule, and the
kingdom of Cohor, the son of Noah.

7:21 Cohor, the son of Noah, caused that his people should give
battle unto Shule, in which Shule did beat them and did slay
Cohor.

7:22 Cohor had a son who was called Nimrod;
Nimrod gave up the kingdom of Cohor unto Shule, and he did
gain favor in the eyes of Shule;
Shule did bestow great favors upon him, and he did do in the
kingdom of Shule according to his desires.

7:23 in the reign of Shule there came prophets among the people,
who were sent from the Lord, prophesying that the wickedness
and idolatry of the people was bringing a curse upon the land,
and they should be destroyed if they did not repent.

7:24 the people did revile against the prophets, and did mock them.
king Shule did execute judgment against all those who did
revile against the prophets.

7:25 he did execute a law throughout all the land, which gave power
unto the prophets that they should go whithersoever they
would;

by this cause the people were brought unto repentance.

7:26 because the people did repent of their iniquities and idolatries

the Lord did spare them,

they began to prosper again in the land.

Shule begat sons and daughters in his old age.

7:27 there were no more wars in the days of Shule;

he remembered the great things that the Lord had done for his fathers in bringing them across the great deep into the promised land;

he did execute judgment in righteousness all his days.

485

Ether 8:1 he begat Omer, and Omer reigned in his stead.

Omer begat Jared; and Jared begat sons and daughters.

8:2 Jared rebelled against his father, and came and dwelt in the land of Heth.

he did flatter many people, because of his cunning words, until he had gained the half of the kingdom.

8:3 when he had gained the half of the kingdom he gave battle unto his father, and he did carry away his father into captivity, and did make him serve in captivity;

8:4 in the days of the reigns of Omer he was in captivity the half of his days.

he begat sons and daughters among whom were Esrom and Coriantumr;

8:5 they were exceedingly angry because of the doings of Jared their brother,

they did raise an army and gave battle unto Jared.

they did give battle unto him by night.

8:6 when they had slain the army of Jared they were about to slay him also;

he plead with them that they would not slay him,

he would give up the kingdom unto his father.

they did grant unto him his life.

486

Ether 8:7 Jared became exceedingly sorrowful because of the loss of the kingdom,

he had set his heart upon the kingdom and upon the glory of the world.

8:8 the daughter of Jared being exceedingly expert, and seeing the sorrows of her father, thought to devise a plan whereby she could redeem the kingdom unto her father.

8:9 the daughter of Jared was exceedingly fair.

she did talk with her father, and said unto him: Whereby hath my father so much sorrow?

Hath he not read the record which our fathers brought across the great deep?

is there not an account concerning them of old, that they by their secret plans did obtain kingdoms and great glory?

8:10 let my father send for Akish, the son of Kimmor; and behold, I am fair, and I will dance before him, and I will please him, that he will desire me to wife;

if he shall desire of thee that ye shall give unto him me to wife, then shall ye say: I will give her if ye will bring unto me the head of my father, the king.

8:11 Omer was a friend to Akish; wherefore, when Jared had sent for Akish, the daughter of Jared danced before him that she pleased him,

he desired her to wife.

he said unto Jared: Give her unto me to wife.

8:12 Jared said unto him: I will give her unto you, if ye will bring unto me the head of my father, the king.

8:13 Akish gathered in unto the house of Jared all his kinsfolk, and said unto them: Will ye swear unto me that ye will be faithful unto me in the thing which I shall desire of you?

8:14 they all sware unto him, by the God of heaven, and also by the heavens, and also by the earth, and by their heads, that whoso should vary from the assistance which Akish desired should lose his head;

whoso should divulge whatsoever thing Akish made known unto them, the same should lose his life.

8:15 thus they did agree with Akish.

Akish did administer unto them the oaths which were given by them of old who also sought power, which had been handed down even from Cain, who was a murderer from the beginning.

8:16 they were kept up by the power of the devil to administer these oaths unto the people,

to keep them in darkness,

to help such as sought power

to gain power,

to murder,

to plunder,

to lie,

to commit all manner of wickedness and whoredoms.

8:17 it was the daughter of Jared who put it into his heart to search up these things of old;

Jared put it into the heart of Akish;

Akish administered it unto his kindred and friends, leading them away by fair promises to do whatsoever thing he desired.

8:18 they formed a secret combination, even as they of old; which combination is most abominable and wicked above all, in the sight of God;

8:19 the Lord worketh not in secret combinations, neither doth he will that man should shed blood, but in all things hath forbidden it, from the beginning of man.

487

Ether 8:20 I, Moroni, do not write the manner of their oaths and combinations, for it hath been made known unto me that they are had among all people, and they are had among the Lamanites.

8:21 And they have caused the destruction of this people of whom I am now speaking, and also the destruction of the people of Nephi.

8:22 whatsoever nation shall uphold such secret combinations, to get power and gain, until they shall spread over the nation, behold, they shall be destroyed;

the Lord will not suffer that the blood of his saints, which shall be shed by them, shall always cry unto him from the ground for vengeance upon them and yet he avenge them not.

8:23 it is wisdom in God that these things should be shown unto you,

that thereby ye may repent of your sins, and suffer not that these murderous combinations shall get above you, which are built up to get power and gain

the work, yea, even the work of destruction come upon you, the sword of the justice of the Eternal God shall fall upon you, to your overthrow and destruction if ye shall suffer these things to be.

8:24 the Lord commandeth you, when ye shall see these things come among you that ye shall awake to a sense of your awful situation,

because of this secret combination which shall be among you; because of the blood of them who have been slain; for they cry from the dust for vengeance upon it, and also upon those who built it up.

8:25 whoso buildeth it up seeketh to overthrow the freedom of all lands, nations, and countries;

it bringeth to pass the destruction of all people, it is built up by the devil, who is the father of all lies; that same liar who beguiled our first parents, that same liar who hath caused man to commit murder from the beginning;

who hath hardened the hearts of men that they have murdered the prophets, and stoned them, and cast them out from the beginning.

8:26 I, Moroni, am commanded to write these things that evil may be done away,

that the time may come that Satan may have no power upon
the hearts of the children of men, but that they may be
persuaded to do good continually,

that they may come unto the fountain of all righteousness and
be saved.

488

Ether 9:1 because of the secret combinations of Akish and his friends,
behold, they did overthrow the kingdom of Omer.

9:2 the Lord was merciful unto Omer, and also to his sons and to
his daughters who did not seek his destruction.

9:3 the Lord warned Omer in a dream that he should depart out of
the land;

Omer departed out of the land with his family, and traveled
many days, and came over and passed by the hill of Shim, and
came over by the place where the Nephites were destroyed,

he pitched his tent, and also his sons and his daughters, and
all his household, save it were Jared and his family.

489

Ether 9:4 Jared was anointed king over the people, by the hand of
wickedness;

he gave unto Akish his daughter to wife.

9:5 Akish sought the life of his father-in-law;

he applied unto those whom he had sworn by the oath of the
ancients,

they obtained the head of his father-in-law, as he sat upon his throne, giving audience to his people.

9:6 so great had been the spreading of this wicked and secret society that it had corrupted the hearts of all the people;

Jared was murdered upon his throne, and Akish reigned in his stead.

9:7 Akish began to be jealous of his son, therefore he shut him up in prison, and kept him upon little or no food until he had suffered death.

9:8 the brother of him that suffered death, (and his name was Nimrah) was angry with his father because of that which his father had done unto his brother.

9:9 Nimrah gathered together a small number of men, and fled out of the land, and came over and dwelt with Omer.

9:10 Akish begat other sons, and they won the hearts of the people, notwithstanding they had sworn unto him to do all manner of iniquity according to that which he desired.

9:11 the people of Akish were desirous for gain, even as Akish was desirous for power;

the sons of Akish did offer them money, by which means they drew away the more part of the people after them.

9:12 there began to be a war between the sons of Akish and Akish, which lasted for the space of many years,

unto the destruction of nearly all the people of the kingdom, yea, even all, save it were thirty souls, and they who fled with the house of Omer.

9:13 Omer was restored again to the land of his inheritance.

9:14 Omer began to be old; nevertheless, in his old age he begat

Emer;

he anointed Emer to be king to reign in his stead.

9:15 after that he had anointed Emer to be king he saw peace in the land for the space of two years, and he died,

490

Ether 9:15 Emer did reign in his stead, and did fill the steps of his father.

9:16 the Lord began again to take the curse from off the land,
the house of Emer did prosper exceedingly under the reign of
Emer;

they had become exceedingly strong, insomuch that they
became exceedingly rich

9:17 Having all manner of fruit, and of grain, and of silks, and of fine
linen, and of gold, and of silver, and of precious things;

9:18 And also all manner of cattle, of oxen, and cows, and of sheep,
and of swine, and of goats, and also many other kinds of
animals which were useful for the food of man.

9:20 the Lord did pour out his blessings upon this land, which was
choice above all other lands;

he commanded that whoso should possess the land should
possess it unto the Lord, or they should be destroyed when
they were ripened in iniquity;

upon such, saith the Lord: I will pour out the fulness of my
wrath.

9:21 Emer did execute judgment in righteousness all his days,
he begat many sons and daughters; and he begat Coriantum,
he anointed Coriantum to reign in his stead.

9:22 he saw peace in the land;
he even saw the Son of Righteousness, and did rejoice and
glory in his day; and he died in peace.

491

Ether 9:23 Coriantum did walk in the steps of his father, and did build
many mighty cities, and did administer that which was good
unto his people in all his days.

9:25 he begat Com, and Com reigned in his stead;
he reigned forty and nine years, and he begat Heth; and he
also begat other sons and daughters.

9:26 the people had spread again over all the face of the land, and
there began again to be an exceedingly great wickedness
upon the face of the land,

Heth began to embrace the secret plans again of old, to
destroy his father.

9:27 he did dethrone his father, for he slew him with his own sword;

492

Ether 9:27 he did reign in his stead.

9:28 there came prophets in the land again,
crying repentance unto them
they must prepare the way of the Lord
there should come a curse upon the face of the land;
there should be a great famine, in which they should be
destroyed if they did not repent.

9:29 the people believed not the words of the prophets, but they cast them out;

some of them they cast into pits and left them to perish.

they did all these things according to the commandment of the king, Heth.

9:30 there began to be a great dearth upon the land,
the inhabitants began to be destroyed exceedingly fast
because of the dearth,

there was no rain upon the face of the earth.

9:31 there came forth poisonous serpents also upon the face of the land, and did poison many people.

their flocks began to flee before the poisonous serpents,
towards the land southward,

9:32 there were many of them which did perish by the way;
there were some which fled into the land southward.

9:33 the Lord did cause the serpents that they should pursue them no more, but that they should hedge up the way that the people could not pass, that whoso should attempt to pass might fall by the poisonous serpents.

9:34 the people did follow the course of the beasts, and did devour the carcasses of them which fell by the way, until they had devoured them all.

when the people saw that they must perish they began to repent of their iniquities and cry unto the Lord.

9:35 when they had humbled themselves sufficiently before the Lord he did send rain upon the face of the earth; and the people began to revive again,

there began to be fruit in the north countries, and in all the

countries round about.

the Lord did show forth his power unto them in preserving them from famine.

493

Ether 10:1 Shez, who was a descendant of Heth for Heth had perished by the famine, and all his household save it were Shez wherefore, Shez began to build up again a br□` people.

10:2 Shez did remember the destruction of his fathers, he did build up a righteous kingdom; for he remembered what the Lord had done in bringing Jared and his brother across the deep;

he did walk in the ways of the Lord;

he begat sons and daughters.

10:3 his eldest son, whose name was Shez, did rebel against him;

Shez was smitten by the hand of a robber, because of his exceeding riches, which brought peace again unto his father.

10:4 his father did build up many cities upon the face of the land, the people began again to spread over all the face of the land.

Shez did live to an exceedingly old age; and he begat Riplakish. And he died,

494

Ether 10:4 Riplakish reigned in his stead.

10:5 Riplakish did not do that which was right in the sight of the Lord,

he did have many wives and concubines,
did lay that upon men s shoulders which was grievous to be
borne;

he did tax them with heavy taxes; and with the taxes he did
build many spacious buildings.

10:6 he did erect him an exceedingly beautiful throne;

he did build many prisons, and whoso would not be subject
unto taxes he did cast into prison;

whoso was not able to pay taxes he did cast into prison;

he did cause that they should labor continually for their
support;

whoso refused to labor he did cause to be put to death.

10:7 he did obtain all his fine work, yea, even his fine gold he did
cause to be refined in prison, and all manner of fine
workmanship he did cause to be wrought in prison.

he did afflict the people with his whoredoms and abominations.

10:8 when he had reigned for the space of forty and two years the
people did rise up in rebellion against him; and there began to
be war again in the land, i

Riplakish was killed, and his descendants were driven out of
the land.

495

Ether 10:9 after the space of many years, Morianton, (he being a
descendant of Riplakish) gathered together an army of
outcasts, and went forth and gave battle unto the people;

he gained power over many cities;

the war became exceedingly sore, and did last for the space of many years;

he did gain power over all the land, and did establish himself king over all the land.

10:10 after that he had established himself king he did ease the burden of the people, by which he did gain favor in the eyes of the people, and they did anoint him to be their king.

10:11 he did do justice unto the people, but not unto himself because of his many whoredoms;

he was cut off from the presence of the Lord.

10:12 Morianton built up many cities, and the people became exceedingly rich under his reign, both in buildings, and in gold and silver, and in raising grain, and in flocks, and herds, and such things which had been restored unto them.

10:13 Morianton did live to an exceedingly great age, and then he begat Kim;

496

Ether 10:13: Kim did reign in the stead of his father;

he did reign eight years, and his father died.

Kim did not reign in righteousness, wherefore he was not favored of the Lord.

10:14 his brother did rise up in rebellion against him, by which he did bring him into captivity;

he did remain in captivity all his days;

he begat sons and daughters in captivity,

in his old age he begat Levi; and he died.

10:15 Levi did serve in captivity after the death of his father, for the space of forty and two years.

he did make war against the king of the land, by which he did obtain unto himself the kingdom.

10:16 after he had obtained unto himself the kingdom he did that which was right in the sight of the Lord;

the people did prosper in the land;

he did live to a good old age, and begat sons and daughters;

he also begat Corom, whom he anointed king in his stead.

10:17 Corom did that which was good in the sight of the Lord all his days;

he begat many sons and daughters;

after he had seen many days he did pass away,

Kish reigned in his stead.

10:18 Kish passed away also,

497

Ether 10:18 Lib reigned in his stead.

10:19 Lib also did that which was good in the sight of the Lord.

in the days of Lib the poisonous serpents were destroyed.

they did go into the land southward, to hunt food for the people of the land,

the land was covered with animals of the forest.

Lib also himself became a great hunter.

10:20 they built a great city by the narrow neck of land,

10:21 they did preserve the land southward for a wilderness, to get game.

the whole face of the land northward was covered with inhabitants.

10:22 they were exceedingly industrious,
they did buy and sell and traffic one with another, that they might get gain.

10:23 they did work in all manner of ore,
they did make gold, and silver, and iron, and brass, and all manner of metals;
they did dig it out of the earth;
they did cast up mighty heaps of earth to get ore, of gold, and of silver, and of iron, and of copper.
they did work all manner of fine work.

10:24 they did have silks, and fine-twined linen;
they did work all manner of cloth, that they might clothe themselves from their nakedness.

10:25 they did make all manner of tools to till the earth, both to plow and to sow, to reap and to hoe, and also to thrash.

10:26 they did make all manner of tools with which they did work their beasts.

10:27 they did make all manner of weapons of war.
they did work all manner of work of exceedingly curious workmanship.

10:28 never could be a people more blessed than were they, and more prospered by the hand of the Lord.

they were in a land that was choice above all lands, for the Lord had spoken it.

10:29 Lib did live many years, and begat sons and daughters; and he also begat Hearthom.

10:30 Hearthom reigned in the stead of his father.

when Hearthom had reigned twenty and four years, behold, the kingdom was taken away from him.

he served many years in captivity, yea, even all the remainder of his days.

10:31 he begat Heth, and Heth lived in captivity all his days.

Heth begat Aaron, and Aaron dwelt in captivity all his days;

he begat Amnigaddah, and Amnigaddah also dwelt in captivity all his days;

he begat Coriantum, and Coriantum dwelt in captivity all his days;

he begat Com.

10:32 Com drew away the half of the kingdom.

he reigned over the half of the kingdom forty and two years;

he went to battle against the king, Amgid, and they fought for the space of many years, during which time Com gained power over Amgid, and obtained power over the remainder of the kingdom.

10:33 in the days of Com there began to be robbers in the land;

they adopted the old plans, and administered oaths after the manner of the ancients, and sought again to destroy the kingdom.

10:34 Com did fight against them much; nevertheless, he did not prevail against them.

11:1 there came also in the days of Com many prophets, and prophesied of the destruction of that great people

except they should repent, and turn unto the Lord, and forsake their murders and wickedness.

11:2 the prophets were rejected by the people,
they fled unto Com for protection, for the people sought to
destroy them.

11:3 they prophesied unto Com many things;
he was blessed in all the remainder of his days.

11:4 he lived to a good old age, and begat Shiblom;

499

Ether 11:4 Shiblom reigned in his stead.

the brother of Shiblom rebelled against him, and there began
to be an exceedingly great war in all the land.

11:5 the brother of Shiblom caused that all the prophets who
prophesied of the destruction of the people should be put to
death;

11:6 there was great calamity in all the land, for they had testified
that a great curse should come upon the land,

also upon the people, and that there should be a great
destruction among them, such an one as never had been upon
the face of the earth,

their bones should become as heaps of earth upon the face of
the land except they should repent of their wickedness.

11:7 they hearkened not unto the voice of the Lord, because of their
wicked combinations;

there began to be wars and contentions in all the land,

also many famines and pestilences,

there was a great destruction, such an one as never had been
known upon the face of the earth;

all this came to pass in the days of Shiblom.
11:8 the people began to repent of their iniquity;
inasmuch as they did the Lord did have mercy on them.
11:9 Shiblom was slain,
Seth was brought into captivity,
did dwell in captivity all his days.
11:10 Ahah, his son, did obtain the kingdom;
he did reign over the people all his days.
he did do all manner of iniquity in his days,
he did cause the shedding of much blood;

500

Ether 11:11 Ethem, being a descendant of Ahah, did obtain the kingdom;
he also did do that which was wicked in his days.
11:12 in the days of Ethem there came many prophets, and
prophesied again unto the people;
they did prophesy that the Lord would utterly destroy them from
off all the face of the earth except they repented of their
iniquities.
11:13 the people hardened their hearts, and would not hearken unto
their words; and the prophets mourned and withdrew from
among the people.
11:14 Ethem did execute judgment in wickedness all his days;
he begat Moron.
Moron did reign in his stead;
Moron did that which was wicked before the Lord.
11:15 there arose a rebellion among the people, because of that

secret combination which was built up to get power and gain;

there arose a mighty man among them in iniquity, and gave battle unto Moron, in which he did overthrow the half of the kingdom;

he did maintain the half of the kingdom for many years.

11:16 Moron did overthrow him, and did obtain the kingdom again.

11:17 there arose another mighty man; and he was a descendant of the brother of Jared.

11:18 he did overthrow Moron and obtain the kingdom;

Moron dwelt in captivity all the remainder of his days; and he begat Coriantor.

11:19 Coriantor dwelt in captivity all his days.

11:20 in the days of Coriantor there also came many prophets, and prophesied of great and marvelous things,

cried repentance unto the people,

except they should repent the Lord God would execute judgment against them to their utter destruction;

11:21 the Lord God would send or bring forth another people to possess the land, by his power, after the manner by which he brought their fathers.

11:22 they did reject all the words of the prophets, because of their secret society and wicked abominations.

11:23 Coriantor begat Ether, and he died, having dwelt in captivity all his days.

501

Ether 12:1 the days of Ether were in the days of Coriantumr;

Coriantumr was king over all the land.

12:2 Ether was a prophet of the Lord;

Ether came forth in the days of Coriantumr, and began to prophesy unto the people,

he could not be restrained because of the Spirit of the Lord which was in him.

12:3 he did cry from the morning, even until the going down of the sun, exhorting the people to believe in God unto repentance lest they should be destroyed,

by faith all things are fulfilled

12:4 whoso believeth in God might with surety hope for a better world, yea, even a place at the right hand of God,

hope cometh of faith, maketh an anchor to the souls of men, which would make them sure and steadfast, always abounding in good works, being led to glorify God.

12:5 Ether did prophesy great and marvelous things unto the people, which they did not believe, because they saw them not.

502

Ether 12:6 I, Moroni, would speak somewhat concerning these things;

faith is things which are hoped for and not seen;

dispute not because ye see not,

ye receive no witness until after the trial of your faith.

12:7 it was by faith that Christ showed himself unto our fathers, after he had risen from the dead;

he showed not himself unto them until after they had faith in him;

it must needs be that some had faith in him, for he showed himself not unto the world.

12:8 because of the faith of men he has shown himself unto the world, and glorified the name of the Father, and prepared a way that thereby others might be partakers of the heavenly gift, that they might hope for those things which they have not seen.

12:9 ye may also have hope, and be partakers of the gift, if ye will but have faith.

503

Ether 12:10 it was by faith that they of old were called after the holy order of God.

12:11 by faith was the law of Moses given.

in the gift of his Son hath God prepared a more excellent way; it is by faith that it hath been fulfilled.

12:12 if there be no faith among the children of men God can do no miracle among them;

he showed not himself until after their faith.

12:13 it was the faith of Alma and Amulek that caused the prison to tumble to the earth.

12:14 it was the faith of Nephi and Lehi that wrought the change upon the Lamanites, that they were baptized with fire and with the Holy Ghost.

12:15 it was the faith of Ammon and his brethren which wrought so great a miracle among the Lamanites.

12:16 even all they who wrought miracles wrought them by faith, even those who were before Christ and also those who were

after.

12:17 it was by faith that the three disciples obtained a promise that they should not taste of death; and they obtained not the promise until after their faith.

12:18 neither at any time hath any wrought miracles until after their faith;

they first believed in the Son of God.

12:19 there were many whose faith was so exceedingly strong, even before Christ came, who could not be kept from within the veil, but truly saw with their eyes the things which they had beheld with an eye of faith, and they were glad.

504

Ether 12:20 we have seen in this record that one of these was the brother of Jared;

so great was his faith in God, that when God put forth his finger he could not hide it from the sight of the brother of Jared, because of his word which he had spoken unto him, which word he had obtained by faith.

12:21 after the brother of Jared had beheld the finger of the Lord, because of the promise which the brother of Jared had obtained by faith, the Lord could not withhold anything from his sight;

he showed him all things, for he could no longer be kept without the veil.

12:22 it is by faith that my fathers have obtained the promise that these things should come unto their brethren through the

Gentiles;

the Lord hath commanded me, yea, even Jesus Christ.

12:23 I said unto him: Lord, the Gentiles will mock at these things,
because of our weakness in writing;

Lord thou hast made us mighty in word by faith, but thou hast
not made us mighty in writing;

thou hast made all this people that they could speak much,
because of the Holy Ghost which thou hast given them;

12:24 thou hast made us that we could write but little, because of the
awkwardness of our hands.

thou hast not made us mighty in writing like unto the brother of
Jared,

thou madest him that the things which he wrote were mighty
even as thou art, unto the overpowering of man to read them.

505

Ehter 12:25 Thou hast also made our words powerful and great, even that
we cannot write them;

when we write we behold our weakness, and stumble because
of the placing of our words;

I fear lest the Gentiles shall mock at our words.

12:26 the Lord spake unto me, saying:

Fools mock, but they shall mourn;

my grace is sufficient for the meek, that they shall take no
advantage of your weakness;

12:27 if men come unto me I will show unto them their weakness.

I give unto men weakness that they may be humble;

my grace is sufficient for all men that humble themselves
before me;

if they humble themselves before me, and have faith in me,
then will I make weak things become strong unto them.

12:28 I will show unto the Gentiles their weakness

I will show unto them that faith, hope and charity bringeth unto
me the fountain of all righteousness.

506

Ether 12:29 I, Moroni, having heard these words, was comforted,

O Lord, thy righteous will be done, for I know that thou workest
unto the children of men according to their faith;

12:30 the brother of Jared said unto the mountain Zerin, Remove
and it was removed.

if he had not had faith it would not have moved;

thou workest after men have faith.

12:31 For thus didst thou manifest thyself unto thy disciples;

after they had faith, and did speak in thy name, thou didst show
thyself unto them in great power.

12:32 I also remember that thou hast said that thou hast prepared a
house for man,

yea, even among the mansions of thy Father, in which man
might have a more excellent hope;

man must hope, or he cannot receive an inheritance in the
place which thou hast prepared.

12:33 I remember that thou hast said that thou hast loved the world,
even unto the laying down of thy life for the world, that thou

mightest take it again to prepare a place for the children of men.

12:34 I know that this love which thou hast had for the children of men is charity;

except men shall have charity they cannot inherit that place which thou hast prepared in the mansions of thy Father.

12:35 I know by this thing which thou hast said, that if the Gentiles have not charity, because of our weakness, that thou wilt prove them, and take away their talent,

even that which they have received, and give unto them who shall have more abundantly.

507

Ether 12:36 I prayed unto the Lord that he would give unto the Gentiles grace, that they might have charity.

12:37 the Lord said unto me:

If they have not charity it mattereth not unto thee,
thou hast been faithful;
thy garments shall be made clean.

because thou hast seen thy weakness thou shalt be made strong, even unto the sitting down in the place which I have prepared in the mansions of my Father.

12:38 I, Moroni, bid farewell unto the Gentiles, yea, and also unto my brethren whom I love,

until we shall meet before the judgment-seat of Christ,
where all men shall know that my garments are not spotted with your blood.

12:39 then shall ye know that I have seen Jesus, and that he hath talked with me face to face,

he told me in plain humility, even as a man telleth another in mine own language, concerning these things;

12:40 only a few have I written, because of my weakness in writing.

12:41 I would commend you to seek this Jesus of whom the prophets and apostles have written,

the grace of God the Father, and also the Lord Jesus Christ, and the Holy Ghost, which beareth record of them, may be and abide in you forever.

508

Ether 13:2 they rejected all the words of Ether;

he truly told them of all things, from the beginning of man;

that after the waters had receded from off the face of this land it became a choice land above all other lands,

a chosen land of the Lord;

the Lord would have that all men should serve him who dwell upon the face thereof;

13:3 it was the place of the New Jerusalem, which should come down out of heaven,

the holy sanctuary of the Lord.

13:4 Ether saw the days of Christ,

he spake concerning a New Jerusalem upon this land.

13:5 he spake also concerning the house of Israel, and the Jerusalem from whence Lehi should come

after it should be destroyed it should be built up again, a holy

city unto the Lord;

it could not be a new Jerusalem for it had been in a time of old;
but it should be built up again, and become a holy city of the
Lord;

it should be built unto the house of Israel.

13:6 a New Jerusalem should be built upon this land, unto the
remnant of the seed of Joseph, for which things there has been
a type.

13:7 as Joseph brought his father down into the land of Egypt, even
so he died there;

the Lord brought a remnant of the seed of Joseph out of the
land of Jerusalem, that he might be merciful unto the seed of
Joseph that they should perish not, even as he was merciful
unto the father of Joseph that he should perish not.

13:8 the remnant of the house of Joseph shall be built upon this
land;

it shall be a land of their inheritance;

they shall build up a holy city unto the Lord, like unto the
Jerusalem of old;

they shall no more be confounded, until the end come when
the earth shall pass away.

509

Ether 13:9 there shall be a new heaven and a new earth;

they shall be like unto the old save the old have passed away,
and all things have become new.

13:10 then cometh the New Jerusalem;

blessed are they who dwell therein, for it is they whose garments are white through the blood of the Lamb;

they are they who are numbered among the remnant of the seed of Joseph, who were of the house of Israel.

13:11 then also cometh the Jerusalem of old; and the inhabitants thereof, blessed are they,

they have been washed in the blood of the Lamb;

they are they who were scattered and gathered in from the four quarters of the earth, and from the north countries, and are partakers of the fulfilling of the covenant which God made with their father, Abraham.

13:12 when these things come, bringeth to pass the scripture which saith, there are they who were first, who shall be last;

there are they who were last, who shall be first.

510

Ether 13:13 great and marvelous were the prophecies of Ether;

they esteemed him as naught, and cast him out;

he hid himself in the cavity of a rock by day, and by night he went forth viewing the things which should come upon the people.

13:14 as he dwelt in the cavity of a rock he made the remainder of this record, viewing the destructions which came upon the people, by night.

13:15 in that same year in which he was cast out from among the people there began to be a great war among the people,

there were many who rose up, who were mighty men, and

sought to destroy Coriantumr by their secret plans of wickedness, of which hath been spoken.

13:16 now Coriantumr, having studied, himself, in all the arts of war and all the cunning of the world, wherefore he gave battle unto them who sought to destroy him.

13:17 But he repented not, neither his fair sons nor daughters; neither the fair sons and daughters of Cohor; neither the fair sons and daughters of Corihor; there were none of the fair sons and daughters upon the face of the whole earth who repented of their sins.

13:18 in the first year that Ether dwelt in the cavity of a rock, there were many people who were slain by the sword of those secret combinations, fighting against Coriantumr that they might obtain the kingdom.

13:19 the sons of Coriantumr fought much and bled much.

511

Ether 13:20 the word of the Lord came to Ether, that he should go and prophesy unto Coriantumr

if he would repent, and all his household, the Lord would give unto him his kingdom

spare the people

13:21 Otherwise they should be destroyed, and all his household save it were himself.

he should only live to see the fulfilling of the prophecies which had been spoken concerning another people receiving the land for their inheritance;

Coriantumr should receive a burial by them;
every soul should be destroyed save it were Coriantumr.

13:22 Coriantumr repented not, neither his household, neither the people;

the wars ceased not; and they sought to kill Ether, but he fled from before them and hid again in the cavity of the rock.

13:23 there arose up Shared, and he also gave battle unto Coriantumr;

he did beat him, insomuch that in the third year he did bring him into captivity.

13:24 the sons of Coriantumr, in the fourth year, did beat Shared, and did obtain the kingdom again unto their father.

13:25 there began to be a war upon all the face of the land, every man with his band fighting for that which he desired.

13:26 there were robbers, and in fine, all manner of wickedness upon all the face of the land.

13:27 Coriantumr was exceedingly angry with Shared, and he went against him with his armies to battle;

they did meet in great anger,

they did meet in the valley of Gilgal; and the battle became exceedingly sore.

13:28 Shared fought against him for the space of three days.

Coriantumr beat him, and did pursue him until he came to the plains of Heshlon.

13:29 Shared gave him battle again upon the plains;

he did beat Coriantumr, and drove him back again to the valley of Gilgal.

13:30 Coriantumr gave Shared battle again in the valley of Gilgal, in

which he beat Shared and slew him.

512

Ether 13:31 Shared wounded Coriantumr in his thigh, that he did not go to battle again for the space of two years, in which time all the people upon the face of the land were shedding blood, and there was none to restrain them.

14:1 there began to be a great curse upon all the land because of the iniquity of the people,

if a man should lay his tool or his sword upon his shelf, or upon the place whither he would keep it, behold, upon the morrow, he could not find it, so great was the curse upon the land.

14:2 every man did cleave unto that which was his own, with his hands, and would not borrow neither would he lend;

every man kept the hilt of his sword in his right hand, in the defence of his property and his own life and of his wives and children.

14:3 after the space of two years, and after the death of Shared, behold, there arose the brother of Shared

he gave battle unto Coriantumr, in which Coriantumr did beat him and did pursue him to the wilderness of Akish.

14:4 the brother of Shared did give battle unto him in the wilderness of Akish;

the battle became exceedingly sore, and many thousands fell by the sword.

14:5 Coriantumr did lay siege to the wilderness; and the brother of Shared did march forth out of the wilderness by night, and slew

a part of the army of Coriantumr, as they were drunken.

14:6 he came forth to the land of Moron, and placed himself upon the throne of Coriantumr.

14:7 Coriantumr dwelt with his army in the wilderness for the space of two years, in which he did receive great strength to his army.

14:8 the brother of Shared, whose name was Gilead, also received great strength to his army, because of secret combinations.

14:9 his high priest murdered him as he sat upon his throne.

513

Ether 14:10 one of the secret combinations murdered him in a secret pass, and obtained unto himself the kingdom;

his name was Lib;

Lib was a man of great stature, more than any other man among all the people.

14:11 in the first year of Lib, Coriantumr came up unto the land of Moron, and gave battle unto Lib.

14:12 he fought with Lib, in which Lib did smite upon his arm that he was wounded;

the army of Coriantumr did press forward upon Lib, that he fled to the borders upon the seashore.

14:13 Coriantumr pursued him;

Lib gave battle unto him upon the seashore.

14:14 Lib did smite the army of Coriantumr, that they fled again to the wilderness of Akish.

14:15 Lib did pursue him until he came to the plains of Agosh.

Coriantumr had taken all the people with him as he fled before

Lib in that quarter of the land whither he fled.

14:16 when he had come to the plains of Agosh he gave battle unto Lib,

he smote upon him until he died;

514

Ether 14:16 the brother of Lib did come against Coriantumr in the stead thereof,

the battle became exceedingly sore, in the which Coriantumr fled again before the army of the brother of Lib.

14:17 the name of the brother of Lib was called Shiz.

Shiz pursued after Coriantumr, and he did overthrow many cities, and he did slay both women and children, and he did burn the cities.

14:18 there went a fear of Shiz throughout all the land;

a cry went forth throughout the land Who can stand before the army of Shiz? Behold, he sweepeth the earth before him!

14:19 the people began to flock together in armies, throughout all the face of the land.

14:20 they were divided; and a part of them fled to the army of Shiz, and a part of them fled to the army of Coriantumr.

14:21 so great and lasting had been the war, and so long had been the scene of bloodshed and carnage, that the whole face of the land was covered with the bodies of the dead.

14:22 so swift and speedy was the war that there was none left to bury the dead, but they did march forth from the shedding of blood to the shedding of blood, leaving the bodies of both men,

women, and children strewed upon the face of the land, to become a prey to the worms of the flesh.

14:23 the scent thereof went forth upon the face of the land, even upon all the face of the land;

the people became troubled by day and by night, because of the scent thereof.

14:24 Shiz did not cease to pursue Coriantumr; for he had sworn to avenge himself upon Coriantumr of the blood of his brother, who had been slain, and the word of the Lord which came to Ether that Coriantumr should not fall by the sword.

14:25 the Lord did visit them in the fulness of his wrath, their wickedness and abominations had prepared a way for their everlasting destruction.

14:26 Shiz did pursue Coriantumr eastward, even to the borders by the seashore,

there he gave battle unto Shiz for the space of three days.

14:27 so terrible was the destruction among the armies of Shiz that the people began to be frightened, and began to flee before the armies of Coriantumr;

they fled to the land of Corihor, and swept off the inhabitants before them, all them that would not join them.

14:28 they pitched their tents in the valley of Corihor;

Coriantumr pitched his tents in the valley of Shurr.

the valley of Shurr was near the hill Comnor;

Coriantumr did gather his armies together upon the hill Comnor, and did sound a trumpet unto the armies of Shiz to invite them forth to battle.

14:29 they came forth, but were driven again; and they came the

second time, and they were driven again the second time.

they came again the third time, and the battle became exceedingly sore.

14:30 Shiz smote upon Coriantumr that he gave him many deep wounds;

Coriantumr, having lost his blood, fainted, and was carried away as though he were dead.

14:31 the loss of men, women and children on both sides was so great that Shiz commanded his people that they should not pursue the armies of Coriantumr;

515

Ether 15:1 when Coriantumr had recovered of his wounds, he began to remember the words which Ether had spoken unto him.

15:2 He saw that there had been slain by the sword already nearly two millions of his people,

he began to sorrow in his heart;

there had been slain two millions of mighty men, and also their wives and their children.

15:3 He began to repent of the evil which he had done;

he began to remember the words which had been spoken by the mouth of all the prophets,

he saw them that they were fulfilled thus far, every whit; and his soul mourned and refused to be comforted.

15:4 he wrote an epistle unto Shiz, desiring him that he would spare the people, and he would give up the kingdom for the sake of the lives of the people.

15:5 when Shiz had received his epistle he wrote an epistle unto Coriantumr, that if he would give himself up, that he might slay him with his own sword, that he would spare the lives of the people.

516

Ether 15:6 the people repented not of their iniquity;
the people of Coriantumr were stirred up to anger against the people of Shiz;
the people of Shiz were stirred up to anger against the people of Coriantumr;
the people of Shiz did give battle unto the people of Coriantumr.

15:7 when Coriantumr saw that he was about to fall he fled again before the people of Shiz.

15:8 he came to the waters of Ripliancum, which, by interpretation, is large, or to exceed all;
when they came to these waters they pitched their tents;
Shiz also pitched his tents near unto them;
on the morrow they did come to battle.

15:9 they fought an exceedingly sore battle, in which Coriantumr was wounded again, and he fainted with the loss of blood.

15:10 the armies of Coriantumr did press upon the armies of Shiz that they beat them, that they caused them to flee before them; and they did flee southward, and did pitch their tents in a place which was called Ogath.

15:11 the army of Coriantumr did pitch their tents by the hill Ramah;

15:12 they did gather together all the people upon all the face of the land, who had not been slain, save it was Ether.

15:13 Ether did behold all the doings of the people;

he beheld that the people who were for Coriantumr were gathered together to the army of Coriantumr; and the people who were for Shiz were gathered together to the army of Shiz.

15:14 they were for the space of four years gathering together the people, that they might get all who were upon the face of the land, and that they might receive all the strength which it was possible that they could receive.

15:15 when they were all gathered together, every one to the army which he would, with their wives and their children both men women and children being armed with weapons of war, having shields, and breastplates, and head-plates, and being clothed after the manner of war

they did march forth one against another to battle; and they fought all that day, and conquered not.

15:16 when it was night they were weary, and retired to their camps;

after they had retired to their camps they took up a howling and a lamentation for the loss of the slain of their people;

so great were their cries, their howlings and lamentations, that they did rend the air exceedingly.

15:17 on the morrow they did go again to battle, and great and terrible was that day; nevertheless, they conquered not,

when the night came again they did rend the air with their cries, and their howlings, and their mournings, for the loss of the slain of their people.

Ether 15:18 Coriantumr wrote again an epistle unto Shiz, desiring that he would not come again to battle, but that he would take the kingdom, and spare the lives of the people.

15:19 the Spirit of the Lord had ceased striving with them,
Satan had full power over the hearts of the people;
they were given up unto the hardness of their hearts, and the blindness of their minds that they might be destroyed;
wherefore they went again to battle.

15:20 they fought all that day,
when the night came they slept upon their swords.

15:21 on the morrow they fought even until the night came.

15:22 when the night came they were drunken with anger, even as a man who is drunken with wine;
they slept again upon their swords.

15:23 And on the morrow they fought again;
when the night came they had all fallen by the sword save it were fifty and two of the people of Coriantumr, and sixty and nine of the people of Shiz.

15:24 they slept upon their swords that night, and on the morrow they fought again,
they contended in their might with their swords and with their shields, all that day.

15:25 when the night came there were thirty and two of the people of Shiz, and twenty and seven of the people of Coriantumr.

15:26 they ate and slept, and prepared for death on the morrow.
they were large and mighty men as to the strength of men.

15:27 they fought for the space of three hours, and they fainted with the loss of blood.

15:28 when the men of Coriantumr had received sufficient strength that they could walk, they were about to flee for their lives; but behold, Shiz arose, and also his men, and he swore in his wrath that he would slay Coriantumr or he would perish by the sword.

15:29 he did pursue them, and on the morrow he did overtake them; they fought again with the sword.

when they had all fallen by the sword, save it were Coriantumr and Shiz, behold Shiz had fainted with the loss of blood.

15:30 when Coriantumr had leaned upon his sword, that he rested a little, he smote off the head of Shiz.

15:31 after he had smitten off the head of Shiz, that Shiz raised upon his hands and fell; and after that he had struggled for breath, he died.

15:32 Coriantumr fell to the earth, and became as if he had no life.

15:33 the Lord spake unto Ether, and said unto him: Go forth.

he went forth, and beheld that the words of the Lord had all been fulfilled;

15:34 the last words which are written by Ether are these: Whether the Lord will that I be translated, or that I suffer the will of the Lord in the flesh, it mattereth not, if it so be that I am saved in the kingdom of God.

518

Moroni 1:1 I, Moroni, after having made an end of abridging the account of

the people of Jared,

I had supposed not to have written more, but I have not as yet
perished;

I make not myself known to the Lamanites lest they should
destroy me.

1:2 their wars are exceedingly fierce among themselves;
because of their hatred they put to death every Nephite that will
not deny the Christ.

1:3 I, Moroni, will not deny the Christ;
I wander whithersoever I can for the safety of mine own life.

1:4 I write a few more things, that perhaps they may be of worth
unto my brethren, the Lamanites, in some future day, according
to the will of the Lord.

519

Moroni 2:1 The words of Christ, which he spake unto his disciples, the
twelve whom he had chosen, as he laid his hands upon
them

2:2 he called them by name,
Ye shall call on the Father in my name, in mighty prayer;
after ye have done this ye shall have power that to him upon
whom ye shall lay your hands, ye shall give the Holy Ghost;
in my name shall ye give it, for thus do mine apostles.

2:3 Christ spake these words unto them at the time of his first
appearing;
the multitude heard it not, but the disciples heard it;
on as many as they laid their hands, fell the Holy Ghost.

520

Moroni 3:1 The manner which the disciples, who were called the elders of the church, ordained priests and teachers

3:2 After they had prayed unto the Father in the name of Christ, they laid their hands upon them,

3:3 In the name of Jesus Christ I ordain you to be a priest, (or, if he be a teacher) I ordain you to be a teacher, to preach repentance and remission of sins through Jesus Christ, by the endurance of faith on his name to the end.

3:4 they ordained them by the power of the Holy Ghost, which was in them.

521

Moroni 4:1 The manner of their elders and priests administering the flesh and blood of Christ unto the church;

they administered it according to the commandments of Christ; the elder or priest did minister it

4:2 they did kneel down with the church, and pray to the Father in the name of Christ,

4:3 O God, the Eternal Father, we ask thee in the name of thy Son, Jesus Christ, bless and sanctify this bread to the souls of all those who partake of it;

that they may eat in remembrance of the body of thy Son,

witness unto thee, O God, the Eternal Father, that they are
willing to take upon them the name of thy Son,
always remember him,
keep his commandments which he hath given them,
that they may always have his Spirit to be with them.

522

Moroni 5:1 The manner of administering the wine

they took the cup, and said:

5:2 O God, the Eternal Father,

we ask thee, in the name of thy Son, Jesus Christ,

bles and sanctify this wine to the souls of all those who drink
of it,

that they may do it in remembrance of the blood of thy Son,
which was shed for them;

that they may witness unto thee, O God, the Eternal Father, that
they do always remember him,
that they may have his Spirit to be with them.

523*

Moroni 6:1 concerning baptism.

elders, priests, and teachers were baptized;

they were not baptized save they brought forth fruit meet that
they were worthy of it.

6:2 Neither did they receive any unto baptism save they came forth
with a broken heart and a contrite spirit, and witnessed unto the

church that they truly repented of all their sins.

6:3 none were received unto baptism save they took upon them the name of Christ,

having a determination to serve him to the end.

6:4 after they had been received unto baptism, were wrought upon and cleansed by the power of the Holy Ghost,

they were numbered among the people of the church of Christ; their names were taken, that they might be remembered and nourished by the good word of God,

to keep them in the right way,

to keep them continually watchful unto prayer, relying alone upon the merits of Christ,

who was the author and the finisher of their faith.

6:5 the church did meet together oft, to fast and to pray, and to speak one with another concerning the welfare of their souls.

6:6 they did meet together oft to partake of bread and wine, in remembrance of the Lord Jesus.

6:7 they were strict to observe that there should be no iniquity among them;

whoso was found to commit iniquity, and three witnesses of the church did condemn them before the elders, and if they repented not, and confessed not, their names were blotted out,

they were not numbered among the people of Christ.

6:8 as oft as they repented and sought forgiveness, with real intent, they were forgiven.

6:9 their meetings were conducted by the church after the manner

of the workings of the Spirit,

by the power of the Holy Ghost;

the power of the Holy Ghost led them whether to preach, or to exhort, or to pray, or to supplicate, or to sing, even so it was done.

524

Moroni 7:1 I, Moroni, write a few of the words of my father Mormon, which he spake concerning faith, hope, and charity;

he taught them in the synagogue which they had built for the place of worship.

7:2 it is by the grace of God the Father, and our Lord Jesus Christ, and his holy will, because of the gift of his calling unto me, that I am permitted to speak unto you at this time.

7:3 I would speak unto you that are of the church,
that are the peaceable followers of Christ,
that have obtained a sufficient hope by which ye can enter into the rest of the Lord, from this time henceforth until ye shall rest with him in heaven.

525

Moroni 7:4 I judge these things of you because of your peaceable walk with the children of men.

7:5 I remember the word of God,
by their works ye shall know them; for if their works be good, then they are good also.

7:6 God hath said a man being evil cannot do that which is good;
for if he offereth a gift, or prayeth unto God, except he shall do it
with real intent it profiteth him nothing.

7:7 it is not counted unto him for righteousness.

7:8 if a man being evil giveth a gift, he doeth it grudgingly;
it is counted unto him the same as if he had retained the gift;
wherefore he is counted evil before God.

7:9 likewise also is it counted evil unto a man, if he shall pray and
not with real intent of heart;
it profiteth him nothing,
God receiveth none such.

7:10 a man being evil cannot do that which is good; neither will he
give a good gift.

7:11 a bitter fountain cannot bring forth good water;
neither can a good fountain bring forth bitter water;
a man being a servant of the devil cannot follow Christ;
if he follow Christ he cannot be a servant of the devil.

7:12 all things which are good cometh of God;
that which is evil cometh of the devil; for the devil is an enemy
unto God, and fighteth against him continually, and inviteth and
enticeth to sin, and to do that which is evil continually.

7:13 that which is of God inviteth and enticeth to do good
continually;
every thing which inviteth and enticeth to do good, and to love
God, and to serve him, is inspired of God.

7:14 take heed, my beloved brethren, that ye do not judge that
which is evil to be of God,
or that which is good and of God to be of the devil.

7:15 it is given unto you to judge, that ye may know good from evil;
the way to judge is as plain, that ye may know with a perfect
knowledge, as the daylight is from the dark night.

7:16 the Spirit of Christ is given to every man, that he may know
good from evil;

I show unto you the way to judge;
every thing which inviteth to do good, and to persuade to
believe in Christ, is sent forth by the power and gift of Christ;
ye may know with a perfect knowledge it is of God.

7:17 whatsoever thing persuadeth men to do evil, and believe not in
Christ, and deny him, and serve not God, then ye may know
with a perfect knowledge it is of the devil;

after this manner doth the devil work,
he persuadeth no man to do good, no, not one;
neither do his angels;
neither do they who subject themselves unto him.

7:18 ye know the light by which ye may judge, which light is the light
of Christ, see that ye do not judge wrongfully;
with that same judgment which ye judge ye shall also be
judged.

7:19 ye should search diligently in the light of Christ that ye may
know good from evil;

if ye will lay hold upon every good thing, and condemn it not,
ye certainly will be a child of Christ.

526

Moroni 7:21 I will tell you the way whereby ye may lay hold on every good

thing.

7:22 God knowing all things, being from everlasting to everlasting,
he sent angels to minister unto the children of men,
to make manifest concerning the coming of Christ;
in Christ there should come every good thing.

7:23 God also declared unto prophets, by his own mouth, that Christ
should come.

7:24 there were divers ways that he did manifest things unto the
children of men, which were good;
all things which are good cometh of Christ; otherwise men
were fallen, and there could no good thing come unto them.

7:25 by the ministering of angels,
by every word which proceeded forth out of the mouth of God,
men began to exercise faith in Christ;
thus by faith, they did lay hold upon every good thing;
thus it was until the coming of Christ.

7:26 after that he came men also were saved by faith in his name;
by faith, they become the sons of God.
as sure as Christ liveth he spake these words unto our fathers,
Whatsoever thing ye shall ask the Father in my name, which is
good, in faith believing that ye shall receive, behold, it shall be
done unto you.

527

Moroni 7:27 have miracles ceased because Christ hath ascended into
heaven,

7:28 he hath answered the ends of the law,

he claimeth all those who have faith in him;
they who have faith in him will cleave unto every good thing;
he advocateth the cause of the children of men;
he dwelleth eternally in the heavens.

7:29 have miracles ceased? Behold I say unto you, Nay;
neither have angels ceased to minister unto the children of
men.

7:30 they are subject unto him, to minister according to the word of
his command, showing themselves unto them of strong faith
and a firm mind in every form of godliness.

7:31 the office of their ministry is to call men unto repentance,
to fulfill and to do the work of the covenants of the Father, which
he hath made unto the children of men,
to prepare the way among the children of men, by declaring the
word of Christ unto the chosen vessels of the Lord,
that they may bear testimony of him.

7:32 by so doing, the Lord God prepareth the way that the residue of
men may have faith in Christ, that the Holy Ghost may have
place in their hearts,
after this manner bringeth to pass the Father, the covenants
which he hath made unto the children of men.

528

Moroni 7:33 Christ hath said: If ye will have faith in me ye shall have power
to do whatsoever thing is expedient in me.

7:34 he hath said: Repent all ye ends of the earth, and come unto
me, and be baptized in my name,

have faith in me, that ye may be saved.

7:35 God will show unto you, with power and great glory at the last day, that they are true,

if they are true has the day of miracles ceased?

7:36 have angels ceased to appear unto the children of men?

has he withheld the power of the Holy Ghost from them?

will he, so long as time shall last, or the earth shall stand, or there shall be one man upon the face thereof to be saved?

7:37 I say unto you, Nay; for it is by faith that miracles are wrought;

it is by faith that angels appear and minister unto men;

if these things have ceased wo be unto the children of men, for it is because of unbelief, and all is vain.

7:38 no man can be saved, according to the words of Christ, save they shall have faith in his name;

if these things have ceased, then has faith ceased also; and awful is the state of man, for they are as though there had been no redemption made.

529

Moroni 7:39 I judge that ye have faith in Christ because of your meekness;

if ye have not faith in him then ye are not fit to be numbered among the people of his church.

7:40 I would speak unto you concerning hope.

How is it that ye can attain unto faith, save ye shall have hope?

7:41 what is it that ye shall hope for?

ye shall have hope through the atonement of Christ and the power of his resurrection, to be raised unto life eternal,

this because of your faith in him according to the promise.

7:42 if a man have faith he must needs have hope;
without faith there cannot be any hope.

530

Moroni 7:43 he cannot have faith and hope, save he shall be meek, and
lowly of heart.

7:44 If so, his faith and hope is vain,
none is acceptable before God, save the meek and lowly in
heart;

if a man be meek and lowly in heart, and confesses by the
power of the Holy Ghost that Jesus is the Christ, he must needs
have charity;

if he have not charity he is nothing; wherefore he must needs
have charity.

7:45 charity suffereth long, and is kind,
envieth not, and is not puffed up,
seeketh not her own,
is not easily provoked,
thinketh no evil,
rejoiceth not in iniquity but rejoiceth in the truth,
beareth all things,
believeth all things,
hopeth all things,
endureth all things.

7:46 if ye have not charity, ye are nothing, for charity never faileth.
cleave unto charity, which is the greatest of all,

all things must fail

7:47 But charity is the pure love of Christ,
it endureth forever;
whoso is found possessed of it at the last day, it shall be well
with him.

7:48 pray unto the Father with all the energy of heart,
that ye may be filled with this love, which he hath bestowed
upon all who are true followers of his Son, Jesus Christ;
that ye may become the sons of God;
that when he shall appear we shall be like him,
we shall see him as he is;
that we may have this hope;
that we may be purified even as he is pure.

531

Moroni 8:1 An epistle of my father Mormon, written to me, Moroni;

8:2 I rejoice exceedingly that your Lord Jesus Christ hath been
mindful of you, and hath called you to his ministry, and to his
holy work.

8:3 I am mindful of you always in my prayers,
continually praying unto God the Father in the name of his Holy
Child, Jesus, that he, through his infinite goodness and grace,
will keep you through the endurance of faith on his name to the
end.

532

Moroni 8:4 for it grieveth me that there should disputations rise among you.

8:5 there have been disputations among you concerning the baptism of your little children.

8:6 labor diligently, that this gross error should be removed from among you;

8:7 I inquired of the Lord concerning the matter.
the word of the Lord came to me by the power of the Holy Ghost,

8:8 Listen to the words of Christ, your Redeemer, your Lord and your God.

533

Moroni 8:8 I came into the world not to call the righteous but sinners to repentance;

the whole need no physician, but they that are sick;
wherefore, little children are whole, for they are not capable of committing sin;

wherefore the curse of Adam is taken from them in me,
it hath no power over them;
the law of circumcision is done away in me.

8:9 after this manner did the Holy Ghost manifest the word of God unto me;

I know that it is solemn mockery before God, that ye should baptize little children.

534

Moroni 8:10 I say unto you that this thing shall ye teach

repentance

baptism unto those who are accountable and capable of
committing sin;

teach parents that they must repent and be baptized, and
humble themselves as their little children,

they shall all be saved with their little children.

8:11 their little children need no repentance, neither baptism.

535

Moroni 8:11 baptism is unto repentance to the fulfilling the commandments
unto the remission of sins.

8:12 little children are alive in Christ,

from the foundation of the world;

if not so, God is a partial God, and also a changeable God, and
a respecter to persons;

how many little children have died without baptism!

8:13 if little children could not be saved without baptism, these must
have gone to an endless hell.

536

Moroni 8:14 he that supposeth that little children need baptism is in the gall
of bitterness and the bonds of iniquity,

he hath neither faith, hope, nor charity;

should he be cut off while in the thought, he must go down to

hell.

8:15 awful is the wickedness to suppose that God saveth one child because of baptism, and the other must perish because he hath no baptism.

8:16 Wo be unto them that shall pervert the ways of the Lord after this manner,
 they shall perish except they repent.

537

Moroni 8:16 I speak with boldness, having authority from God;

 I fear not what man can do; for perfect love casteth out all fear.

8:17 I am filled with charity, which is everlasting love; wherefore, all children are alike unto me;

 wherefore, I love little children with a perfect love;
 they are all alike and partakers of salvation.

8:18 I know that God is not a partial God, neither a changeable being;

 he is unchangeable from all eternity to all eternity.

8:19 Little children cannot repent; wherefore, it is awful wickedness to deny the pure mercies of God unto them,

 they are all alive in him because of his mercy.

8:20 he that saith that little children need baptism denieth the mercies of Christ, and setteth at naught the atonement of him and the power of his redemption.

8:21 Wo unto such, for they are in danger of death, hell, and an endless torment.

 I speak it boldly; God hath commanded me.

Listen unto them and give heed, or they stand against you at
the judgment-seat of Christ.

8:22 all little children are alive in Christ,
also all they that are without the law.

538

Moroni 8:22 the power of redemption cometh on all them that have no law;
he that is not condemned, or he that is under no condemnation,
cannot repent;
unto such baptism availeth nothing

8:23 it is mockery before God, denying the mercies of Christ, and the
power of his Holy Spirit, and putting trust in dead works.

539

Moroni 8:24 for repentance is unto them that are under condemnation
under the curse of a broken law.

8:25 the first fruits of repentance is baptism;
baptism cometh by faith unto the fulfilling the commandments;
the fulfilling the commandments bringeth remission of sins;

8:26 the remission of sins bringeth meekness, and lowliness of
heart;

because of meekness and lowliness of heart cometh the
visitation of the Holy Ghost,
which Comforter filleth with hope and perfect love,
which love endureth by diligence unto prayer, until the end
shall come, when all the saints shall dwell with God.

540

Moroni 8:27 I will write unto you again if I go not out soon against the Lamanites.

the pride of this nation, or the people of the Nephites, hath proven their destruction except they should repent.

8:28 Pray for them, my son, that repentance may come unto them.

I fear lest the Spirit hath ceased striving with them;
they are also seeking to put down all power and authority which cometh from God;

they are denying the Holy Ghost.

8:29 after rejecting so great a knowledge, my son, they must perish soon, unto the fulfilling of the prophecies which were spoken by the prophets, as well as the words of our Savior himself.

8:30 Farewell, my son, until I shall write unto you, or shall meet you again.

541

Moroni 9:1 I write unto you again that ye may know that I am yet alive;

I write somewhat of that which is grievous.

9:2 I have had a sore battle with the Lamanites, in which we did not conquer;

we have lost a great number of our choice men.

9:3 I fear lest the Lamanites shall destroy this people; for they do not repent,

Satan stirreth them up continually to anger one with another.

9:4 I am laboring with them continually;
when I speak the word of God with sharpness they tremble and
anger against me;
when I use no sharpness they harden their hearts against it;
I fear lest the Spirit of the Lord hath ceased striving with them.
9:5 so exceedingly do they anger that it seemeth me that they have
no fear of death;
they have lost their love, one towards another;
they thirst after blood and revenge continually.
9:6 notwithstanding their hardness, let us labor diligently;
if we should cease to labor, we should be brought under
condemnation;
we have a labor to perform whilst in this tabernacle of clay, that
we may conquer the enemy of all righteousness,
and rest our souls in the kingdom of God.

542

Moroni 9:7 I write somewhat concerning the sufferings of this people.
the Lamanites have many prisoners,
there were men, women, and children.
9:8 the husbands and fathers of those women and children they
have slain;
they feed the women upon the flesh of their husbands, and the
children upon the flesh of their fathers;
no water, save a little, do they give unto them.
9:9 this great abomination of the Lamanites, it doth not exceed that
of our people in Moriantum.

many of the daughters of the Lamanites have they taken
prisoners; and after depriving them of that which was most dear
and precious above all things, which is chastity and virtue

9:10 And after they had done this thing, they did murder them in a
most cruel manner, torturing their bodies even unto death;

after they have done this, they devour their flesh like unto wild
beasts, because of the hardness of their hearts;

9:11 a people like this, that are without civilization

9:13 how can a people like this, whose delight is in so much
abomination

9:14 How can we expect that God will stay his hand in judgment
against us?

9:16 there are many widows and their daughters who remain in
Sherrizah;

that part of the provisions which the Lamanites did not carry
away, behold, the army of Zenephi has carried away,

left them to wander whithersoever they can for food;

many old women do faint by the way and die.

9:17 the army which is with me is weak;

9:18 the depravity of my people!

They are without order and without mercy.

I am but a man, and I have but the strength of a man,

I cannot any longer enforce my commands.

9:19 they have become strong in their perversion;

they are alike brutal, sparing none, neither old nor young;

they delight in everything save that which is good;

the suffering of our women and our children upon all the face of
this land doth exceed everything;

543

Moroni 9:20 thou knowest the wickedness of this people;

they are without principle, and past feeling;

their wickedness doth exceed that of the Lamanites.

9:21 I cannot recommend them unto God lest he should smite me.

9:22 But behold, my son, I recommend thee unto God,

I trust in Christ that thou wilt be saved;

I pray unto God that he will spare thy life, to witness the return of his people unto him, or their utter destruction;

I know that they must perish except they repent and return unto him.

9:23 if they perish it will be like unto the Jaredites, because of the wilfulness of their hearts, seeking for blood and revenge.

9:24 if it so be that they perish, we know that many of our brethren have deserted over unto the Lamanites, and many more will also desert over unto them;

544

Moroni 9:20 I have sacred records that I would deliver up unto thee.

9:25 My son, be faithful in Christ;

may not the things which I have written grieve thee, to weigh thee down unto death;

may Christ lift thee up,

may his sufferings and death, and the showing his body unto our fathers, and his mercy and long-suffering, and the hope of

his glory and of eternal life, rest in your mind forever.

9:26 may the grace of God the Father, whose throne is high in the heavens, and our Lord Jesus Christ, who sitteth on the right hand of his power, until all things shall become subject unto him, be, and abide with you forever.

545*

Moroni 10:1 I, Moroni, write somewhat as seemeth me good;

I write unto my brethren, the Lamanites;

four hundred and twenty years have passed away since the sign was given of the coming of Christ.

10:2 I seal up these records, after I have spoken a few words by way of exhortation unto you.

10:3 when ye shall read these things,
remember how merciful the Lord hath been unto the children of men,

from the creation of Adam
even down unto the time that ye shall receive these things,
ponder it in your hearts.

10:4 when ye shall receive these things,
I would exhort you that ye would ask God, the Eternal Father,
in the name of Christ,
if these things are not true;
if ye shall ask with a sincere heart, with real intent, having faith
in Christ,
he will manifest the truth of it unto you,
by the power of the Holy Ghost.

10:5 by the power of the Holy Ghost ye may know the truth of all things.

10:6 whatsoever thing is good is just and true;
nothing that is good denieth the Christ, but acknowledgeth that he is.

10:7 ye may know that he is, by the power of the Holy Ghost;
I would exhort you that ye deny not the power of God;
he worketh by power, according to the faith of the children of men,
the same today and tomorrow, and forever.

546*

Moroni 10:8 deny not the gifts of God, for they are many;
they come from the same God.
there are different ways that these gifts are administered;
it is the same God who worketh all in all;
they are given by the manifestations of the Spirit of God unto men, to profit them.

10:9 to one is given by the Spirit of God, that he may teach the word of wisdom;

10:10 to another, that he may teach the word of knowledge by the same Spirit;

10:11 to another, exceedingly great faith;
to another, the gifts of healing by the same Spirit;

10:12 to another, that he may work mighty miracles;

10:13 to another, that he may prophesy concerning all things;

10:14 to another, the beholding of angels and ministering spirits;

10:15 to another, all kinds of tongues;

10:16 to another, the interpretation of languages and divers kinds of tongues.

10:17 all these gifts come by the Spirit of Christ;
they come unto every man severally, according as he will.

10:18 ye remember that every good gift cometh of Christ.

10:19 remember the he is the same yesterday, today, and forever,
all these gifts of which I have spoken, which are spiritual, never
will be done away, even as long as the world shall stand,
only according to the unbelief of the children of men.

547

Moroni 10:20 there must be faith;

if there must be faith there must also be hope;

if there must be hope there must also be charity.

10:21 except ye have charity ye can in nowise be saved in the
kingdom of God;

neither can ye be saved in the kingdom of God if ye have not
faith; neither can ye if ye have no hope.

10:22 if ye have no hope ye must needs be in despair;
despair cometh because of iniquity.

10:23 Christ truly said unto our fathers:

If ye have faith ye can do all things which are expedient unto
me.

548

Moroni 10:24 I speak unto all the ends of the earth

if the day cometh that the power and gifts of God shall be done away among you, it shall be because of unbelief.

10:25 wo be unto the children of men if this be the case;

there shall be none that doeth good among you, no not one.

if there be one among you that doeth good, he shall work by the power and gifts of God.

10:26 wo unto them who shall do these things away and die, for they die in their sins,

they cannot be saved in the kingdom of God;

I speak it according to the words of Christ; and I lie not.

10:27 remember these things; for the time speedily cometh that ye shall know that I lie not,

ye shall see me at the bar of God;

the Lord God will say unto you: Did I not declare my words unto you, which were written by this man, like as one crying from the dead,

549*

Moroni 10:27 even as one speaking out of the dust?

10:28 I declare these things unto the fulfilling of the prophecies.

they shall proceed forth out of the mouth of the everlasting God;

his word shall hiss forth from generation to generation.

10:29 God shall show unto you, that that which I have written is true.

10:30 come unto Christ, and lay hold upon every good gift,

touch not the evil gift, nor the unclean thing.

10:31 awake, and arise from the dust, O Jerusalem;

put on thy beautiful garments, O daughter of Zion;
strengthen thy stakes and enlarge thy borders forever,
that thou mayest no more be confounded,
that the covenants of the Eternal Father which he hath made
unto thee, O house of Israel, may be fulfilled.

10:32 come unto Christ, and be perfected in him,
deny yourselves of all ungodliness;
if ye shall deny yourselves of all ungodliness and love God
with all your might, mind and strength, then is his grace
sufficient for you,

by his grace ye may be perfect in Christ;
by the grace of God ye are perfect in Christ,
ye can in nowise deny the power of God.

10:33 if ye by the grace of God are perfect in Christ, and deny not his
power, then are ye sanctified in Christ by the grace of God,
through the shedding of the blood of Christ, which is in the
covenant of the Father unto the remission of your sins,

ye become holy, without spot.

10:34 I bid unto all, farewell. I soon go to rest in the paradise of God,
until my spirit and body shall again reunite,

I am brought forth triumphant through the air, to meet you
before the pleasing bar of the great Jehovah, the Eternal Judge
of both quick and dead.

550*

The Testimony of Three Witnesses

we, through the grace of God the Father, and our Lord Jesus Christ, have seen the plates which contain this record, which is a record of the people of Nephi, and also of the Lamanites, their brethren, and also of the people of Jared, who came from the tower of which hath been spoken.

we also know that they have been translated by the gift and power of God,

his voice hath declared it unto us;

we know of a surety that the work is true.

we also testify that we have seen the engravings which are upon the plates;

they have been shown unto us by the power of God, and not of man.

an angel of God came down from heaven, and he brought and laid before our eyes,

we beheld and saw the plates, and the engravings thereon;

we know that it is by the grace of God the Father, and our Lord Jesus Christ, that we beheld and bear record that these things are true.

the voice of the Lord commanded us that we should bear record of it;

to be obedient unto the commandments of God, we bear testimony of these things.

we know that if we are faithful in Christ, we shall rid our garments of the blood of all men,

be found spotless before the judgment-seat of Christ,

shall dwell with him eternally in the heavens.

honor be to the Father, and to the Son, and to the Holy Ghost, which is one God.

The Testimony of Eight Witnesses

shown unto us the plates of which hath been spoken, which have the appearance of gold;

as many of the leaves as the said Smith has translated we did handle with our hands;

we also saw the engravings thereon, all of which has the appearance of ancient work, and of curious workmanship.

this we bear record with words of soberness,

we have seen and hefted, and know of a surety that the said Smith has got the plates of which we have spoken.

we give our names unto the world, to witness unto the world that which we have seen.

we lie not, God bearing witness of it.